OXFORD

Oxford Word Skills

ELEMENTARY VOCABULARY

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

Learn to use the most important words and phrases in English topic by topic

Oxford 3000

INCLUDES DICTIONARY APP

SECOND EDITION

Oxford Word Skills

ELEMENTARY VOCABULARY

Ruth Gairns and **Stuart Redman**

Learn to use the most important words and phrases in English topic by topic

OXFORD

Contents

List of spotlight boxes 6

Acknowledgements 7

Introduction 8

LEARNING ENGLISH

1 Classroom vocabulary 12

2 Grammar words 13

3 Using this book 14

4 Learning new words 16

5 Classroom activities 18

NUMBERS AND TIME

6 Numbers 20

7 Telling the time 22

8 Days, seasons and dates 24

9 Time words and phrases 26

PEOPLE

10 Parts of the body 28

11 Describing people 30

12 Physical actions 32

13 Personal information 34

14 Family 36

15 Personality 38

16 Relationships 40

17 Feelings 42

LANGUAGE SECTION 1 prepositions

18 Prepositions: time 44

19 Prepositions: direction 45

20 Prepositions: place 46

21 Prepositions: phrases 48

22 Word + preposition 50

EVERYDAY LIFE

23 Routines 52

24 Clothes 54

25 Accessories 56

26 Colours, size and appearance 58

27 Money 60

28 Shopping 62

29 Possessions 64

30 Crime 66

31 Illness 68

32 Injuries 70

THE WORLD AROUND US

33 Geography 71

34 The environment 72

35 Countries and nationalities 74

36 My country 76

37 Weather 78

38 Animals, insects and birds 80

LANGUAGE SECTION 2 verbs

39 Irregular verbs 82

40 *have got* and *have* 84

41 *make* or *do* 86

42 *get* 88

43 *see* 89

44 Verbs and nouns with the same form 90

Contents

FOOD AND DRINK

45 Shopping for food 92
46 Fruit and vegetables 94
47 Meat and fish 96
48 A restaurant table 97
49 Eating in a restaurant 98
50 In a café 100

GETTING AROUND

51 Vehicles and roads 102
52 Buses 104
53 Trains 106
54 Directions 108
55 Signs and notices 110

PLACES

56 My town 112
57 The countryside 114
58 Home 116
59 Kitchen 118
60 Bedroom and bathroom 120
61 Living room 122

LANGUAGE SECTION 3 adjectives and adverbs

62 Adjectives with prefixes 123
63 Adjective opposites 124
64 Common adverbs 126
65 Adverbs of manner 128

STUDY AND WORK

66 School subjects 129
67 The education system 130
68 University 132
69 Jobs 134
70 Describing jobs 136
71 Job interview 138
72 First day at work 139

TECHNOLOGY

73 Computers 140
74 Email, letters and the internet 142
75 Phoning 144

LANGUAGE SECTION 4 building words

76 *-er / -or / -r* nouns 146
77 *-ing* forms 147
78 Noun suffixes 148
79 Compound nouns 150

HOBBIES AND INTERESTS

80 Likes and dislikes 152
81 Free time 154
82 Sport 156
83 Music 158
84 Films 160
85 The media 162
86 Books 164

HOLIDAYS

87 Arranging a holiday 166

88 Hotels 168

89 Airports 170

90 Types of holiday 172

SOCIAL ENGLISH

91 Meet and greet 174

92 Ask for information 176

93 Requests and permission 178

94 Invitations and suggestions 180

95 Offers and saying sorry 182

96 Probably or possibly 184

LANGUAGE SECTION 5
link words and phrasal verbs

97 Link words 1 186

98 Link words 2 188

99 Phrasal verbs 190

100 Common expressions 192

Vocabulary building 194

Common irregular verbs 198

Answer key 200

A1 Oxford 3000 words which aren't keywords 235

Word list 236

Abreviations used in the book 256

Spotlight boxes

Title	Unit	Page
a lot (of) and *a bit (of)*	37	78
about and *around*	6	20
adverbs of frequency	23	53
adverbs of manner	65	128
airports	89	170
allow and *let*	55	110
amounts of money	27	60
another and *some more*	49	99
at	18	44
at first and *in the end*	21	48
at university, in hospital, etc.	21	49
be good at sth	66	129
be ill and *sick*	31	68
being polite	93	178
book/reserve sth	53	107
boring/bored, interesting/interested, etc.	80	153
both	38	80
by	83	158
café, bar, pub	50	100
capital letters	8	24
centre and *card*	79	151
comparatives and superlatives	14	37
either ... or ...	67	130
else	100	193
employ	69	134
ever	39	82
exams	67	131
feelings and *emotions*	17	43
flat, house, home	58	117
for and *since*	9	27
friend	16	41
get	42	89
good-looking, beautiful, etc.	11	31
happen and *take place*	30	66

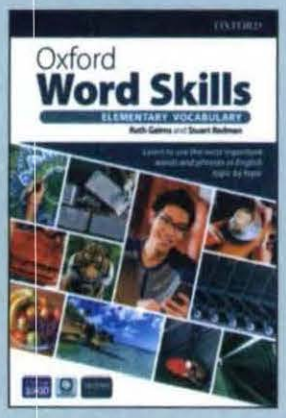
Title	Unit	Page
have + noun	60	121
have got and *have*	40	84
have to + verb	88	169
How long does it last?	68	132
How long does it take?	52	104
how much and *how many?*	45	93
hundreds, thousands, millions	6	21
(I'm) sorry	95	183
I think so / I hope so	96	184
information	13	34
injuries	32	70
introductions	91	174
irregular verbs	12	32
irregular verbs	82	157
keep	73	140
last	53	106
lend and *borrow*	93	179
love/like/hate + *-ing*	80	152
meet and *meeting*	70	137
menus	49	98
might + verb	87	166
minutes to or *past*	7	22
noun + *shop*	28	62
order of adjectives	26	58
people from a country	35	74
please and *thanks*	50	101
plural forms of nouns	48	97
plural nouns and *pairs*	25	56
position of adjectives	63	124
preposition + *-ing* form	22	50
quite	11	30
really	15	39
record sth and *a record*	83	159
relationship	16	40

Title	Unit	Page
salad	46	95
saying and writing dates and years	8	25
saying email addresses	74	142
saying phone numbers	75	144
saying what you eat	47	96
see and *watch*	43	89
see you ...	91	175
should + verb	31	69
so and *such*	72	139
somewhere, anywhere, nowhere, everywhere	33	71
still	97	187
suffix *-ion*	78	148
suffix *-ment*	78	149
teacher, lecturer, professor	68	133
thing(s)	4	16
think about and *think of*	22	51
too and *very*	26	59
trouble	86	164
turn sth on/off	59	118
uncountable nouns	45	92
-in, -im, -ir, -un	62	123
used to + verb	90	172
verbs used with vehicles	51	102
verbs with games and sport	82	156
watch, see, listen, hear	85	162
What kind/type/sort of ...?	84	160
What's he/she/it like?	15	38
which or *what?*	92	177
whose and *belong to someone*	92	176
word building	5	18

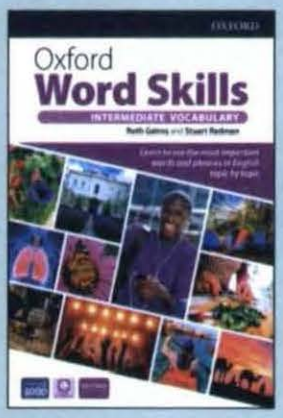
Introduction

What is *Oxford Word Skills*?

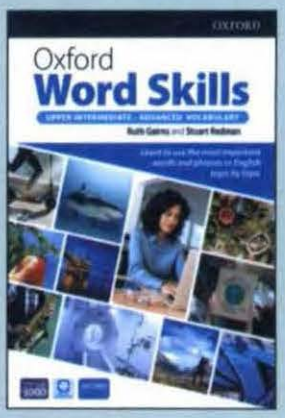
Oxford Word Skills is a series of three books for students to learn and practise new vocabulary.



Level 1:
elementary/pre-intermediate
(CEFR levels A1 and A2)



Level 2:
intermediate (CEFR level B1)



upper-intermediate/advanced
(CEFR levels B2 and C1)

There are over 2,000 new words or phrases in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

How are the books organized?

Each level contains 100 units of vocabulary presentation and practice, with a unit being 1–2 pages, depending on the size of the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable chunks, then immediately followed up with practice exercises, usually on the same page.

The units are grouped within modules containing 3–10 units. A majority of the modules are topic-based, e.g. People, Food and drink, Study and work, but some modules have a language focus, e.g. Prepositions, Adjectives and adverbs, Verbs.

The Elementary level also contains:

- a list of all the 'spotlight' boxes
- a list of word-building tables
- a list of irregular verbs
- an answer key for all the exercises
- Word list – an index of all the vocabulary taught with a unit reference to where the item appears

Oxford Word Skills is directly linked to the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary* app, which allows learners to find the meaning of new words in English and provides a pronunciation model for the words. You will find pronunciation exercises throughout the book which refer you to the APP to check the correct pronunciation.

What vocabulary is included?

At Elementary level, the vocabulary includes:

- a wide range of common topics, e.g. clothes, free time, at the airport
- words and phrases needed in social interaction, e.g. inviting people, meeting and greeting
- areas of lexical grammar, e.g. prepositions, verbs, adjectives and adverbs

Throughout the three levels the main focus is on high-frequency vocabulary in everyday spoken English, although the higher levels increasingly add more language from different styles of English as well as more figurative use of language.

The selection of vocabulary at each level is based on frequency and usefulness, with the foundation being the Oxford 3000™. This is a list of 3000 words identified by the Oxford University Press ELT Dictionaries team as the most important words for learners of English. These items have been divided into four levels in accordance with the CEFR levels (A1, A2, B1 and B2).

- The Elementary level includes many items from A1, but with the majority of items at A2 level.
- The Intermediate level has a focus on B1 items from the Oxford 3000, as well as recycling some items from the A2 level.
- The Upper-Intermediate/Advanced level concentrates on B2 items from the Oxford 3000, but also includes B2 and C1 items from the enlarged Oxford 5000™ word list.

The Oxford 3000 word list is supplemented by the Oxford Phrase List™, containing just under 1,000 phrases considered important for students at these levels; and topic lists from OUP's learner's dictionaries, which identify key vocabulary items across a range of 60 topics. By using the Oxford 3000 alongside the topic lists, we are able to focus on high-frequency vocabulary, but also to include vocabulary items that may not have a high frequency overall, but will have great value in particular contexts, e.g. *main course* in a restaurant, or *hand luggage* at an airport. By using the Oxford Phrase List, we are also able to ensure the best coverage of both words and phrases at each level.

We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases by supplying a clear illustration, a simple definition, or an example of each word or phrase. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning. They should refer to the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary* for information on other meanings.

In the Elementary level, there is also a list at the back of the book of all the A1 items from the Oxford 3000 that have not been taught. The reason for this is that the Elementary level makes some assumptions about very high frequency level items which learners should already be familiar with. If there are words here that students do not know, they can go to the APP to check the meaning and pronunciation.

Key words are sometimes repeated in later units in the book, but may not be highlighted in bold. If students do not recognize the word, they should look in the Word List to see where the item was introduced and defined, or use the APP. Such recycling is useful for learners.

To the teacher

How can I use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary is presented through:

- **photographs and illustrations**

- **tables**

on	**a day** **on** Tuesday **on** Friday evening **on** Tuesdays = every Tuesday **on** my birthday **on** Christmas Day	**a date** **on** September 10 **on** 6th May

- **different types of text**

Visuals obviously provide a clear guide to meaning; the tables and texts show words being used in natural sentences, with the meaning explained in a glossary (within a table or beside a text). As the input in most sections occupies a page and does not usually exceed 15 items, it is very straightforward to use in the classroom. Here is a procedure you could follow:

- Students study the visuals or written text in the presentation for at least ten minutes. This allows time for them to reinforce the connection between the visual input and the meanings, or to read through the glossary carefully to check the meaning of the new items in the presentation sentences, dialogue or extended text. Tell students to look at the extra words included in the **glossary** (opposites, synonyms, derivatives, collocations and further examples) as this will help them to expand their vocabulary with minimal effort in many cases. It is also important to look at the **spotlight** boxes. This is an additional feature which picks out an item or items of particular value, for example, these spotlights on *else* and on the difference between *flat*, *house* and *home*:

SPOTLIGHT *else*

You can use **else** to mean 'different' after words like **everyone, somewhere** and **nothing.**

- *I didn't like it, but **everyone else** did.* (= all the other people)
- *The restaurant was full so we went **somewhere else**.* (= to another place)
- *We had bread because there was **nothing else** to eat.* (= no other thing)

SPOTLIGHT *flat, house, home*

A **flat** is a number of rooms on one floor of a building.
SYN **apartment**
A **house** is a building that is made for people to live in. It can have more than one floor.
Home is where you live (in a flat or a house).

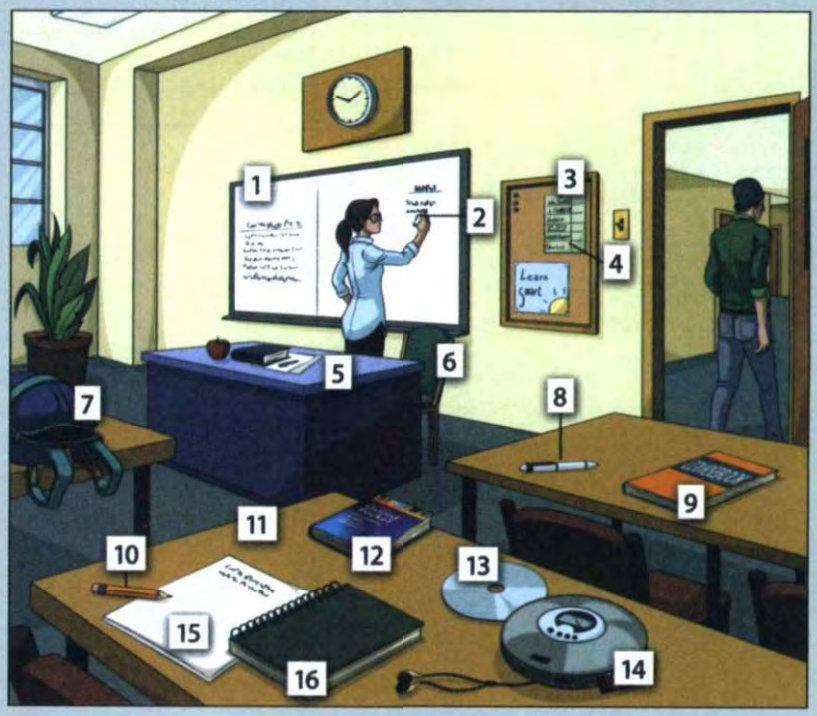
- While students are working through the presentation, you can answer any questions they may have about the items. This is also an opportunity to provide a pronunciation model for your students to repeat; otherwise the presentation stage is going to be a long silent phase. You might want to read a text aloud, or get students to read sections of it, etc.
- Students can move on to the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the Answer Key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class. This is probably a better approach as you can also discuss why they might have arrived at a wrong answer and focus on / practise pronunciation. It is sensible to work through the exercises chronologically as they tend to progress from receptive practice to controlled productive practice, and then quite often to freer productive practice in the ABOUT YOU / ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY activities.
- When you are satisfied with their answers to the first exercise, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work individually or in pairs, and assist where necessary. When they have finished an exercise, you will find that many of them – sentence completion and particularly dialogue completion – lend themselves to controlled speaking practice. Students can practise dialogues in pairs or take it in turns to read out complete sentences to each other.
- Students should look out for the TEST YOURSELF icons in each unit. When they have completed the written exercises, students can test themselves on the new vocabulary. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new words beneath a picture (using a book, notebook or piece of paper) while they look at the visuals and test themselves. They can do the same with some of the tables and glossaries: cover the new vocabulary and look at the meaning, or vice versa. This is a simple, quick and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises. It is also useful to demonstrate this so that students can revise vocabulary in their own time using this 'cover and check' approach.
- You will often notice the headings ABOUT YOU or ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY. These are personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary in a freer way, and within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these, but they make ideal pairwork activities for learners to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner's answers) as follow-up. In the Answer Key, possible answers for these activities are provided by both native speakers and proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world. This may be of particular value to a self-study learner, as a way of comparing answers.

TEST YOURSELF How can students use the material on their own?

The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If you want your learners to use the material for self-study, you can recommend that they use the book alongside the app, as it gives them a pronunciation model for items of vocabulary, as well as further practice exercises. For self-study learners in particular, it is also a good idea to start with the first module, which will help them use the book more effectively. Self-study learners can check their answers to exercises using the Answer Key, and test themselves using the 'cover and check' procedure explained above. One advantage of self-study learning is that students can select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their knowledge. In addition, they have the opportunity with this book to test themselves, as explained above.

1 Classroom vocabulary

1	**whiteboard** (ALSO **board**)
2	**board pen**
3	**noticeboard**
4	**notice**
5	**desk**
6	**chair**
7	**bag**
8	**pen**
9	**coursebook**
10	**pencil**
11	**table**
12	**dictionary**
13	**CD**
14	**CD player**
15	**piece of paper**
16	**exercise book / notebook**



1 **Tick (✓) the things you can put in a bag. Put a cross (✗) by the things you can't.**

▶ pen	✓	2 desk	☐	5 table	☐	8 noticeboard	☐
▶ board	✗	3 notice	☐	6 coursebook	☐	9 dictionary	☐
1 pencil	☐	4 CD player	☐	7 chair	☐	10 piece of paper	☐

2 **Complete the words or phrases.**

▶ notebook

1 board	3 notice	5 piece of .....
2 course	4 exercise	6 CD .....

3 **Write your answers.**

▶	You sit on one of these.	a chair
1	The teacher writes on this.	.....
2	You find the meaning of words in this.	.....
3	You sit behind one of these.	.....
4	You write in one of these.	.....
5	The teacher puts information on this.	.....
6	The teacher can play one of these.	.....
7	You can put your books in this.	.....
8	You study from one of these.	.....

4 ABOUT YOU **Write four things you've got at home, and four things you haven't got.**

▶ I've got a dictionary	▶ I haven't got a CD player .....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....

TEST YOURSELF

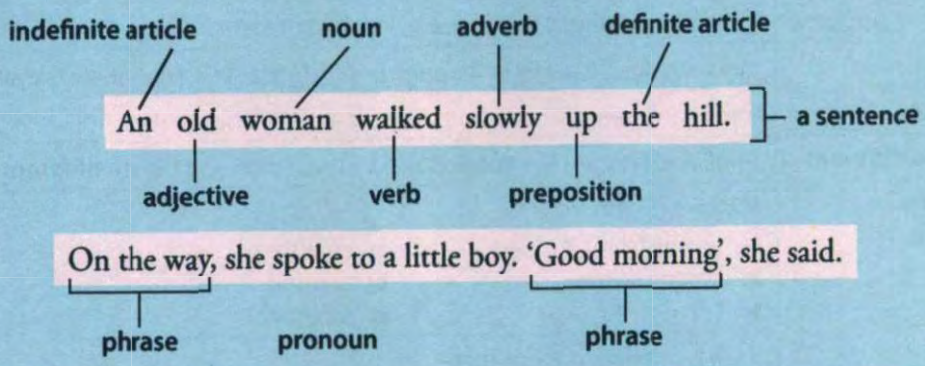
2 Grammar words

Read this short text.

An old woman walked slowly up the hill.
On the way, she spoke to a little boy.
'Good morning', she said.

- There are eight **words** in the first **sentence**.
- *Walk* is a **regular** verb. The **past simple** is *walked*.
- *Speak* is an **irregular** verb. The past simple is *spoke*, and the **past participle** is *spoken*. (The past participle is used to form the present perfect: *Have you spoken to the doctor today?*)

Look at the different **parts of speech**.



1 Circle the correct answer.

▶ *A* and *the* are *adjectives* / *articles*.
1 *A* and *an* are *definite* / *indefinite* articles.
2 *Woman* is a *noun* / *adjective*.
3 *Up* is a *preposition* / *pronoun*.
4 *Have* is *a regular* / *an irregular* verb.
5 *He* and *she* are *nouns* / *pronouns*.
6 *Go* and *do* are *verbs* / *nouns*.
7 *Badly* and *happily* are *adverbs* / *adjectives*.
8 *Gone* is the *past simple* / *past participle* of the verb *go*.

2 Find the answers for each sentence.

I have an English lesson now.	▶ a verb have	2 an indefinite article .....
	1 a pronoun	3 a noun .....
There's a young man from Rome in the class.	4 an adjective	6 an indefinite article .....
	5 a preposition	
This morning, he asked a question, and he spoke very quietly.	7 an adverb	9 a regular past simple .....
	8 an irregular past simple	10 a phrase .....
I think he's in the wrong class.	11 a noun	14 a pronoun .....
	12 a verb	15 a sentence .....
	13 an adjective	.....

3 What are the parts of speech for the other words in the text at the top of the page?

▶ hill noun
1 on .....
2 the .....
3 way .....
4 spoke .....
5 to .....
6 a .....
7 little .....
8 boy .....
9 she .....
10 said .....

TEST YOURSELF

3 Using this book

Learn these words. You need to understand them to do the exercises.

tick	✓ (= *yes* OR *correct*)
underline	word
cross out	~~word~~
circle	(word)
complete	I like ice cream.
correct/wrong	2 + 2 = 4 is **correct** (ALSO **right**). 2 + 2 = 5 is **wrong**.
mistake	If sth is a **mistake**, it's wrong. e.g. ~~*Inglish*~~. SYN **error**
correct	make sth right, e.g. ~~*Inglish*~~ (wrong), *English* (right); tell sb what mistakes they are making
true/false	'Paris is in France.' That's **true**. 'Paris is in Italy.' That's **false**.
the same/different	*Small* and *little* are **the same** (*small = little*). *Small* and *big* are **different**.
match sth (with sth)	**Match** 1–3 with a–c. **1** I come from c. **a)** English **2** I speak a little ..... . **b)** married **3** I'm ..... . **c)** Japan ✓
missing	If sth is **missing**, it is not there. e.g. *He comes Tokyo.* (The word *from* is **missing**.) *He comes* from *Tokyo.*
cover	put one thing over another thing
test sb OR **yourself**	If you **test yourself**, you ask yourself questions to find what you know and understand, e.g. *When I* ***test myself*** *on English verbs, I look at the verb, then say the meaning in my language.*
table	This is a **table**: Question: **What does *awful* mean?** NOT ~~*What means 'awful'?*~~ — Answer: **I don't know.** OR **It means 'terrible'.**
column	The table above has got two **columns**: one for questions and one for answers.
put sth in order	put things in the right place or position: ***Put*** *these words* ***in order*** *to make a sentence.* *bed / I / early / to / went* I went to bed early.

Short forms and symbols

- *TV* is a **short form** of *television*.
- A **symbol** is a sign or picture with a special meaning. e.g. **=** is a symbol that means **equals** OR **is the same as**: 2 + 2 = 4.

e.g.	is short for **for example**: *fruit,* **e.g.** *apples and bananas.*
OPP	is short for **opposite**: *Big is* **the opposite of** *small.*
SYN	is short for **synonym** (= a word that means the same as another): *small* SYN *little.*
etc.	You use **etc.** at the end of a list to show there are more things, but you don't want to say them all: *We bought apples, oranges, bananas,* **etc.** We can say **etc.** as 'etcetera' or **and so on.**
inf	means **informal**. If a word is **informal**, you use it when you are speaking to friends or people you know well, but not in serious writing or important letters. OPP **formal**
sth	is a short form of **something**.
sb	is a short form of **somebody/someone**.

1 Read the sentences and write your answers.

▶ Put a tick at the end of this sentence. ✓

1 Underline the third word in this sentence.

2 Circle the first word in this sentence.

3 Cross out the last word in this sentence.

4 What's the opposite of ***big***? .....

5 What's a synonym for ***fantastic***? .....

6 Correct the mistak in this sentence. .....

7 What's a more informal word for ***thank you***? .....

8 Is it ***true*** or ***false*** that London is in Scotland? .....

9 What word missing in this sentence? ....

10 Is eight thirty the same as half past eight? .....

11 Fourteen and twenty-seven is forty-three. Is that right or wrong? .....

12 Complete the next sentence. ***Where*** ..... ***you live?*** ~ I live near the park.

2 Match the opposites.

▶ formal c

1 the same .....

2 correct .....

3 true .....

4 synonym .....

a wrong

b opposite

c informal ✓

d different

e false

3 What do these short forms and symbols mean? Write your answers.

▶ **OPP** opposite

1 e.g. .....

2 ✓ .....

3 *inf* .....

4 **SYN** .....

5 = ...

6 etc. .....

4 Complete the sentences.

▶ Do days of the week have a capital letter? Yes, that's correct/right .

1 You use ..... at the end of a list to show that there are other things but you are not going to say them all.

2 What word is ..... in the next sentence? ***I went bed early.***

3 If you put something in ....., you put it in the correct place or position.

4 12 and 12 is 26, isn't it? No, that's ..... .

5 = is a ....., and it means 'equals' or 'is ....'.

6 I make lots of ..... when I speak, but my teacher usually ..... me.

7 After each page, I always ..... myself on all the new words. I often look at the words, ... the meanings, and then try to remember and say the meanings.

8 *US* is a .... of the United States of America.

9 In this exercise, you have to ..... ***a*** to ***e*** with ***1*** to ***5***.

10 ***Hi*** is a more ..... way of saying ***hello***.

11 San Francisco is the capital of America. True or .....?

12 ..... is a synonym for ***mistake***.

13 How many ..... has this table got? ~ Three.

Word	Synonym	Example
family name	***surname***	*Rodriguez*
first name(s)	**forename(s)**	Maria Helena

14 We have to ..... the correct answer, e.g. I looked at/in the board.

15 We have to ..... the wrong answer, e.g. I looked at (in) the board.

TEST YOURSELF

4 Learning new words

A How to learn words

Here are some **things** to **help** you when you are learning new words:

- Repeat words **out loud** two or three times to practise the **pronunciation**.
- **Write down** new words in a **notebook**. It's important to **keep a record** of them because it will help you to remember them.
- Write the **meaning** in English or your own language.
- Write an example sentence with the new word. This helps you to understand how to **use** the new word.
- Think of **situations** where you can use this word, and perhaps write them down.

GLOSSARY

help	do sth good for sb; make their life easier
out loud	so that other people can hear it
pronunciation	how to say a word **pronounce** *v*
write sth down	write sth on paper so you can remember it
notebook	a book that you can write in
record	notes of things that have happened, e.g. a **record** of money that you have spent **keep a record (of sth)**
meaning	The **meaning** of *small* is 'little'.
use	do a job with sth: *I **use** a key to open my door.*
situation	things that are happening at a certain time or in a certain place: *I was in a difficult **situation** at work today because my computer wasn't working.*

SPOTLIGHT *thing(s)*

We often use **thing(s)** to talk about an idea or a subject. It means we don't need to find the exact name for something.

- *We talked about lots of **things**.*
- *Art is the **thing** that interests me most.*

1 Complete the dialogues with one word.

▶ What's this word? ~ ***Beige***, but I don't know the correct pronunciation .
1 Was the homework easy? ~ No, it wasn't, but my father ..... me.
2 Did the others hear you? ~ Yes, I said his name out ..... .
3 How do you know you've read that book? ~ Because I keep a ..... .
4 How did you remember her phone number? ~ I wrote it ..... .
5 Do you know the meaning of ***awful***? ~ Yes, but I don't know how to ..... it.
6 I've broken my mother's favourite cup. I don't know what to say to her. ~ What a difficult ..... !
7 Have you got a new computer? ~ Yes, but I don't know how to ..... it yet.
8 Did you talk about the holiday? ~ Yes, and lots of other ..... .

2 Complete the sentences. First, cover the text at the top of the page.

Here are some ▶ things to help you when you are learning new words.
1 Repeat words ..... two or three times to practise the pronunciation.
2 Write down new words in a ..... . It's important to ..... a record of them.
3 Write the ..... in English or your own language.
4 If you write an example sentence, it helps you to remember how to ..... a new word.
5 Think of ..... where you can use this word.

3 Answer the questions.

▶ Why do you do lots of different things when you are learning new words?
To help you to understand and remember them.
1 Why do you repeat words out loud? .....
2 Where can you write down new words? .....
3 Why is it important to do that? .....
4 How can you write the meaning? .....
5 Why do you write an example sentence? .....
6 What can you do after that? .....

TEST YOURSELF

B Questions about words

Question	Answer
What does *awful* **mean?** (NOT ~~*What means awful?*~~)	**I don't know.** OR **It means** 'terrible'.
What's this called in English? **How do you say** *fils* **in English?**	**I can't remember.** OR **It's a** spoon. *Son.* OR *Fils* is French for *son.*
Could you explain 'No vacancies'? (NOT ~~*Could you explain me ...?*~~)	Yes. You see it in a hotel window. It means the hotel is full. There are no free rooms.
What's the difference between *hello* and *hi*?	The **meaning** is the same, but *hi* is informal.
What's the opposite of *big*?	Small.
How do you pronounce *tie*?	**It's like** *my.*
Eight is pronounced like *night.* **Is that right/correct?**	**No, that's wrong.** OR **That's not right.** It's pronounced like *wait.*
How do you **spell** *apple*? **I'm not sure.** (Is it one 'p' or two?)	**It's** A-**double** P-L-E. (double P = two Ps)

4 Match 1–6 with a–g.

▶ How do you ***spell*** your name? c
1 How do you say ***cup*** in German? .....
2 What's the opposite of ***closed***? .....
3 What does ***tiny*** mean? .....
4 How do you pronounce ***weight***? .....
5 Could you explain ***hello***? .....
6 ***Come*** and ***go*** mean the same thing. .....

a Very small.
b It's what you say when you meet a friend.
c A-double N-A. ✓
d It's like ***wait***.
e No, they don't. That's wrong.
f I don't know. I only speak French.
g Open.

5 Complete the dialogues.

▶ What does ***awful*** mean ? ~ Terrible.
1 What's this ..... in English? ~ It's a frying pan.
2 How do you pronounce ***what***? ~ It's ..... ***hot***.
3 ..... you spell ***eye***? ~ I'm not sure. I think it's E-Y-E.
4 What's the difference ..... ***bye*** and ***goodbye***? ~ ***Bye*** is more informal.
5 ***Pen*** is the same as ***pencil***. Is that right? ~ No, that's ..... .
6 What's the ..... of ***interesting***? ~ Boring.
7 What ..... ***enormous*** mean? ~ It means 'very big'.
8 Could you ..... ***EXIT***? ~ You see it on a door. It means you can go out there.

6 Write a question using each word.

▶ pronounce How do you pronounce ***vegetable***?
1 mean ..... ?
2 spell ..... ?
3 say ..... ?
4 explain ..... ?
5 opposite ..... ?
6 called ..... ?

TEST YOURSELF

5 Classroom activities

A Teacher instructions

OK, **repeat** after me.

When you finish, **compare** your answers **with** a partner.

I want you to write a **description** of someone you know.

Please **pay attention**.

Practise new words every day.

I'd like you to **make up** a story.

Listen to the conversation. Then answer the questions.

Listen, then **follow the instructions** in the book.

If you don't know the meaning, try to **guess**.

And don't **forget** to **do** the **homework**.

GLOSSARY

repeat	say or do sth again
compare sth (with sth)	think about things or people to see how they are different
description	words that tell what sb or sth is like or what happened **describe** *v*
pay attention	look or listen carefully
practise	do sth many times so that you do it well **practice** *n*
make sth up	say sth that is not true SYN **invent**
instructions	words that tell you what you must do or how to do sth. You **follow (the) instructions**.
guess	give an answer when you do not know if it is right **guess** *n* SYN **have a guess**
forget	If you **forget** to do sth, you don't remember to do it.
homework	work that a teacher gives you to do at home: *I'm doing my* **homework**. (NOT ~~*I'm making my homework.*~~)

SPOTLIGHT word building

Many nouns in English are formed from verbs, and *-(t)ion* is a common noun ending:

- *instruct* (verb) → *instruction* (noun)

There is often a spelling change:

- *describe* → *description*
- *explain* → *explanation*
- *educate* → *education*

1 Match 1–8 with a–i.

▶ repeat it c
1 make something up .....
2 follow the instructions .....
3 pay attention .....
4 I forget. .....
5 compare with another student .....
6 describe it .....
7 practise it .....
8 have a guess .....

a talk to another student about it
b listen carefully
c say it again ✓
d do it a few more times
e invent something
f say what it's like
g If you don't know, just think of an answer.
h I don't remember.
i do what it tells you

2 Complete the table. If you don't know the answer, have a guess.

VERB	NOUN	VERB	NOUN
▶discuss	discussion	instruct	.....
explain	.....	invent	.....
describe	.....	practise	.....
guess	.....	educate	.....

3 Complete the dialogues.

▶ Were you listening? ~ No, the teacher told me to pay attention .
1 Can you say that again, please? ~ Yes, I'll ..... it.
2 Did you remember your ..... ? ~ No, I'm afraid I forgot to do it.
3 Did you know the answer? ~ No, but I had a ..... .
4 How can I get better? ~ You have to ..... more.
5 How do you know they're different? ~ We ..... them.
6 Did you ..... the homework? ~ No, I ..... it. I'm sorry.
7 Did you invent that story? ~ Yes, I ..... it ..... .
8 Did you write a description? ~ No, I just ..... it to her.

TEST YOURSELF

B Student activities

Here are **activities** that students do in the classroom:

- read a **text**
- guess the meaning of new words from the **context**
- listen to **dialogues**
- **look up** the meaning of new words in a dictionary
- write a **paragraph** about something
- write a short **essay** on something
- **revise vocabulary** from another lesson
- do written **exercises**
- have a **conversation** about something in English
- have a **discussion** about something

GLOSSARY

activity	sth you do, perhaps often
text	a short piece of writing that you read
context	the words that come before or after another word or sentence
dialogue	words that people say to each other, often in a book or film
look sth up	try to find information in a book
paragraph	a group of lines of writing
essay	a short piece of writing about sth. It usually has three or more paragraphs.
revise	look at or do sth again
vocabulary	all the words that sb knows or uses
simple	easy to do or understand
exercise	work that you do to learn sth
conversation	a talk between two or more people
discussion	talking about sth seriously **discuss** *v*

4 Underline the correct answer.

▶ I like to ***revise*** / ***look up*** the vocabulary after I've studied it.

1 We read a ***text*** / ***context*** in class about pop music in the 1970s.
2 I don't need to write a lot – just one ***context*** / ***paragraph***.
3 We practised the ***essay*** / ***dialogue*** in pairs, and the teacher listened to us.
4 The teacher sometimes asks us what ***contexts*** / ***activities*** we want to do.
5 I have to write ***a discussion*** / ***an essay*** for homework.
6 You can understand the meaning from the ***text*** / ***context***.
7 We had a ***discussion*** / ***conversation*** in class about politics.
8 Everyone understood because it was quite ***simple*** / ***difficult***.

5 Complete the sentences.

▶ We started the exercise in class and finished it for homework.

1 We studied the past tense last week and we're going to _____ it this week.
2 I didn't understand so I _____ it _____ in my dictionary.
3 Yesterday, I had a _____ in English with my American friend.
4 Yesterday in class we did three _____ on irregular verbs.
5 We listened to a _____, then practised it in pairs.
6 Speaking is my favourite _____ in class.
7 I'm sure you can understand this text: it's very _____.
8 We had to write an _____ in English about our holidays for homework.

6 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 How often do you read texts in English? What do you read? _____
2 Do you often use the context to help you understand the meaning of a new word? _____
3 How often do you write an essay in English? _____
4 Do you often revise vocabulary? Why? / Why not? _____
5 What's your favourite activity when you are studying English, inside or outside class? _____
6 Do you like listening to dialogues? Do you think listening to them helps you to learn vocabulary? _____

TEST YOURSELF

6 Numbers

A 1–100

1	one	11	eleven	21	twenty-one	40	forty
2	two	12	twelve	22	twenty-two	50	fifty
3	three	13	thirteen	23	twenty-three	60	sixty
4	four	14	fourteen	24	twenty-four	70	seventy
5	five	15	fifteen	25	twenty-five	80	eighty
6	six	16	sixteen	26	twenty-six	90	ninety
7	seven	17	seventeen	27	twenty-seven	100	a/one hundred
8	eight	18	eighteen	28	twenty-eight		
9	nine	19	nineteen	29	twenty-nine		
10	ten	20	twenty	30	thirty		

GLOSSARY

count	When you count, you say numbers one after another, e.g. *1–2–3–4–5. I **counted** the chairs – there were 15. I can **count** in German.*
equal	be the same as sth: *2 + 2 **equals** (=) 4*
minus	less; when you take away: *6 **minus** (–) 4 = 2*
plus	and; added to: *4 **plus** (+) 4 = 8*

SPOTLIGHT *about* and *around*

about/around = a bit more or a little less than

- *How many students are there? ~ **Around/about** 20.* (= 18? 19? 20? 21? 22?)
- *How much is it? ~ It's **about/around** €100.*
- *How long is the programme? ~ **About/around** half an hour.*

1 Write the middle number in words.

▶ 24 twenty-five 26

1	7	.....	9	**6**	5	.....	7
2	19	.....	21	**7**	12	.....	14
3	66	.....	68	**8**	71	.....	73
4	49	.....	51	**9**	23	.....	25
5	34	.....	36	**10**	88	.....	90

2 Write the number in words using *about* or *around*.

▶ sixty-eight people about/around seventy people

1	ninety-seven euros	**5**	forty-nine dollars .....
2	nine lessons	**6**	seventy-eight people .....
3	thirty-one years	**7**	sixty-eight pounds .....
4	forty-one students	**8**	nineteen chairs .....

3 Do the maths. Write your answers in words.

▶ three plus nine equals twelve ▶ ten minus six equals four

1 twelve and seventeen equals .....
2 forty-three plus thirty-four equals .....
3 eighty-seven minus twenty-four equals .....
4 seventeen plus fourteen equals .....
5 sixty minus thirty-six equals .....
6 seventeen plus twenty-eight equals .....

4 Close your book and count from 1 to 20. Then count from 30 to 100 in tens.

TEST YOURSELF

B Large numbers

101	a/one **hundred and** one
140	a/one hundred **and** forty
200	two hundred (NOT ~~*two hundreds*~~)
1,000	a/one **thousand**
1,050	a/one thousand **and** fifty
1,250	a/one thousand **two hundred and** fifty

2,000	two thousand (NOT ~~*two thousands*~~)
100,000	a/one hundred thousand
1,000,000	a/one **million**
2,000,000	two million (NOT ~~*two millions*~~)
1,000,000,000	a/one **billion**

In numbers over 999, write a comma (,) between:
- ***thousands*** and ***hundreds***, e.g. 11,000
- ***millions*** and ***thousands***, e.g. 3,000,000

SPOTLIGHT *hundreds, thousands, millions*

We use ***hundreds, thousands,*** and ***millions*** (with an 's') when we don't use a specific number.
- *We saw **hundreds of** animals. (OR We saw **three hundred** animals.)*
- *There were **thousands of** people at the concert.*
- *The new shopping centre will cost **millions**.*

5 **Correct the mistakes in the spoken or written number.**

▶ one hundred two — one hundred and two
1 two hundreds
2 three hundred forty
3 one thousand and five hundred
4 two thousand six hundred fifty
5 seven thousands
6 42500

6 **Write the next number in words.**

▶ 243 — two hundred and forty-four
1 999
2 5055
3 11,300
4 999,999
5 2,499
6 324,999
7 999,999,999
8 1,999

7 **Write the sentences in a more general way. Use *hundreds/thousands/millions* or *about/around*.**

▶ There are four hundred flats. — There are hundreds of flats.
1 They said it was three thousand dollars.
2 It's forty-eight minutes.
3 There are six thousand of them.
4 I bought seventeen books.
5 We want to grow four hundred trees.
6 There are about ten to twelve million people with this problem.

TEST YOURSELF

7 Telling the time

A What's the time?

What's the time?	What time is it?
It's four o'clock.	It's five past six.
It's (a) quarter past four. It's four fifteen.	It's twenty past six. It's six twenty.
It's half past four. It's four thirty.	It's twenty to seven. It's six forty.
It's (a) quarter to five. It's four forty-five.	It's three minutes to seven. It's six fifty-seven.

SPOTLIGHT *minutes to* or *past*

We use **minutes to** or **minutes past** with numbers which are not *five*, *ten*, *fifteen*, *twenty* or *twenty-five*.

- *eight* ***minutes to*** *two* (NOT ~~*eight to two*~~)
- *three* ***minutes past*** *six* (NOT ~~*three past six*~~)

1 **Write the times in words. Don't use *past* or *to*.**

▶	3.10	three ten	6.15	six fifteen
1	9.15	.....	5.50	.....
2	10.25	.....	7.20	.....
3	3.35	.....	2.30	.....
4	6.45	.....	4.40	.....

2 **Write the times in words. Use *past* and *to*.**

▶	12.30	half past twelve	6.40	twenty to seven
1	7.15	.....	8.55	.....
2	9.30	.....	1.03	.....
3	11.35	.....	2.45	.....
4	3.50	.....	4.17	.....

3 **Look at the timetable and answer the questions. Write your answers in words.**

Bath Spa	7.25 ▼	7.45 ▼	8.05 ▼	8.35 ▼	9.05 ▼
Swindon	7.57 ▼	8.17 ▼	8.45 ▼	9.07 ▼	9.42 ▼
Didcot Parkway	8.15 ▼		9.02 ▼		9.58 ▼
Reading	8.35 ▼	8.55 ▼	9.15 ▼	9.45 ▼	10.10 ▼
London Paddington	8.55	9.15	9.35	10.05	10.35

▶ When does the first train leave Bath? At seven twenty-five.

1 When does the first train after 8.00 leave Bath? .....

2 You want to be in London before 10.00. What time is the best train from Swindon? .....

3 When does the 8.05 train from Bath get to Didcot Parkway? .....

4 When does the 8.05 from Bath get to London Paddington? .....

5 When does the 9.05 from Bath get to Reading? .....

4 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 What time do banks open and close in your country? .....

2 What time do most shops open and close? .....

3 What time do most restaurants open and close? .....

4 When do most people start and finish school/work? .....

5 When do you have lunch? .....

6 When do you have dinner? .....

TEST YOURSELF

B Exact times and periods of time

9.00 **a.m.**	nine o'clock **in the morning**
12.00 **p.m.**	(at) **midday / noon**
9.00 a.m. – 1.00 p.m.	**all morning**
1.58	**just before / nearly / almost** two
5.00 p.m.	five o'clock **in the afternoon**
2.00 – 5.30 p.m.	**all afternoon** (ALSO **all day** from 9.00 – 5.00)
7.00 p.m.	seven o'clock **in the evening**
8.02	**just after** eight
11.30 p.m.	eleven thirty **at night**
12.00 a.m.	(at) **midnight**

sun

moon

5 **Same or different? Write *S* or *D*.**

▶ 8.45 p.m. / 8.45 in the evening S
1 12.00 at night / midnight .....
2 4.00 a.m. / 4.00 in the afternoon .....
3 6.27 / nearly 6.30 .....
4 11.45 p.m. / 11.45 at night .....
5 almost 7 o'clock / just before 7.00 .....
6 9 a.m. – 1.00 p.m. / all day .....

▶ 3.00 p.m. / nearly 3.00 D
7 8.43 / nearly quarter to nine .....
8 2.17 / quarter past two .....
9 12.03 p.m. / just after midday .....
10 2.00 p.m. – 5.30 p.m. / all afternoon .....
11 8.30 / just before 9.00 .....
12 3.00 a.m. / three o'clock .....

6 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ I can meet you in the morning.
1 She usually leaves ..... before three.
2 Our train was late, and it was ..... eight thirty when we arrived.
3 The party ends ..... midnight, and then I'll get a taxi home.
4 It starts to get really hot around ..... .
5 We got there at about five o'clock ..... the afternoon.
6 I usually go to bed around 11 o'clock ..... night.
7 They are very busy, so they'll be at work ..... day.
8 It was ..... 7 o'clock when we got home.
9 The train leaves ..... after 8.00, at 8.03.
10 She's there ..... morning, from nine until lunchtime.

7 **One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?**

▶ I get up just/seven o'clock. before / after
1 I'm meeting my friend midday. .....
2 I only drink coffee the morning. .....
3 I work day in a bank. .....
4 I see my friends the evening. .....
5 I watch television evening. .....
6 I go to bed midnight. .....
7 I don't get home before 10.00 night. .....
8 It's three minutes to 8.00 – it's 8.00. .....
9 I always get up before 7.00, at 6.55. .....

TEST YOURSELF

8 Days, seasons and dates

A Days, months and dates

DAYS of the WEEK	**Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday Saturday Sunday**
MONTHS of the YEAR	**January February March April May June July August September October November December**
SEASONS (in Britain)	**spring** (March–May) **summer** (June–August) **autumn** (September–November) **winter** (December–February)
SPECIAL DAYS	**Christmas Day** (25 December) **New Year's Day** (1 January) your **birthday** (the day you were born)

spring **summer** **autumn** **winter**

SPOTLIGHT capital letters

Days and months have a capital letter.
Monday (NOT ~~monday~~); **January** (NOT ~~january~~)

1 **Put the words in the correct order. Write the numbers in the boxes.**

1 Wednesday ☐ Saturday ☐ ▶Monday 1 Friday ☐ Tuesday ☐ Sunday ☐ Thursday ☐

2 autumn ☐ spring ☐ winter ☐ summer ☐

3 December ☐ March ☐ June ☐ February ☐ November ☐ January ☐

October ☐ April ☐ July ☐ September ☐ May ☐ August ☐

2 **Say the days of the week and the months in the correct order. Use the APP to help you with pronunciation. Practise saying the words.**

3 **Write the <u>next</u> day, month or season.**

▶ May June
1 Monday .....
2 August .....
3 spring .....
4 November .....
5 Friday .....

▶ Sunday Monday
6 March .....
7 January .....
8 autumn .....
9 Wednesday .....
10 June .....

4 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 Which month is your birthday? .....
2 Which season do you like best? Why? .....
3 Which day of the week do you like best? Why? .....
4 What do you do on Christmas Day? .....
5 What do you do on New Year's Day? .....
6 What are two other special days in the year, and when are they? .....
.....

TEST YOURSELF

B Ordinal numbers and dates

1st	first
2nd	second
3rd	third
4th	fourth
5th	fifth
6th	sixth
7th	seventh
8th	eighth
9th	ninth
10th	tenth

11th	eleventh
12th	twelfth
13th	thirteenth
14th	fourteenth
15th	fifteenth
16th	sixteenth
17th	seventeenth
18th	eighteenth
19th	nineteenth
20th	twentieth

21st	twenty-first
22nd	twenty-second
23rd	twenty-third
30th	thirtieth
31st	thirty-first

SPOTLIGHT saying and writing dates and years

We can write the date like this:
- **10 March** OR **10th March** OR **March 10** OR **3.10.07** OR **3/10/07**

We say the date like this:
- ***What's the date today?*** *~ It's **March the tenth**.*
  *~ It's **the tenth of March**.*

Say the year like this:
- 1995 **nineteen ninety-five** ▪ 2006 **two thousand and six**
- 2020 **twenty twenty** OR **two thousand and twenty**

5 **Complete the words.**

▶ ni n th

1 th___rd
2 twent___eth
3 fi___th
4 f___rst
5 eig___th
6 si___teenth
7 fo___rteenth
8 th___rteenth
9 s___cond

6 **Answer the questions below, then practise saying the dates you wrote.**

CALENDAR

MARCH

S	M	T	W	T	F	S
				1	2	3
4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17
18	19	20	21	22	23	24
25	26	27	28	29	30	31

APRIL

S	M	T	W	T	F	S
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21
22	23	24	25	26	27	28
29	30	31				

What's ...

▶ the first Saturday in March? March the third / the third of March.
1 the second Tuesday in April? .....
2 the first Sunday in March? .....
3 the third Tuesday in April? .....
4 the third Wednesday in March? .....
5 the second Wednesday in April? .....
6 the first Friday in April? .....
7 the fifth Saturday in March? .....
8 the fourth Monday in April? .....

7 **Write the dates/years as we say them.**

▶ 6.9 the sixth of September
1 3.2 .....
2 4.7 .....
3 10.12 .....
4 12.8 .....
5 15.1 .....
6 2022 .....
7 21.5 .....
8 30.11 .....
9 22.4 .....
10 2015 .....
11 today's date .....
12 the date next Tuesday .....

TEST YOURSELF

9 Time words and phrases

A The past, the present and the future

Look at the **diary** and read the sentences below. It's midday on Thursday, 11 April.

APRIL

MON 1 Moscow	MON 8 Jonah & Charlotte 7.30	MON 15 London
TUES 2	TUES 9 pay phone bill	TUES 16 dinner with Scott 8.00
WED 3	WED 10 lunch with Ella 1.00 meet Logan 7.45	WED 17
THUR 4	THUR 11 TODAY cinema 7.15	THUR 18 Dr Holton 10.45
FRI 5 Bath	FRI 12 meeting 9.00–12.00 Wheeler's café 7.30	FRI 19 theatre 8.00
SAT 6	SAT 13 stay at Will's	SAT 20 Callum's birthday
SUN 7	SUN 14	SUN 21 to Mum and Dad's for lunch

I was in Moscow **last week.**
I saw Jonah and Charlotte three days **ago.**
I had lunch with Ella **yesterday.**
I went out with Logan **last night.**
I'm going to the cinema **this evening.**

I have a meeting **tomorrow morning.**
I'm staying at Will's **this weekend.**
I'm going to London for three days **next week.**
I have a doctor's **appointment next Thursday.**
I'm seeing my parents **in** ten days.

GLOSSARY

diary	a book where you write what you're going to do	**last night**	(NOT ~~*yesterday night*~~)
last week	(the past) = 1–7 April	**yesterday evening**	(NOT ~~*last evening*~~)
this week	(the present) = 8–14 April	**appointment**	a meeting at a fixed time, often with one person, for work or with a doctor/dentist, etc.
next week	(the future) = 15–21 April	**in ten days, etc.**	ten days, etc. from now
ago	before now; in the past		

1 True or false? Write *T* or *F*.

▶ I was in Moscow last week. T

1 I got back from Moscow two days ago. .....
2 I saw Jonah and Charlotte this week. .....
3 I paid the phone bill three days ago. .....
4 I met Logan yesterday. .....
5 I was in London last week. .....
6 I'm going to the cinema this afternoon. .....
7 I'm going out tomorrow evening. .....
8 I'm seeing Scott in four days. .....
9 I'm seeing the doctor in a week. .....
10 I'm going to the theatre next Friday. .....

2 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ We saw them at the cinema yesterday evening.
1 She saw Paul about three days .....
2 I won't forget Pedro's birthday – I wrote it in my .....
3 She called me at 10 o'clock last .....
4 He wants to come ..... week, not next week.
5 She can't come tomorrow morning. She's got a dentist's .....
6 I'm going to Italy ..... week.

3 **Look at the diary again. It is now Wednesday, 17 April. Write three more things about last week and three things about this week.**

▶ I had lunch with Ella a week ago.
1 ..... on Thursday evening.
2 ..... five days ago.
3 ..... last weekend.
4 ..... tomorrow morning.
5 ..... in three days.
6 ..... this weekend.

TEST YOURSELF

B Time words and tenses

There are some words about time in English that we often use with particular tenses.

ever	Do you **ever** swim in the winter? (present) Have you **ever** been to Moscow? (present perfect)
while	He often phones **while** I'm eating. (present continuous) They arrived **while** I was watching TV. (past continuous)
already	I was **already** there when they arrived. (past) Do you want lunch? ~ No thanks. I've **already** eaten. (present perfect)
recently	I went to the dentist **recently**. (past) I haven't seen Tom **recently**. (present perfect)
yet	I haven't done my homework **yet**. (present perfect) Have you seen Almodovar's new film **yet**? (present perfect)
just	Where are the girls? ~ They've **just** left. (present perfect)
for	I've been in this job **for** three years. (present perfect)
since	We've lived here **since** we got married. (present perfect)

GLOSSARY

ever	at any time (any time now with the present tense, or any time before now with the present perfect)
while	during the time that (sth else is/was happening)
already	before now or before then (but we don't know exactly when). In negative sentences, we use **yet**, not **already**.
recently	not long ago (with the past simple), or in a short period of time before now (with the present perfect)
yet	used for talking about sth that hasn't happened, but you think it will
just	a very short time before now

SPOTLIGHT *for and since*

We use **for** with a period of time.
- ***for** two weeks, six months,* etc.

We use **since** with a point in time in the past:
- ***since** 2003, **since** last year, **since** I came to England,* etc.

We often use these words with the present perfect.
- *I've been at university **for** two years.*
- *I've known Joe **since** 2018.*

4 Complete the sentence with *for* or *since*.

I've known her …

▶ for a year
1 2010
2 ..... a long time
3 ..... about three months
▶ since last year.
4 ..... a couple of years
5 ..... I got married
6 ..... I was at university

5 Circle the correct answer.

▶ My girlfriend wants to go to Ibiza, but I've ***already*** / ***yet*** been there.
1 Paolo is in the classroom. I've ***just*** / ***yet*** seen him.
2 Lily arrived ***while*** / ***ever*** we were having lunch.
3 Do you ***just*** / ***ever*** go to concerts?
4 We haven't seen them ***since*** / ***for*** yesterday.
5 I haven't been to Turkey ***recently*** / ***already***.
6 I want to work abroad, but I haven't found a job ***already*** / ***yet***.
7 Have you ***ever*** / ***yet*** driven a bus?
8 I went to Spain ***just*** / ***recently***. I stayed in Seville ***since*** / ***for*** two weeks.

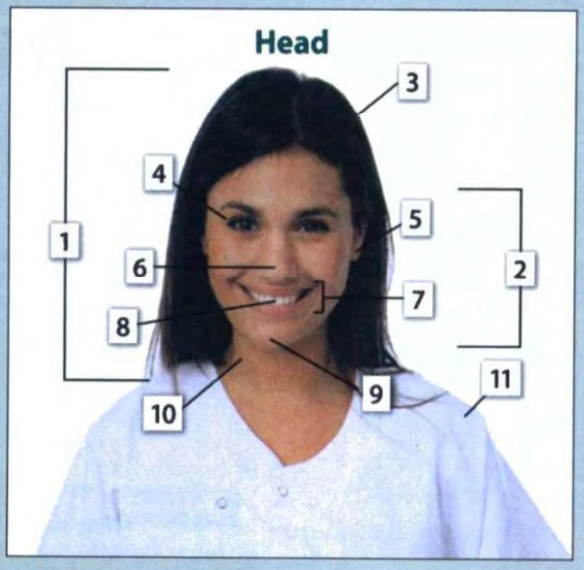
6 Complete the sentences.

▶ He's been in that flat for three months.
1 Have you finished your English course ..... ? ~ No, I've got another two weeks.
2 I was ..... awake when Mum came into my bedroom this morning. I was reading.
3 Where's Sophia? ~ She has ..... gone out. She was here a minute ago.
4 I haven't been to the dentist's ..... . I must make an appointment.
5 Do you ..... go to that café when you're in town?
6 I haven't had lunch ..... . I'm really hungry.
7 George tried to phone me ..... I was in the meeting.
8 We haven't seen Joe ..... he left school.

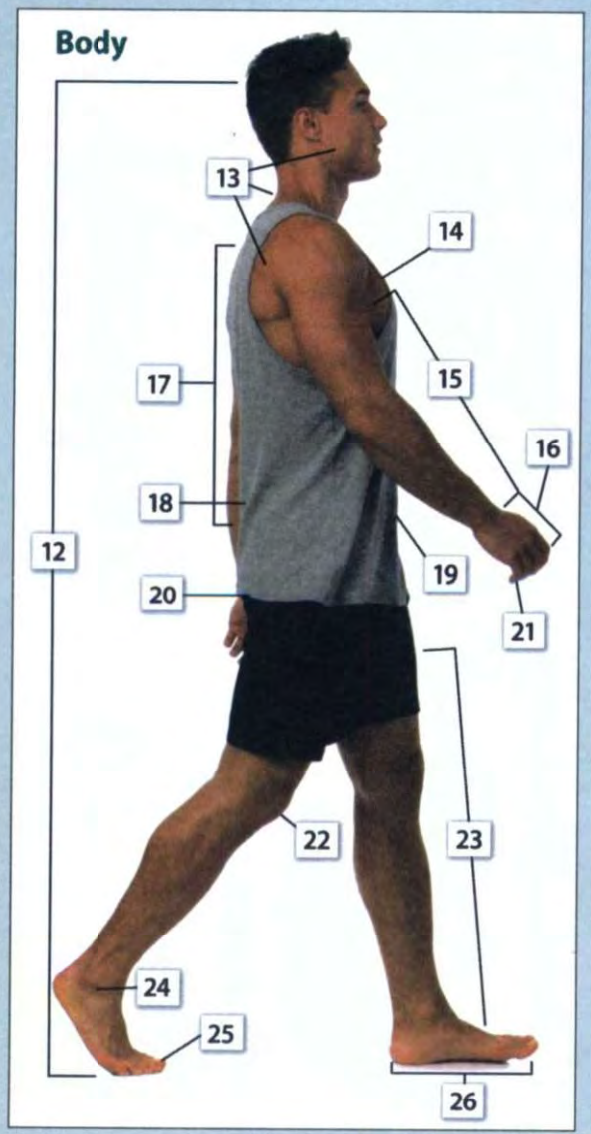
7 Translate the words in bold on this page into your own language.

10 Parts of the body

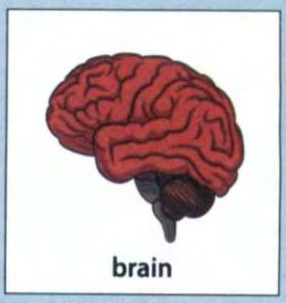
1 head
2 face
3 hair
4 eye
5 ear
6 nose
7 mouth
8 tooth (*pl* teeth)
9 chin
10 neck
11 shoulder



12 body
13 skin
14 chest
15 arm
16 hand
17 back
18 waist
19 stomach
20 bottom
21 finger
22 knee
23 leg
24 ankle
25 toe
26 foot (*pl* feet)



Inside the body



GLOSSARY

body	the total physical form of a person or an animal
hair [U]	*My **hair** is long.* (NOT ~~*My hairs are long.*~~)
skin [U]	It covers the outside of a person or an animal's body.
blood [U]	It is pronounced like *sun*.

1 Tick (✓) the words which are correct. Put a cross (✗) by the words which are wrong.

I've got two …

▶	eyes	✓	ears	☐	backs	☐	ankles	☐
▶	necks	✗	waists	☐	legs	☐	heads	☐
	noses	☐	knees	☐	hands	☐	arms	☐
	feet	☐	shoulders	☐	mouths	☐	teeth	☐

2 Which word is different? Circle it.

▶	finger	arm	(waist)	hand	**4**	nose	bottom	chin	hair
1	foot	shoulder	toe	ankle	**5**	shoulder	chest	neck	blood
2	arm	hand	shoulder	stomach	**6**	teeth	legs	knees	ankle
3	neck	ears	nose	eyes	**7**	bone	brain	heart	finger

3 Complete the words.

▶ h a i r

1	s___ ___n	**5**	f___ ___e	**9**	bl___ ___d
2	n___ ___e	**6**	h___ ___d	**10**	br___ ___n
3	b___ ___k	**7**	te___ ___h	**11**	bo___ ___ ___m
4	c___ ___n	**8**	ch___ ___t	**12**	st___ ___ ___ ___h

4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined vowels the same or different? Write *S* or *D*, and use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶	ch<u>e</u>st	l<u>e</u>g	S	▶	<u>a</u>rm	<u>a</u>nkle	D
1	b<u>o</u>ne	t<u>o</u>e	.....	**6**	bl<u>oo</u>d	f<u>oo</u>t	.....
2	h<u>a</u>nd	b<u>a</u>ck	.....	**7**	f<u>oo</u>t	t<u>oo</u>k	.....
3	h<u>ea</u>d	h<u>ea</u>rt	.....	**8**	st<u>o</u>mach	b<u>o</u>ttom	.....
4	kn<u>ee</u>	f<u>ee</u>t	.....	**9**	sh<u>ou</u>lder	m<u>ou</u>th	.....
5	t<u>oo</u>th	s<u>oo</u>n	.....	**10**	st<u>o</u>mach	bl<u>oo</u>d	.....

5 Which part of the body comes between the other two parts?

▶	eyes	nose	mouth	**4**	chest	.....	head
1	hand	.....	shoulder	**5**	hair	.....	nose
2	waist	.....	leg	**6**	bottom	.....	ankle
3	ankle	.....	toes				

6 Complete the sentences with a part of the body.

▶ I put the soap in my hand .

1 I can't see – there's something in my ..... .

2 People have five ..... at the end of each foot.

3 I have a problem with the middle ..... of my left hand.

4 You sit on your ..... .

5 I usually wash my ..... every two or three days.

6 I had a problem with my ..... so I went to the dentist.

7 My ..... is about 80 cm. It could be about 77 cm if I eat less.

8 We had a lot of sun and now the .....on my hands is a bit red, and they feel hot.

9 Can you stand on one ..... ?

10 I cut my finger with a knife, and there was a lot of ..... .

11 When my aunt was in hospital, she nearly died: her ..... stopped for several minutes.

12 If you want to make good decisions, you have to use your ..... .

13 My brother broke a ..... in one of his fingers.

14 Your skin covers the whole of your ..... .

TEST YOURSELF

11 Describing people

A Height and weight

How tall is she? She's ... Is he **thin** or **fat**? He's ... How much does he **weigh**?

tall

average height

short

slim

average weight

overweight

GLOSSARY

height	(sounds like *white*) how tall sb is: *She's 175 cm* ***tall***. OR *She's 175 cm* ***in height***. **cm = centimetres**
weigh	*He* ***weighs*** *60 kg.* OR *He's 60 kg* ***in weight***. **kg = kilos**
slim	thin, but **slim** is more positive
weight	(sounds the same as *wait*) describes how heavy sb or sth is
put on weight	become heavier/fatter OPP **lose weight**

SPOTLIGHT *quite*

Quite is a very common word, and it means 'not very'.

- *She's* ***quite*** *tall.* (= not very tall but more than average height)
- *He plays the piano* ***quite*** *well.* (= not very well but better than OK)

1 True or false? Write *T* or *F*.

▶ If you are ***overweight***, you aren't slim. T

1 ***Average height*** means not fat and not slim. .....

2 ***Quite thin*** and ***very thin*** are the same. .....

3 ***Put on weight*** and ***lose weight*** are opposites. .....

4 If someone is ***fat***, they are ***overweight***. .....

5 The answer to ***How much does he weigh?*** is ***200 cm***. .....

6 ***How tall are you?*** is a correct question. .....

7 ***Average weight*** means quite slim. .....

8 ***Thin*** and ***slim*** mean the same, but ***thin*** is more positive. .....

9 If you ***lose weight***, you get thinner. .....

10 ***Average height*** and ***average weight*** are the same. .....

2 Complete the dialogues. Don't use the words in *italics* in your answer.

▶ Is he quite short? ~ No, he's very tall.

1 She's not tall or short, really. ~ No, she's average .....

2 Are they quite ***thin***? ~ Yes, they're both very .....

3 Is he ***overweight***? ~ Yes, he's getting a bit .....

4 Is she very slim? ~ No, but she's ..... slim.

5 Max is looking a bit fat. ~ I know. He has ..... 10 kilos.

6 Is he about average weight? ~ I think so. He ..... 75 kg.

7 Scarlet isn't very tall, is she? ~ No, actually she's quite .....

8 Ben is looking very slim. ~ Yes, he has ..... a lot of weight.

9 This box is very heavy. ~ Is it? How ..... does it weigh?

10 Is Willie very tall? ~ No, but he's ..... tall.

TEST YOURSELF

B Features

1 a **good-looking man** with **dark curly** hair and a **beard**

2 a **pretty teenager** with **long blonde** hair and a **lovely smile**

3 a very **attractive** woman with **straight fair** hair

4 a **middle-aged** man with **short grey** hair

GLOSSARY

feature(s)	an important part of sth, e.g. *your face, your eyes*
teenager	a person between the ages of 13 and 19 **teenage** *adj*
lovely	beautiful or very nice: *a lovely smile/dress*
smile	(*see picture 2*) **Smile** is also a verb: *He smiled at me.*
middle-aged	about 45 to 60 years old

SPOTLIGHT *good-looking, beautiful, etc.*

For a woman, we can say **beautiful** or **(very) good-looking/attractive**. For a man, we usually say **good-looking** or **handsome**. For girls especially, we can say **beautiful**, but we often use **pretty**.

3 **Look at the pictures. True or false? Write *T* or *F*. If false, correct the mistake.**

▶ The girl isn't a teenager. F – She is a teenager.

1 She's got a lovely smile. .....

2 She's got dark hair. .....

3 It's also quite short. .....

4 The young man isn't handsome. .....

5 He's got dark hair. .....

6 The woman has got blonde hair. .....

7 Her hair is straight. .....

8 She's beautiful. .....

9 The other man is old. .....

10 His hair is dark. .....

4 **Complete the words in the texts.**

My sister (15): ▶is a teenager. She's very **(1)** pr....., with **(2)** d..... brown hair, and she has a lovely **(3)** sm....., which is one of her best **(4)** fe.....

My brother (18): is also a **(5)** te..... He's very **(6)** g.....-l..... and he knows it. He's got short **(7)** st..... hair, and no **(8)** be.....

My father (52): is **(9)** m.....-a..... now. I think he's still a **(10)** ha..... man, but his hair is quite **(11)** gr.....

My mother (50): has short **(12)** bl..... hair. She was **(13)** be..... when she was young and she is still very **(14)** at.....

Me (20): I am no longer a **(15)** t..... boy. I'm different from my sister because I've got **(16)** f..... hair, and different from my brother because my hair is **(17)** cu..... And I'm also different from them because, unfortunately, I'm not very **(18)** g.....-.....

5 ABOUT YOU **Write two or three sentences describing yourself using some of the vocabulary from this page. Then look at the pictures again. Do you think the four people are beautiful/handsome/attractive? If possible, talk to someone else about them.**

TEST YOURSELF

12 Physical actions

A Using your body

sit down
pt **sat down**

stand up
pt **stood up**

walk

run
pt **ran**

fall over
pt **fell over**

ride
pt **rode**

climb

jump

lie down
pt **lay**

dance

get on
pt **got on**

get off
pt **got off**

SPOTLIGHT irregular verbs

Many of the verbs above are **irregular**: the past simple is not formed by adding *-ed*. There is a list of the past simple and past participle forms of all the irregular verbs in the book on page 198. See also Unit 39.

1 Write the present form of the verbs.

▶ walked walk
1 lay down .....
2 fell over .....
3 rode .....
4 stood up .....
5 sat down .....
6 got on .....
7 ran .....

2 Complete these sentences with verbs from above.

▶ When you go to bed, you do this. lie down
1 When you hear music and you're happy, you do this. .....
2 When you're tired, you do this. ..... or .....
3 When you don't see something on the floor in front of you, you could do this. .....
4 When you go on a bike, you do this. .....
5 When you're waiting at the bus stop and the bus arrives, you do this. .....

3 Complete the sentences. You need the past simple in sentences 6–9.

▶ I sat down at my desk and worked for two hours.
1 The children have to ..... when the teacher comes into the classroom.
2 I often ..... to work in the summer – it's only twenty minutes on foot.
3 I want to ..... Mount Kilamanjaro next year.
4 Do you often ..... when you go to clubs?
5 The doctor asked me to ..... on the bed.
6 The boys ..... into the swimming pool.
7 She ..... her bike to school this morning.
8 I was late, so I ..... to the bus stop, but I ..... over and hurt my leg.
9 She ..... the bus, went into the station and got ..... a train.

TEST YOURSELF

B Using your hands

push

pull

carry

hold *pt* **held**

pick sth up

put sth down *pt* **put**

break *pt* **broke**

give *pt* **gave**

close/shut *pt* **shut**
OPP **open**

drop

throw *pt* **threw**

catch *pt* **caught**

4 **Cover the pictures and underline the correct answers.**

▶ You can drop *a glass / a house*.
1 You can open *a door / a light*.
2 You can catch *a car / a ball*.
3 You can throw *a book / a house*.
4 You can push *the sky / a person*.
5 You can hold *a dictionary / a country*.
6 You can break *some juice / a pencil*.
7 You can pick up *a car / a bicycle*.

5 **Do you need two hands to do these things? Or can you do them with one hand?**

▶ shut a dictionary 1
▶ give someone five dictionaries 2

1	pick up a cup	.....	drop a cup	.....	5	throw a ball	.....	catch a ball	.....
2	pick up a TV	.....	turn on a TV	.....	6	drop a ruler	.....	break a ruler	.....
3	break a bottle	.....	open a bottle	.....	7	carry a door	.....	close a door	.....
4	pull a person	.....	carry a person	.....	8	pick up a baby	.....	hold a baby	.....

6 **Complete the sentences with suitable verbs from above.**

▶ I opened the garage door and then three of us pushed the car out.
1 It was cold, so he _____ the window.
2 She _____ the cat and _____ it _____ in its bed.
3 I'm afraid I _____ your best glass and it broke. I'm really sorry.
4 Four of us _____ the boat out of the sea and then _____ it along the beach.
5 I _____ the baby to Mum and she _____ it in her arms.
6 I _____ the ball to my brother but he dropped it on the floor.
7 The box is very heavy. I can't _____ it to the car.

TEST YOURSELF

13 Personal information

A Facts

Sandro is studying English in Cambridge. The **receptionist** needs some **information**.

Receptionist	**What's your family name?** (OR **What's your surname?**)
Sandro	Bertoli.
Receptionist	And **your first name?**
Sandro	Sandro.
Receptionist	OK, Sandro. **What's your address** and **postcode?**
Sandro	45 Alfred Road, CB2 4TX.
Receptionist	So, Sandro, **where are you from?** (OR **Where do you come from?**)
Sandro	Italy.
Receptionist	**Whereabouts** in Italy? (OR **Where** in Italy **exactly?**)
Sandro	Pisa.
Receptionist	**What do you do** in Pisa? (OR **What's your job?**)
Sandro	**I'm a** doctor.
Receptionist	And **are you married** or **single?**
Sandro	I'm married. My wife is German.
Receptionist	And **how old** are you?
Sandro	I'm 34.

SPOTLIGHT *information*

Information [U] means facts about people or things, e.g. *name, address,* etc. **Information** is uncountable. Don't say ~~*an information*~~ OR ~~*informations*~~.
Personal information is information about one person.

1 **In each sentence, one word is in the wrong place. Correct it.**

▶ Are married you?

1 I need some information personal.
2 Where do come from you?
3 Do what you do?
4 What your postcode is?
5 How old you are?
6 Where the receptionist is from?

2 **Write the questions with different words but with the same meaning.**

▶ What's your family name? What's your surname ?
1 Where are you from? Where do ?
2 Whereabouts in Poland? Where in Poland ?
3 What's your job? What do ?
4 Where do you live? What's your ?
5 What's your age? How ?

3 **Complete the questions in the table.**

	QUESTIONS	ANSWERS	ABOUT YOU
▶	What's your name ?	Kovács.	
1	And your name?	Zsuzsa.	
2	Where are you ?	Hungary.	
3	in Hungary?	The capital, Budapest.	
4	your address?	Tarcali utca 27.	
5	And the ?	1113.	
6	And what you do?	I'm an engineer.	
7	Are you ?	No, I'm single.	
8	How are you?	I'm 27.	

4 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to the questions in the table, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

B Talking about your English course

Sandro has been in Cambridge now for two months and is talking to the receptionist again.

Receptionist So, Sandro. What's your English **level** now?
Sandro I'm intermediate.
Receptionist Yes, you **communicate** very well.
Sandro Thank you, but I still need to **improve**.
Receptionist Why's that?
Sandro Because I want to work **abroad** and **help** people in other countries. For that, my English has to be **perfect**.
Receptionist So **how long are** you **planning to** stay here?
Sandro I don't know.
Receptionist But you're enjoying your **course**?
Sandro Yes, it's **great**. I've made a lot of **progress**.

GLOSSARY

level	how high sth is, e.g. *an elementary/ intermediate/advanced* ***level*** *of English*
communicate (with sb)	be able to say what you mean, or have a conversation with other people
improve	become better **improvement** *n*
abroad	in another country
help	do sth good for sb so their life is easier
perfect	so good it can't be better
how long?	how much time? (NOT ~~*how long time?*~~)
plan (to do) sth	decide what you are going to do and how you are going to do it
course	a number of lessons
great	very good or nice SYNS **fantastic, wonderful**
progress	improvement

5 True or false? Write *T* or *F*.

▶ If you ***help*** someone, you make their life easier. T
1 ***Perfect*** means the same as good. .....
2 ***Plan to do something*** is the same as decide what to do and how to do it. .....
3 ***Improve*** means to make something different. .....
4 ***Abroad*** means in another country. .....
5 ***A language course*** means the same as ***a language level***. .....
6 If you ***communicate*** something, you are able to say what you mean. .....
7 ***How long?*** means the same as ***how far?*** .....
8 ***Great*** means the same as ***fantastic***. .....

6 Agree with the first speaker, but replace the words in *italics* with different words.

▶ The course is ***really good***. ~ Yes, it's great.
1 She's ***getting better***. ~ Yes, she's _____.
2 Her English is ***very good*** now. ~ Yes, it's at a high _____.
3 She can ***express ideas*** very well. ~ Yes, she _____.
4 She wants to work ***in another country***. ~ Yes, she wants to go and work _____.
5 They're ***thinking about*** going to Spain. ~ Yes, they're _____ to go there.
6 I thought it was ***fantastic***. ~ Yes, it was _____.
7 He's really ***improving***. ~ Yes, he's making a lot of _____.
8 He wants to ***make*** people's ***lives better***. ~ Yes, he wants to _____.

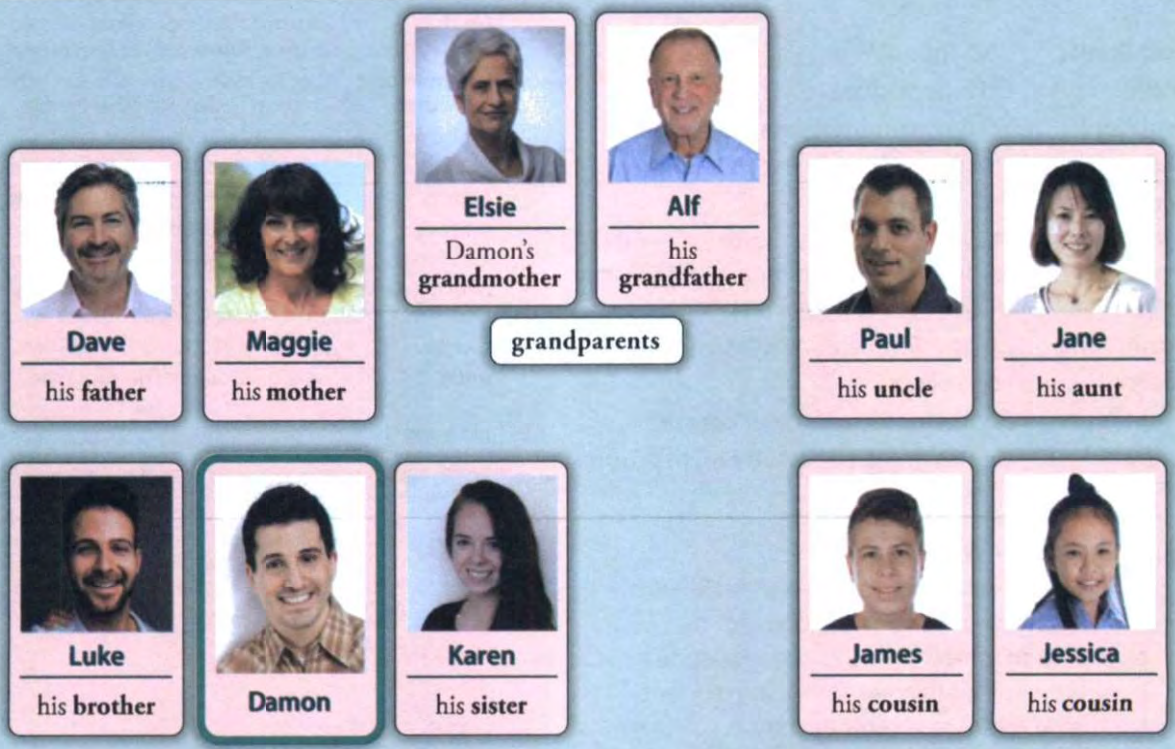
7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 What's your English level? _____
2 How well do you communicate in English? _____
3 Do you want or need to improve? _____
4 Are you making progress? _____
5 Are you planning to go to an English-speaking country? If so, where? _____
6 Would you like to work abroad? _____

TEST YOURSELF

14 Family

A Damon's family tree



All the people here are Damon's **relatives**.
Luke is Dave and Maggie's **son**.
Karen is Dave and Maggie's **daughter**.
Maggie is Dave's **wife**.
Dave is Maggie's **husband**.
Elsie and Alf are Maggie's **parents**.

Dave is Paul's **brother-in-law**.
Jane is Maggie's **sister-in-law**.
James is Maggie's **nephew**.
Karen is Paul's **niece**.
Luke is Elsie's **grandson**.
Jessica is Elsie's **granddaughter**.

1 Complete the sentences about Damon's family.

▶ Paul is Elsie and Alf's son.
1 Maggie is Elsie's _____.
2 Luke is Paul's _____.
3 Jessica is Maggie's _____.
4 Maggie is Jane's _____.
5 Karen is Jessica's _____.
6 Elsie and Alf are Damon's _____.
7 Paul is Jane's _____.
8 Elsie is Jessica's _____.
9 Paul is Luke's _____.
10 Maggie is Jessica's _____.
11 James, Dave and Alf are Damon's _____.

2 Complete the table.

MALE	FEMALE	MALE	FEMALE
▶ father	mother	brother-in-law	
brother		grandfather	
husband		grandson	
nephew		cousin	
relative		parent	
son		uncle	

3 ABOUT YOU **Draw your family tree. Write the names and *brother, sister, uncle,* etc.**

TEST YOURSELF

B Family history

My parents **got married** 25 years ago. Two years later, my brother Luke **was born**. Then I was born a year after that. **I've** also **got** a sister, Karen, who is two years younger than me, so **there are five of us** in my family. Luke has got a **girlfriend**, Amy, and they live in a small flat. Karen and I still live with **Mum** and **Dad**. We **spend** a lot of **time together**.

GLOSSARY

get married	become husband or wife with sb **OPP get divorced** stop being husband or wife with sb
be born	start your life
have got	have
there are five of us	(NOT ~~*We are five.*~~)
girlfriend	a girl or woman who sb has a romantic relationship with **ALSO boyfriend**
mum *inf*	mother
dad *inf*	father
spend time with sb	be with sb and do things with them
together	with each other: *My family all live **together** in the same house.*

SPOTLIGHT comparatives and superlatives

- *Damon **is 22 (years old)**.* (NOT ~~*Damon is 22 years.*~~)
- *His brother **is older than** him. He's 23.*
- *His sister **is younger than** him. She's 20.*
- *Luke is **the oldest in the family**.*
- *Karen is **the youngest** in the family.*

4 **True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ Damon is Luke's older brother. F

1 Damon's parents are divorced. .....
2 Damon was born after Luke. .....
3 Luke is younger than Karen. .....
4 Luke and Amy live together. .....
5 Luke's mum has three children. .....
6 Damon is Amy's boyfriend. .....
7 There are four in Damon's family. .....
8 Karen is the youngest in the family. .....
9 Damon and Karen are often together. .....
10 Luke is Damon's dad. .....

5 **Write the words in the correct order.**

▶ his / divorced / are / parents — His parents are divorced.

1 born / I / 2001 / in / was .....
2 spend / of / together / we / lot / time / a .....
3 older / my / than / girlfriend / me / is .....
4 in / six / my / of / are / family / there / us .....
5 the / family / I / youngest / in / my / am .....
6 brother / older / younger / an / 've got / I / a / and / sister .....

6 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 How many people are there in your family? .....
2 When were you born? .....
3 Have you got any brothers and sisters? If yes, are they older or younger than you? .....
4 In your family, who do spend a lot of time with? .....
5 Do you all live together? .....

TEST YOURSELF

15 Personality

A What's he/she like?

Word	Example	Meaning
friendly	*The students in my class are all really **friendly**. It's great.*	happy to meet and talk to other people OPP **unfriendly**
kind	*He visited me in hospital, which was really **kind**.*	friendly and good to other people
nice	*I met Charlie on holiday, and he's a really **nice** guy.*	kind and friendly (a very common word in spoken English)
fun	*I love Caitlin; she's **great fun**.*	sb or sth that makes you happy ***Good/great fun*** is common.
funny	*Josh makes me **laugh** – he's a really **funny** man.*	making you **laugh**
relaxed	*I felt very **relaxed** after my holiday.*	calm and not worried
clever	*Tom is really **clever** – the best student in our class.*	quick at learning and understanding things SYN **intelligent** OPP **stupid**
patient	*My boyfriend is often late, but I'm very **patient**.*	able to stay calm and not get angry when you are waiting
strange	*He's a **strange** man – I never know what he's thinking.*	unusual or surprising

SPOTLIGHT *What's he/she/it like?*

We use this question to find out more about somebody/something.

- ***What's*** *Jack* ***like?*** *~ He's very nice.* (NOT ~~*He's like very nice.*~~)
- ***What was*** *the teacher* ***like?*** *~ She was* ***good fun.***

1 Complete the words.

▶ f u n

1 n____e
2 f_____y
3 c l_____r
4 s t_____e
5 f_____y
6 p__t_____t
7 la___h
8 r__l__x__d

2 Cover the table, then answer the questions.

What's …

▶ a synonym for nice? friendly
1 the opposite of friendly? _____
2 a synonym for clever? _____
3 the opposite of clever? _____

What do you call someone who …

4 is able to learn quickly? _____
5 makes you laugh? _____
6 is able to wait for things? _____
7 is calm and doesn't worry? _____

3 Complete the conversations.

1 What ▶ 's _____ Alex like? ~ Oh, he's very funny. We _____ a lot when we're together.
2 What are Ana's parents _____ ? ~ Well, her mother's great _____. I like her very much. But I never know what to say to her father – he's very _____.
3 _____ was your grandmother like? ~ She was very _____ : she always helped everyone. And she was _____ too: she went to university.

4 ABOUT YOU **Write the names of people you know who are:**

kind _____ very friendly _____ patient with you _____
good fun _____ intelligent _____ strange _____

TEST YOURSELF

B We like each other

WHY WE LIKE

each other

Gemma: I met Sophie at university. I was **on my own** in the café, and she came and talked to me. She's like that. What's interesting is that we're **completely different.** She has a very **active social life** and meets lots of new people. I'm very **quiet** and **serious.** But it didn't **matter.** We became friends and **shared a flat** for two years. I'm **tidy** and did most of the housework. Sophie's quite **lazy,** but she is a great cook and a **really** nice person.

GLOSSARY

each other	She likes me and I like her. = We like **each other.**
on my own	not with other people SYN **alone**
completely different	totally different; different in every way
active	busy and able to do a lot of things
social life	going out with friends
quiet	Somebody who is **quiet** doesn't say very much.
serious	A **serious** person thinks a lot and doesn't laugh much.
matter	be important; **it doesn't matter** = it's not important
share a flat	live in the same flat as another person
tidy	A **tidy** person likes everything to be in the right place. OPP **untidy**
lazy	A **lazy** person doesn't like working. OPP **hard-working**

SPOTLIGHT *really*

Really is important in spoken English. It means 'very', and you can use it before most adjectives.

- *I'm in a **really** nice class.*
- *She was **really** lazy.*

5 **Is the pronunciation of the underlined sound the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ social / doesn't D
1 other / own .....
2 hardworking / doesn't .....
3 alone / social .....
4 completely / other .....
5 completely / serious .....

6 **Read the text again. True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ Sophie likes cooking. T
1 Gemma was alone when she met Sophie. .....
2 Gemma and Sophie are similar. .....
3 Gemma doesn't say very much. .....
4 They lived together at university. .....
5 Gemma is really lazy. .....
6 Sophie goes out a lot. .....
7 Gemma's untidy. .....
8 It was a problem that they were completely different. .....

7 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ I never put things away. I'm very untidy.
1 When we met, I was on my _____ and wanted someone to talk to.
2 I've always had an active social _____: I go out most nights.
3 We wanted to _____ a flat together.
4 Do you want me to help? ~ No, it doesn't _____.
5 My sister and I are _____ different.
6 We've always liked each _____.

8 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

Questionnaire

What are you like?

1 Are you tidy or untidy? _____
2 Are you hard-working or a bit lazy? _____
3 Are you quiet? _____
4 Are you serious? _____
5 Do you have an active social life? _____
6 Do you like being on your own? _____

TEST YOURSELF

16 Relationships

A Romantic relationships

Max is my **partner**, and we have a very good **relationship**. We've **been together** for about two years. I started to **go out with** him after I came to London. We met at my **ex-boyfriend's** house, and because Max lived near me, it was easy for us to **get to know** each other. Now Max wants us to **get married** and **have a baby**, but I'm not sure. I have friends who are happily married, but I also know married **couples** who have **separated** and **are** now **divorced**. I don't want that to happen to us.

GLOSSARY

partner	sb you have a romantic relationship with (your *boyfriend, girlfriend, wife* or *husband*)	**get to know sb**	learn more about sb and become friends
be together	be in a romantic relationship	**get married**	become husband or wife with sb
go out with sb	have a romantic relationship with sb	**have a baby**	become a new mother/father
ex-boyfriend	a person who was your boyfriend in the past ALSO **ex-girlfriend**, **ex-husband**, etc.	**couple**	two people, often in a romantic relationship
		separate	stop being together
		be divorced	married in the past but not now

SPOTLIGHT *relationship*

You have a **relationship** with somebody. It can be good or bad.

- *I have a **good relationship** with my classmates.*
- *He has a **difficult relationship** with his father.*

We often talk about **romantic relationships** with wives, boyfriends, etc.

1 **Make six more phrases using words from the box.**

get to	ex-	be ✓	get	go out	have	romantic
together ✓	know somebody			boyfriend	with somebody	

a baby	relationship
married	

▶ be together

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

2 **Write the words in the correct order.**

▶ get / to / they / married / want They want to get married.

1 baby / last / had / a / year / they .....

2 separated / January / they / in .....

3 have / good / a / very / relationship / we .....

4 boyfriend / you / how / your / get / did / to / know .....?

5 three / together / for / they / years / were .....

6 with / six / went / him / months / I / for / out .....

3 **Complete the sentences with a single word.**

▶ They have a very good relationship.

1 Tom ..... married last summer, but I don't know his new ..... .

2 We ..... to know each other at university, and we've been ..... now for a year.

3 I know Tom and Lucy very well. They're a lovely ..... .

4 She went ..... with him last year, but they ..... in January.

5 Sonia is his ..... girlfriend, but they still talk to each other.

6 My parents were married for twenty years, but now they're ..... . My father has a new ....., but I don't think they're going to ..... married.

TEST YOURSELF

B Friends

WHY WE LIKE each other

Sophie: I **get on very well with** Gemma – she's great. I don't know why, because we've got very different **personalities**. We first **met** at university about six years ago, and then we **became flatmates**. If I have a problem, Gemma is the first person I go to her for **advice**. And she always gives me good advice. We don't **see** each other very often now because we live in different cities, but I've **known** her for quite a long time, and she will always be my **best friend**.

GLOSSARY

each other	She likes me and I like her. = We like **each other**.
get on (well) with sb	have a good relationship with sb
personality	what a person is like that makes them different from other people
meet *pt* **met**	**1** see and speak to sb for the first time **2** go to a place and wait for sb: *We're* ***meeting*** *them at 7.30.*
become	begin to be sth: ***become friends/ flatmates***
flatmate	a person you live with, but not in a romantic relationship
advice [U]	an opinion or information that you give to help sb with a problem **give (sb) advice**
see sb	talk to or visit sb
know *pt* **knew** *pp* **known**	If you **know sb**, you have met them. If you **have known sb** for a long time, you are often friends.

SPOTLIGHT *friend*

A **friend** is a person that you like and know well. Your **best friend** is your most important friend. You can also have a **close friend** (= a very good friend) or an **old friend** (= somebody you have known a long time).

4 **Are the sentences the same or different? Write *S* or *D*.**

▶ We met last year. / I have known her for a year. S

1 We live near each other. / We are flatmates. .....

2 We get on very well. / We have a very good relationship. .....

3 I see her every Saturday. / I visit her every Saturday. .....

4 She's my best friend. / She's a close friend. .....

5 We became friends. / We stopped being friends. .....

6 She gives me advice. / She helps me with my problems. .....

5 **Complete the sentences**

▶ Abigail and I soon became friends.

1 My best friend often gives me good _____.

2 Charles and Ed are good friends – they see _____ other almost every day.

3 Mia is an _____ friend – I've _____ her for many years.

4 Sammy seems to _____ on well with everyone – he's very popular.

5 I first _____ my wife when we were at university – we were only twenty.

6 I've _____ Olivia a long time, but we don't _____ each other very much now.

7 I'm _____ my friends outside the cinema at 7 o'clock.

8 Emma was just my _____ – we shared a flat for a year. Now she's my _____ friend, but we have very different _____.

6 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 Who is your best friend? _____

2 How long have you known him/her? _____

3 How and where did you first meet? _____

4 How often do you see each other? _____

5 Why do you get on well with him/her? _____

6 Do you often give each other advice? _____

TEST YOURSELF

17 Feelings

A Feelings and emotions

1 She's **happy.**

2 She's **sad.** SYN **unhappy**

3 They're **excited.**

4 He's **bored.**

5 He's **angry.**

6 She's **scared/afraid (of sth/sb).**

7 She's **embarrassed.**

8 She's **surprised.**

9 He's **in love.**

10 She's **worried.**

SPOTLIGHT *feelings and emotions*

Feelings or **emotions** are what you have inside yourself.
We use adjectives after the verb **be** to describe our feelings, e.g. *I'm* ***happy/sad/angry/afraid,*** etc.
We can also use many of these adjectives after the verb **feel** (*pt* **felt**): *I feel* ***happy/sad/angry,*** etc.

1 Complete the words.

▶ ha p p y

1 ang_____
2 wor_____
3 bo_____
4 sc_____
5 emb_____
6 unh_____
7 af_____
8 sur_____
9 ex_____

2 Answer the questions.

▶ What's the opposite of ***sad***? happy

1 What's another word for ***feelings***? .....
2 What's the opposite of ***excited***? .....
3 What's another word for ***unhappy***? .....
4 What's another word for ***afraid***? .....
5 If two people love each other, how can we say it another way? They are ....
6 If you do something stupid, how do you feel? .....

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ The teacher got angry because the children were running round the classroom.

1 I got very ..... yesterday because I couldn't find my credit card. I found it this morning.
2 I got 100% in my English exam. I was happy but also very ..... .
3 My brothers get very ..... when they're watching football on TV.
4 I made a mistake and everyone laughed. I ..... stupid and a bit ..... .
5 My sister and Jake are getting married. My parents are ..... because they like Jake.
6 I didn't like the film and I was ..... after half an hour.
7 My aunt never travels by plane. She's ..... of flying.
8 Oliver and Marcia met on holiday. I think they're in ..... .
9 I had different ..... when I first flew in a plane: I was excited but also a bit scared.

TEST YOURSELF

B How did you feel?

How did you **feel** ...

when you went to bed last night?	~ Quite **tired**.
on your walk when it got hot?	~ I was **thirsty**.
after you had nothing to eat for hours?	~ I was **hungry**.
when everyone came to your party?	~ I was very **pleased**.
when you forgot a friend's birthday?	~ I was very **sorry**.
before your important exam today?	~ I was **nervous**.
when you broke your finger?	~ I was **in pain**.
when your dog died?	~ I was very **upset**, and I **cried**.
when you **argued with** / **had an argument with** your best friend?	~ I felt **bad** and **unhappy** about it.

She's crying.

4 **How do you feel? Write your answers.**

▶ It's the end of a working day. tired

1 Your best friend hasn't invited you to his party. _____

2 You are meeting your boyfriend or girfriend's parents for the first time. _____

3 You've had nothing to drink for hours. _____

4 It's lunchtime and you didn't have breakfast. _____

5 You walked into a door and hit your head. _____

6 A friend wrote a letter to thank you for something. _____

7 A friend asked you to do something, and you forgot. _____

5 **Complete the dialogues.**

▶ When's lunch? ~ I don't know. Are you hungry ?

1 I've got my driving test tomorrow. ~ Oh, are you _____ ?

2 I'm going to bed. ~ OK. Are you _____ ?

3 Did Dan finally pass his exam? ~ Yes, he's so _____ .

4 Did Amelia fall down the stairs? ~ Yes, she was in a lot of _____ .

5 Steph looked very angry. ~ I know. She's just had an _____ with her boyfriend.
Really? What about? ~ I don't know, but they often _____ .

6 I'm really _____ I couldn't come last night. ~ That's OK.

7 I'm _____ . ~ OK. What would you like to drink?

8 Julia's mother was in hospital and died last week, so Julia is very _____ .
~ Oh, that's probably why she was _____ when I saw her.

6 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

Questionnaire

When was the last time you ...

1 felt tired? _____

2 felt nervous? _____

3 felt hungry? _____

4 felt thirsty? _____

5 argued with somebody? _____

6 were in pain? _____

7 cried? _____

8 felt pleased? _____

TEST YOURSELF

18 Prepositions: time

at	**a time** **at** six o'clock **at** midday/midnight	**a mealtime** **at** breakfast **at** lunch / lunchtime **at** dinner / dinner time

on	**a day** **on** Tuesday **on** Friday evening **on** Tuesdays = every Tuesday **on** my birthday **on** Christmas Day	**a date** **on** September 10 **on** 6th May

in	**a part of a day** **in** the morning **in** the afternoon **in** the evening	**a season** **in** (the) spring/summer/ autumn/winter	**a month, year or century** **in** July/December **in** 1990/2050 **in** the 21st **century** (= 2000–2099)

SPOTLIGHT *at*

We also use **at** in these time phrases:

- *I relax **at the weekend**.*
- *What are you doing **at Christmas / at New Year?***
- *Some doctors work **at night**.* (NOT ~~*in the night*~~)
- *He's not here **at the moment*** (= now).

1 Cross out the word or phrase which is not correct.

▶ **in** the spring / ~~February 15th~~ / the evening

1 **at** lunchtime / 2020 / the weekend
2 **in** August / summer / Friday
3 **on** April / your birthday / Saturdays
4 **at** night / the morning / half past seven
5 **in** autumn / the 20th century / 4.00
6 **on** midnight / June 2nd / Sunday afternoon
7 **at** breakfast / midday / the autumn
8 **on** winter / Christmas Day / 5th May
9 **in** the afternoon / lunchtime / 2018
10 **at** New Year / the evening / six o'clock

2 Write the correct preposition.

We went to Brighton for a few days last week. We left ▶ on Thursday morning **(1)** ..... about nine o'clock and got there **(2)** ..... lunchtime. We found a nice hotel, and then **(3)** ..... the afternoon we went to the beach. The weather can be quite cold **(4)** ..... spring, but it was great – really sunny. **(5)** ..... Friday, we had lunch with an old friend. I first met her at university **(6)** ..... 2007. Then **(7)** ..... the evening, we went to a restaurant and got home **(8)** ..... midnight. **(9)** ..... the weekend, we went shopping and then went back to the beach. We'd like to go back for the Brighton Festival, which starts **(10)** ..... May 6th.

3 ABOUT YOU **Write answers using a preposition and a time phrase from the table, or ask another student.**

When do you …

get up? .....
study English? .....
go swimming? .....
usually go out with friends? .....
watch TV? .....
go to bed? .....

When …

is your birthday? .....
were you born? .....
are there public holidays in your country? .....
.....
.....

TEST YOURSELF

19 Prepositions: direction

go **into** go **out of** (the house)

go **across** the road

go **up** go **down** (the stairs)

go **along** the road

go **past** the church

go **through** the gate

go **under** go **across/over** (the bridge)

go **towards** the hill

1 Circle the correct word.

▶ Don't run down the *hill* / *town*.
1 Walk under the *trees* / *field*.
2 Drive along the *city* / *motorway*.
3 Don't go across the *river* / *gate*.
4 Go into the *beach* / *shop*.
5 Go towards the *church* / *clouds*.
6 Walk through the *gate* / *stairs*.
7 Go up the *floor* / *mountain*.
8 We flew over the *sky* / *field*.
9 Walk out of the *building* / *hill*.

2 Complete the sentences with a preposition. Use a different one in each sentence.

▶ Go straight on, along this road.
1 We shouted hello as the boat went _____ the bridge.
2 She went _____ the hotel and spoke to the receptionist.
3 They drove _____ the hill to look at the view from the top.
4 I walked _____ the village, which was about a kilometre away.
5 We drove _____ a restaurant on the way to the station.
6 He came _____ the door and fell over. It was very funny.
7 I came _____ the bank and saw the accident.
8 We went _____ the hill, into the valley below.
9 The dog saw a cat in one of the gardens, and he just ran _____ the road.

3 Complete the sentences with a preposition.

ABOUT YOU

▶ What do you see when you go out of the building where you live? _____
1 Do you ever walk _____ a bridge near your home? _____
2 Do you ever drive _____ a river or a railway line? _____
3 Do you walk _____ a gate when you leave your home? _____
4 Have you ever walked _____ the River Thames? _____
5 When you walk to work, do you go _____ any interesting buildings? _____

4 ABOUT YOU **Write answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

20 Prepositions: place

A *at, in, on*

at	**a place where something happens** Let's meet **at** the bank / **at** the bus stop. I saw him **at** the match / **at** the party / **at** home **at** work / **at** school.

in	**something with walls or sides** **in** a box / **in** a cupboard **in** a room / **in** an office / **in** a flat **in** a garden / **in** a park	**a big area** **in** a village / **in** a town / **in** a city **in the countryside** **in** London/Spain/Asia/the world

on	**something long** **on** the road / **on** the coast **on** a river	**something flat** **on** the table / **on** the wall **on** the first floor	**in** OR **on**	He's **in** the river. She's **on** the river.

1 **Underline the correct preposition.**

▶ I live *in* / *on* Canada.

1 She's not ***in*** / ***on*** her office.
2 The photos are ***in*** / ***on*** the wall.
3 We met ***in*** / ***at*** a golf match.
4 We stayed ***in*** / ***on*** a lovely village.
5 He's swimming ***in*** / ***on*** the pool.
6 Barcelona is ***in*** / ***on*** the coast.
7 We live ***at*** / ***in*** the countryside.
8 There is a white line ***at*** / ***on*** the road.
9 Dinner is ***on*** / ***at*** the table.
10 They're sitting ***in*** / ***at*** the garden.
11 The books are ***on*** / ***in*** the table.
12 I saw her ***in*** / ***at*** the bus stop.
13 The number is ***in*** / ***on*** the door.
14 I spoke to her ***in*** / ***at*** the party.

2 **Complete the questions with *at*, *in* or *on*.**

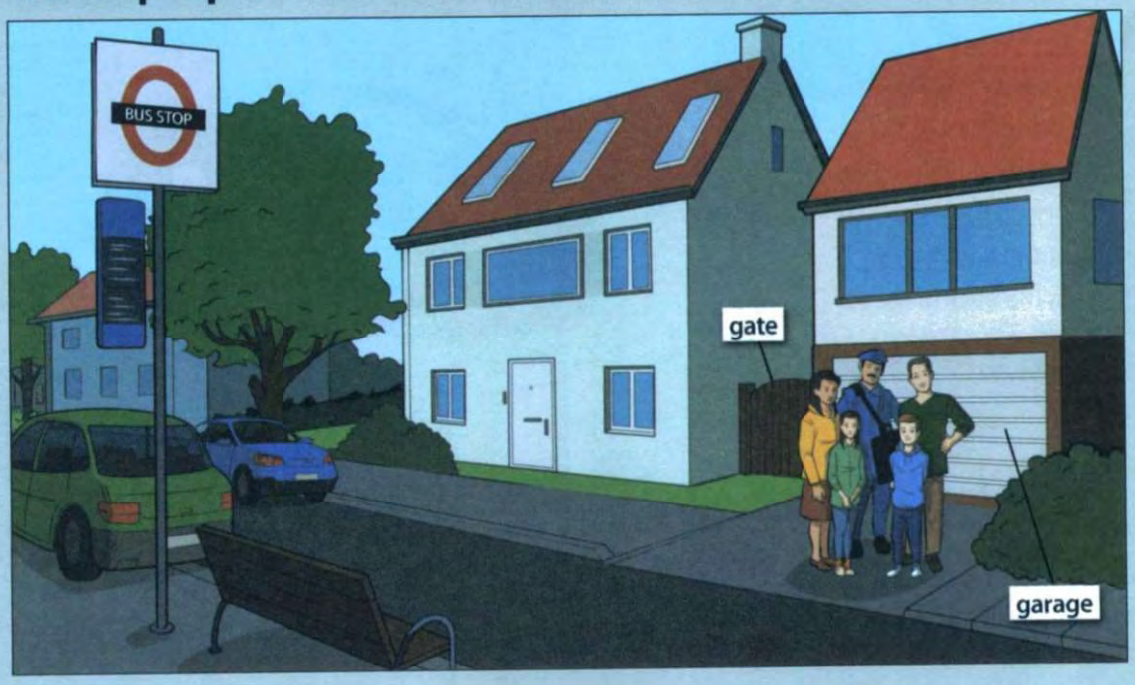
▶ Which country do you live *in* ?

1 Do you live ..... a village, a town or a city?
2 Do you live ..... a flat or a house?
3 Is your town ..... a river?
4 Which floor is your bedroom ..... ?
5 What's ..... the walls in your living room?
6 Do you like walking ..... the countryside?
7 Do you ever meet new people ..... parties?
8 Did you learn English ..... school, ... work, or ..... an English-speaking country?

3 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

B Other prepositions



The people are **in front of** the garage.
The postman is **between** Mum and Dad.
The adults are **behind** the children.
The tree is **near** the house.
The office is **above** the garage.
The garage is **below** the office.
The seat is **next to** the bus stop.
The bus stop is **opposite** the house.

4 **True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ The tree is opposite the house. F
1 The blue car is near the house. .....
2 The big window is above the door. .....
3 The seat is opposite the garage. .....
4 The people are opposite the garage. .....
5 The postman is next to Mum. .....
6 The gate is between the house and the tree. .....
7 The children are behind Mum and Dad. .....
8 The girl is in front of the postman. .....
9 The front door is below the big window. .....
10 The green car is next to the bus stop. .....

5 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ The tree's behind the blue car.
1 The bus stop is _____ the seat.
2 The blue car is _____ the tree.
3 The boy is standing _____ Dad.
4 The gate is _____ the house and the garage.
5 The blue car is _____ the house.
6 The people are _____ the garage.
7 The postman is _____ Dad.
8 The garage is _____ the people.

6 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 What's opposite the building where you live? _____
2 What's behind your building? _____
3 What's next to your building? _____
4 Are there any shops near it? _____
5 What's above your living room? _____
6 What's below your bedroom? _____
7 What's next to your bedroom? _____
8 Is there anything between your building and the street? If so, what? _____

TEST YOURSELF

21 Prepositions: phrases

A Position

1 **at the front of** the car
2 **on the side of** the car
3 OPP **on the other side**
4 **at the back of** the car
5 **in the back of** the car

at the beginning/start of the book

in the middle of the book

at the end of the book

at the top of the mountain

at the bottom of the staircase

SPOTLIGHT *at first and in the end*

We often talk about time using **at first** (= at the beginning of the time) and **in the end** (= finally) when we tell stories.

- ***At first**, I didn't like being in the water, but I soon learned how to swim.*
- *It was a long journey. **In the end**, we arrived at our hotel.*

1 Cross out the wrong answer.

▶ at the front of the *cinema / ~~bread~~ / house*
1 at the back of the *night / bus / classroom*
2 at the beginning of the *story / meal / pencil*
3 at the top of the *stairs / book / building*
4 at the bottom of the *glass / river / apple*
5 in the middle of the *book / road / milk*
6 on the other side of the *sky / house / river*
7 at the end of the *film / morning / mountain*

2 Complete the sentences with a phrase.

▶ There's a murder *at the beginning* of the film.
1 There's a great view _____ of the hill.
2 I always sit _____ of the class where the teacher can't see me.
3 They found an old boat _____ of the lake.
4 _____ I didn't enjoy learning English, but now I like it.
5 When I go and see a film, I like to sit _____ of the cinema, where I can see easily.
6 What happens _____ of the book? I didn't finish it.
7 They put a big sign _____ of the square so everyone could see it.
8 We had a lot of problems, but _____ it was OK.
9 The problem is not on this side of the wall – it's _____ .
10 _____ of the film I couldn't understand their English, but it got better.
11 _____ the restaurant was empty, but a few customers arrived about 6.30. Then a large group came in at about seven, followed by several more smaller groups. _____ , it was almost full and really busy.

TEST YOURSELF

B Fixed phrases

Did you like London when you went there? ~ I don't remember. I was only 8 **at the time.**
How many people came? ~ **At least** 25.
What are Liam and Yasmin doing **at the moment?** ~ I think they're **on holiday.**
Did you know Ellie **at university?** ~ Yes, we were there **at the same time.**
Is Ethan here? ~ Yes, but he's **on the phone.**
Were you late? ~ No, I'm always **on time.**
When will you finish painting the house? ~ Oh, **by the end of** the week.
Is Xav working now? ~ No. **In fact,** he's **in hospital** with a broken leg.

SPOTLIGHT *at university, in hospital, etc.*

If you are **at university**, you are studying in a university.
If you are **at school**, you are a pupil/student.
If you are **in hospital**, there is something wrong with you and you must stay there.
If you are **in prison**, you have done something wrong/illegal and you must stay there for a period of time.

GLOSSARY

at the time	then: *I worked there in 2016. I was 24* ***at the time.***
at least	not less than
at the moment	now or around now: *I'm busy* ***at the moment.*** (NOT ~~*in this moment*~~)
on holiday	not working/studying and often away from home
at the same time	used to say that two or more things happen together
on the phone	using the phone and speaking to sb ALSO **on his/her phone** (= mobile phone)
on time	not early or late
by the end of sth	not later than sth
in fact	used to say that sth is true (often the opposite of what sb says or thinks): *She looks English, but* ***in fact,*** *she's Spanish.* SYN **actually**

3 **Make phrases using the words in the box.**

least | holiday | university ✓ | fact | the same time | the time
the phone | the moment | prison | time | hospital

AT ▶ university .....
.....

ON .....

IN .....

4 **Complete the dialogues in a suitable way.**

▶ Is he at university? ~ No, he's still at school .
1 Did they arrive together? ~ Yes, ...
2 Are they away? ~ Yes, they're ..... .
3 What are you doing ..... ? ~ Now? Nothing. Why?
4 Is he ill? ~ Yes, he's ..... .
5 Were there many people there? ~ ..... 50.
6 Were you late? ~ No, I was ..... .
7 Is she still studying? ~ Yes, she's ..... .

5 **Complete the sentences with a suitable phrase from above.**

▶ I was on time , but Max was late, as usual.
1 We came here in 2012, but I was only nine ..... .
2 My father has been ..... with a heart problem.
3 The hotel is quite expensive: a room is ..... $200.
4 She's on holiday at the moment, but she'll be back ..... the week.
5 He's been ..... for two years for stealing money.
6 I know she looks Swedish, but ..... she's English.
7 My sister has been ..... for two years. She finishes at the end of next year.
8 He's always ..... . He never stops sending texts.

TEST YOURSELF

22 Word + preposition

A Verb or adjective + preposition

You will find the meaning of some of the verbs and adjectives in this unit in other parts of the book. Use the APP to help if you are not sure of the meaning.

Questionnaire

ABOUT YOU AND YOUR FAMILY

Do you still **live with** your parents?
Do you still **depend on** your parents?
Do you ever **ask** them **for** money?
Do you usually **agree with** your parents?
Do you **spend** a lot of money **on** clothes?
Do you **care about** making money?
Do you always **thank** people **for presents**?
What are you **interested in**?
What are you **good at**?
Do you get **bored with** things quickly?

GLOSSARY

depend on sb/sth	need sb or sth
agree with sb	have the same view or opinion as sb (NOT ~~*I'm agree.*~~) OPP **disagree with sb**
spend money (on sth) *pt* **spent**	pay money for sth
care about sb/sth	think that sb or sth is important
thank sb (for sth)	tell sb you are pleased or happy because they gave you sth or helped you
present	sth that you give to sb or get from sb SYN **gift**

SPOTLIGHT preposition + *-ing* form

A preposition can be followed by a noun or an ***-ing* form**.

- *I'm **good at** maths.*
- *I'm **good at** drawing.*
- *I'm **interested in** art.*
- *I'm **interested in** learning languages.*

1 Correct the mistakes.

▶ I spend a lot of money ~~in~~ food. on

1 I'm good in playing chess. _____
2 We must stop now. ~ Yes, I'm agree. _____
3 My brother depends of me. _____
4 I am bored for my job: it's always the same. _____
5 Do you ask for money your parents? _____
6 Do you care at the clothes you wear? _____
7 I live by two friends – we have a flat together. _____
8 I'm not interested in speak other languages. _____

2 Complete the sentences with the correct verb or adjective.

▶ I'm not very good at English. I make lots of mistakes.

1 I must _____ my aunt for the _____ she gave me for my birthday.
2 My boss is great. He really _____ about his workers and wants them to do well.
3 He's new in the job so he still _____ on other people for help and advice.
4 I _____ $500 on a new tablet.
5 I know you used to take lots of photos. Are you still _____ in photography?
6 If you can't do this, why don't you _____ the teacher for help?

3 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

▶ She spent all her money on that computer.

1 I quickly get bored _____ housework.
2 Did you ask them _____ help?
3 I'm not interested _____ cooking.
4 I forgot to thank him _____ helping me.
5 They all depend _____ Maxine for help.
6 My mother cares _____ other people.
7 Why are you so good _____ maths?
8 Does she live _____ her family?
9 I disagree _____ the others – I think it's a wonderful book.

4 ABOUT YOU **Write answers to the questionnaire above, or ask another student. Use the new vocabulary in your answers.**

▶ I don't live with my parents because I'm married. I live with my wife.

TEST YOURSELF

B Verb + preposition

Read about Caroline, and some of the things she does and thinks.

I often **listen to** the radio in the morning.
I usually **hear about** things for the first time on social media.
When I **look at** people, I don't **notice** what they're wearing.
I like films that are **based on** true stories.
I like furniture **made of** wood.
I hate **waiting for** buses and trains, but don't like **paying for** taxis.
I haven't **applied for** a job yet.
I don't **think about** the future very much.

GLOSSARY

hear about sth	If you **hear about** sth, sb tells you sth or you read about it.
notice	see or pay attention to sb or sth
base sth on sth	make sth using another thing as the beginning: *We **based** the book **on** her diaries and letters.* *The book is **based on** her letters and diaries.*
apply for sth	write to ask for sth, e.g. for a job

SPOTLIGHT *think about* and *think of*

- *I always **think about** my grandmother when I see that photo.* = I have thoughts about her in my head.
- *What did you **think of** the film?* = What was your opinion of the film?

5 **Match 1–6 with a–g.**

▶ Have you listened to c
1 Did you apply for .....
2 Have you looked at .....
3 Are you waiting for .....
4 Have you paid for .....
5 Did you base your story on .....
6 Is the coat made of .....

a the photo I sent you?
b the new TV yet?
c their new song? ✓
d leather?
e somebody to phone you?
f the job?
g something that happened to you?

6 **Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.**

▶ I wasn't listening to her.
1 What are you looking ..... ?
2 Who paid ..... the meal?
3 Did you apply ..... a place on the course?
4 Why are you thinking ..... Ali?
5 Is the film based ..... a book?
6 Who are you waiting ..... ?
7 How did you hear ..... the party?
8 What did you think ..... the book?
9 I think this is made ..... plastic.

7 **Complete the sentences with the correct verb.**

▶ I'm thinking about the weather. Is it warm enough to go swimming?
1 My story is ..... on something I read in the newspaper.
2 Have you ..... about Marta? She's getting married.
3 The food was free, but we had to ..... for drinks.
4 I've just seen Mia, and I ..... that she had a new hairstyle. It's very short.
5 I don't know why she ..... for that job – it isn't very interesting.
6 I liked the film. What did you ..... of it?

8 ABOUT YOU **Look at the sentences at the top of the page. Are they true for you? Write your answers or ask another student. Use the new vocabulary in your answers.**

▶ I never listen to the radio. In the morning I sometimes listen to music on my phone.

TEST YOURSELF

23 Routines

A Weekdays (Monday to Friday)

What's your **daily routine**?

I wake up at 7.00.
I get up immediately.

I have a shower.

I get dressed.

I have breakfast.

I usually leave home at 8.00.

I get to work/arrive at work at 8.30.

I finish work/ go home at 5.00.

I have dinner at 8.00.

I normally go to bed at about 11.30.

I sleep about seven hours a night.

GLOSSARY	
daily	happening every day
routine	your usual way of doing things
wake up	stop sleeping
immediately	now, without waiting
have + meal	e.g. ***have breakfast, have lunch, have dinner***
usually	most often SYN **normally**

1 **Is the meaning the same or different? Write *S* or *D*.**

▶ get dressed / get up D

1 I go home at 6.00. / I leave home at 6.00. .....
2 I have lunch at 1.00 / I eat lunch at 1.00. .....
3 He finishes work early. / He gets to work early. .....
4 I get up immediately. / I get up daily. .....
5 We usually leave / We normally leave at 7.00. .....
6 Do you wake up early? / Do you get up early? .....

2 **A word is missing in each line. What is it and where does it go? Write it after the sentence.**

▶ I normally / up at 6.30. wake

1 I usually get immediately. .....
2 I have a before breakfast. .....
3 I get after my shower. .....
4 I at work before 8.30. .....
5 I work and go home at 6.00. .....
6 I dinner with my family. .....
7 I go bed when I'm tired. .....
8 I usually six hours a night. .....
9 My daily is what I do every day. .....

3 **Complete the questions with the correct verb.**

ABOUT YOU

▶ What time do you usually wake up in the morning? I usually wake up early, at 6.00.

1 Do you ..... dressed before or after breakfast? .....
2 Do you ..... a shower in the morning? .....
3 Where do you usually ..... breakfast? .....
4 What time do you ..... home in the morning? .....
5 What time do you ..... school/university/work? .....
6 Who do you have ..... with in the evening? .....
7 What time do you normally ..... to bed? .....
8 How many hours a night do you ..... ? .....

4 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

B Weekends (Saturdays and Sundays)

During the week I usually **stay in** after school and study, watch TV, or just talk to my family. **Once** or **twice** a week, my boyfriend **comes round** and we have dinner together or play video games. But **at the weekend**, I go out a lot more. On Saturday morning, I usually **go shopping** with a friend, and then my boyfriend and I go out in the evening. Sometimes we go to the cinema or a concert. On Sundays, I **always** get up **late**. We often **go for a walk**, and in the summer we **play tennis** or **go for a swim**.

GLOSSARY	
during the week	from Monday to Friday
stay in	stay at home OPP **go out**
once a week	one time in every week
twice a week	two times in every week
come round	visit sb at their home
at the weekend	on Saturday and Sunday
go shopping ALSO **do the shopping**	go to the shops to buy clothes, books, etc. buy food
late *adv*	after the usual time **late** *adj* OPP **early**
go for a walk/swim	have a short walk/swim to enjoy yourself
play tennis	(*see picture*)

SPOTLIGHT adverbs of frequency

100% *always usually/normally often sometimes never* 0%

These adverbs go before the main verb, e.g. *get up*, but after **be**, modals, e.g. *can, will*, and auxiliaries, e.g *does, doesn't*.

- *I **always** get up early on Saturdays.*
- *Do you **often** go out in the evening?*
- *He can **sometimes** meet his friends on Fridays.*
- *I'm **never** late for school.*

5 **Write the words in the correct order.**

▶ twice / John / a / see / I / week I see John twice a week.

1 shopping / do / the / do / often / you _____?

2 school / never / late / is / he / for _____.

3 early / up / we / tennis / get / play / sometimes / and _____.

4 weekend / at / shopping / the / you / always / do / go _____?

5 the / goes / during / often / out / week / Martha _____.

6 week / or / sister / a / once / see / my / I / twice _____.

6 **Complete the phrases with one word.**

▶ go out = go to the cinema, a restaurant, etc.

1 not go out = _____ in

2 buy clothes, books, etc. = _____ shopping

3 have a game of tennis = _____ tennis

4 have a short walk = _____ for a walk

5 buy food = _____ the shopping

6 on Saturday and Sunday = _____ the weekend

7 from Monday to Friday = _____ the week

8 on Tuesdays only = _____ a week

9 on Mondays and Fridays only = _____ a week

7 ABOUT YOU **True or false? Write *T* or *F*. If a sentence is false, change the word in bold to make it true.**

▶ I **often** get to work or school late. F – I never get to school late.

1 I **always** play tennis in the summer. _____

2 In my family, I **never** do the shopping. _____

3 I **often** go for a long walk during the week. _____

4 I **sometimes** play video games at the weekend. _____

5 I **never** have dinner with my family. _____

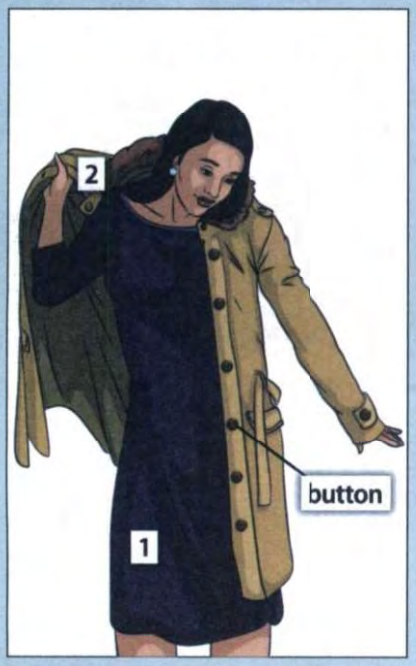
6 **During the week**, I go out a lot in the evenings. _____

7 I like to get up **early** at the weekend. _____

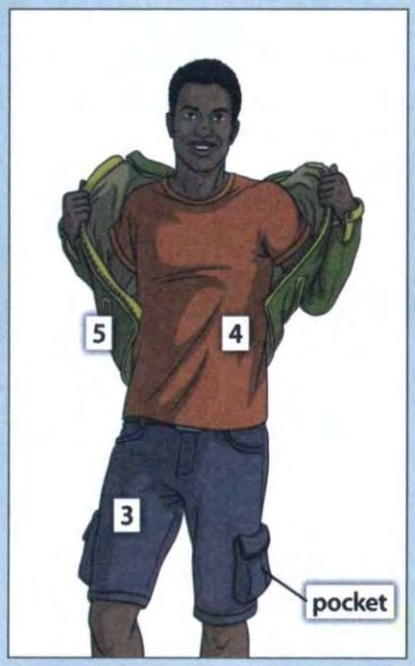
8 I **often** go shopping with a friend. _____

TEST YOURSELF

24 Clothes



Milla



Enzo

Osman

1	**dress**
2	**coat**
3	**shorts**
4	**T-shirt**
5	**jacket**
6	**suit**
7	**trousers**
8	**jacket**
9	**shirt**
10	**tie**
11	**jeans**
12	**jumper/sweater**
13	**uniform**
14	**skirt**
15	**top**

These are all **items of clothing.**

Kim

Megan

GLOSSARY	
clothes	things like *trousers*, *shirts* and *coats* that you wear to cover your body
item of clothing	a thing that you wear, e.g. *a skirt*, *a tie*
wear *pt* **wore** *pp* **worn**	have clothes on your body
put sth on	take clothes and wear them: ***Put on*** *your shoes.* ***Put*** *your coat* ***on.*** OPP **take sth off**
uniform	the special clothes that everybody in the same job, school, etc. wears

1 Complete the words.

▶ s u i t

1 j_____t
2 t_____s
3 j_____r
4 b_____n
5 c____t
6 T-_____t
7 d_____s
8 p_____t
9 j_____s
10 t____
11 sh____t
12 sk____t
13 sh_____s
14 sw____t__r

2 Look at the pictures on page 54 and answer the questions.

▶ Who's wearing jeans and a jumper? Kim

1 Who's wearing a uniform? .....
2 Who's wearing shorts? .....
3 Who's wearing a suit? .....
4 Who's wearing a dress? .....
5 Who's wearing a skirt and top? .....
6 Who's taking off a jacket? .....
7 Who's putting a coat on? .....
8 Who's putting on a tie? .....
9 Who isn't wearing trousers? .....
10 Who's wearing a jumper? .....
11 Who's wearing a jacket with pockets? .....
12 Who's wearing an item of clothing with buttons? .....
13 Who's wearing three items of clothing? .....
14 Is anybody taking a coat off? .....

3 Put the words in the correct column.

jacket ✓ top suit trousers skirt shorts dress jeans tie T-shirt coat shirt jumper uniform

WHOLE BODY	ABOVE THE WAIST	BELOW THE WAIST
	jacket	

4 Circle the correct word or words. Be careful: more than one answer may be correct.

▶ You wear ***shorts*** / ***a jacket*** / ***a jumper*** on a hot day.

1 Men don't usually wear ***skirts*** / ***dresses*** / ***suits***.
2 When you go out, you ***take your coat off*** / ***put your coat on***.
3 Women often wear ***ties*** / ***trousers*** / ***jeans***.
4 You take your coat off when it's ***cold*** / ***hot***.
5 Police officers usually wear ***jeans*** / ***a uniform*** at work.
6 A top is ***an item of clothing*** / ***a dress*** / ***a uniform***.

5 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ clothes / top D

1 wear / jeans .....
2 skirt / shirt .....
3 uniform / clothes .....
4 tie / item .....
5 jumper / uniform .....
6 clothing / coat .....
7 jumper / put on .....
8 suit / uniform .....
9 jacket / take off .....

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 What are you wearing today? .....
2 What did you wear yesterday? .....
3 Do you wear the same clothes at the weekend? If not, what is different? .....
4 What do you usually wear to parties? .....
5 Have you ever worn a uniform? If so, what was it for? .....

TEST YOURSELF

25 Accessories

scarf (*pl* scarves)

hat

belt

handbag

umbrella

watch

a pair of shoes

a pair of boots

trainers

socks

tights

glasses

sunglasses

gloves

some jewellery

rings

necklace

GLOSSARY

accessory	(usually *pl*) a thing you carry or wear with clothes, e.g. *a watch, a bag, a belt*
wear	You **wear** items of clothing, glasses or jewellery, e.g. *a scarf, sunglasses, a ring.*
carry	You **carry** a bag, a handbag or an umbrella.
gold	The *rings* in the picture are made of **gold**.
silver	The *necklace* is made of **silver**.
plastic	The *umbrella* is made of **plastic**.
leather	The *boots* are made of **leather**.

SPOTLIGHT plural nouns and *pairs*

Trousers, jeans, tights, clothes and **(sun)glasses** are always plural. They take a plural verb form.

- *These **tights are** very warm.* (NOT ~~*The tights is …*~~)

We use **a pair of** in two ways:

1 two things of the same kind that we use together:
***a pair of** shoes/boots/trainers/socks/gloves*, etc.

2 a thing with two parts that are together:
*a **pair of** glasses/sunglasses* ***a pair of** tights*

1 **True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ You can wear a watch. T
1 Jewellery is often made of gold or silver. .....
2 Glasses are made of leather. .....
3 You can wear a belt. .....
4 You can wear an umbrella on your shoulder. .....
5 You can carry a handbag on your arm or shoulder. .....
6 A necklace can be made of plastic. .....
7 A pair of tights has two parts called *legs*. .....
8 Most people wear a pair of scarves. .....

2 **Complete the sentences with words from the box.**

watch hat scarf socks belt ✓ glasses umbrella handbag ring boots tights

▶ You wear it round your waist. belt
1 You wear them inside your shoes. .....
2 You wear it on your head. .....
3 You wear it on your finger. .....
4 You wear them on your feet. .....
5 You wear them over your legs and feet. .....
6 You wear them on your nose. .....
7 You wear it round your neck. .....
8 You wear it on your wrist. .....
9 You carry it when it's raining. .....
10 You carry things in it. .....

3 **Is the pronunciation of the <u>underlined</u> letters the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ h<u>a</u>t / necklace D
1 w<u>a</u>tch / s<u>o</u>cks .....
2 t<u>i</u>ghts / r<u>i</u>ng .....
3 b<u>oo</u>ts / j<u>ew</u>ellery .....
4 gl<u>o</u>ves / g<u>o</u>ld .....
▶ h<u>a</u>t / h<u>a</u>ndbag S
5 sc<u>a</u>rf / sungl<u>a</u>sses .....
6 l<u>ea</u>ther / b<u>e</u>lt .....
7 p<u>ai</u>r / tr<u>ai</u>ners .....
8 c<u>a</u>rry / pl<u>a</u>stic .....

4 **Make the sentences singular if possible.**

▶ Are these your boots? Is this your boot?
1 Give me the socks. .....
2 Where are my tights? .....
3 I've got two pairs of trainers. .....
4 Where are my gloves? .....
5 She's got my scarves. .....
6 Where are my shoes? .....
7 The jeans cost €30. .....
8 I don't like these sunglasses. .....
▶ Her glasses are nice. Not possible.

5 **Label the pictures. Use *a pair of* where possible.**

▶ a pair of leather shoes

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

6 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 Which accessories do you always wear? .....
2 Which accessories do you never wear? .....
3 Do you wear trainers a lot? If you don't, what do you wear? .....
4 Do you wear glasses or sunglasses? Why? .....
5 When do you wear: jewellery? a watch? a hat? a scarf? .....

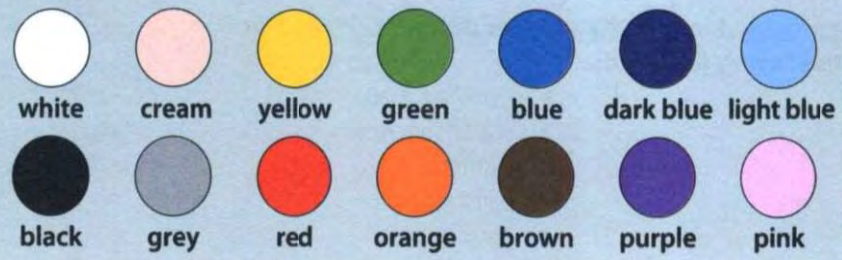
TEST YOURSELF

26 Colours, size and appearance

A Colours and adjectives

1 long
2 short
3 large/big
4 small/little
5 cheap
6 expensive
7 comfortable
8 uncomfortable

Colours



SPOTLIGHT order of adjectives

Adjectives describing size or opinion go before colour adjectives.

- We say *a big blue umbrella* (NOT ~~*a blue big umbrella*~~)
- *large brown eyes* ■ *a cheap black suit*

1 Find the end of each word.

red/greenpinkpurpleorangegreydarkbluecreambrownlightblueblackyellowwhite

2 Write your answers.

▶ Red and yellow together make orange.
1 Red and blue together make _____.
2 White and blue together make _____.
3 Blue and yellow together make _____.
4 Red and white together make _____.
5 Black and white together make _____.
6 Black and blue together make _____.
7 Red and green together make _____.
8 Yellow and white together make _____.
9 Blue, yellow and purple are all _____.

3 Circle the correct word.

▶ My handbag's very *large* / *small*, so I can put lots in it.
1 I like these trainers, but they're very ***comfortable / uncomfortable***.
2 I haven't got much money, so I don't wear ***cheap / expensive*** clothes.
3 He's only seven years old, so just buy him a ***small / large*** T-shirt.
4 You need your ***long / short*** coat today – it's really cold.
5 The good thing about the school café is that it's ***cheap / expensive***.
6 You need ***comfortable / uncomfortable*** clothes when you are travelling.

4 Look at the pictures at the top of the page and describe the clothes and accessories.

▶ a c heap grey tie
1 a s_____ skirt
2 c_____ shoes
3 a l_____ handbag
4 a l_____ skirt
5 u_____ shoes
6 an e_____ tie
7 a s_____ handbag

TEST YOURSELF

B Size and appearance

What size are you?
What size do you take?

I'm a (size) 12.
I take size 40.

Is it OK?

No, it's the **wrong size.**
It doesn't **fit.**

Yes, it's the **right size.**
It **fits** well.

What's the matter?

It's **too** long / **too** big.

Do you like it?

It **looks nice/lovely/great.**

It **looks awful/terrible.**

Yes, I like the **style.**

SPOTLIGHT *too* and *very*

There is a difference in meaning between **too** and **very**.

- *Her coat is **very** long.* (But maybe it's OK.)
- *Her coat is **too** long.* (It's not OK.)
- *These trousers are **very** expensive, but I'm going to buy them.*
- *These boots are **too** small – I can't wear them.*

GLOSSARY

appearance	the way that sb or sth looks
look	If sth **looks** good, you think it's good.
nice	good
lovely	very good SYN **great**
awful	very bad SYN **terrible**
style	the shape, colour and way sth is

5 **Are the sentences the same or different? Write *S* or *D*.**

▶ It looks terrible. / It looks nice. D

1 It fits. / It's the right size. .....
2 It looks great. / It looks lovely. .....
3 They're the right size. / They don't fit. .....
4 I like the style. / It looks awful. .....
5 They're too big. / They don't fit. .....
6 What size does he take? / What size is he? .....
7 They're very short. / They're too short. .....
8 It's the wrong size. / It doesn't fit. .....

6 **Complete the dialogues.**

1 What▶ size ..... are you? ~ I ..... size 34.
2 What do you think of these trousers? ~ I like the ..... – they're very nice.
3 Is the shirt OK for you? ~ I'm sorry. It's the ..... size.
4 What size do you ..... ? ~ 42.
5 Is that top comfortable? ~ No, it doesn't ..... . It's ..... small.
6 What do you think of these jeans? ~ Oh, they ..... terrible. Don't buy them.
7 Are the shoes OK for you? ~ I take ..... 40, but these are ..... small.
8 That suit looks ..... ! ~ Yes, it's ..... , isn't it? I'm going to buy it.
9 Did this jumper ..... ? ~ No, it was ..... big for me.
10 Do you like the trousers? ~ Yes, and they're also the ..... size.
11 Christa thinks about her ..... a lot. ~ Well, she's a teenager. That's normal.

TEST YOURSELF

27 Money

A Money in shops

You go into a shop to **buy** three books. They **cost** £9.50 **each**, so a **total** of £28.50. You think you have some **cash** (**notes** and **coins**) in your **wallet**, but when you look, you haven't got **enough** money with you to **pay in cash**, so you **pay by card**.

cash

notes

coins

debit card

wallet

purses

GLOSSARY

buy *pt* **bought**	give money to get sth
cost *pt* **cost**	How much does it **cost**? = How much is it?
(£9.50) each	(£9.50) for one
total	the number you have when you add everything together
enough	(sounds like *stuff*) as much or as many as you need
pay *pt* **paid**	give sb money for sth. You **pay in** *cash*, but **pay by** *debit/credit card*.
debit card	If you use a **debit card**, the money comes out of your **bank account** (where you put money in and take it out).
credit card	A **credit card** is a bank card you use to buy sth and pay for it later.

SPOTLIGHT amounts of money

£10.99 *ten* ***pounds*** *ninety-nine (pence) / ten ninety-nine*
€5.30 *five* ***euros*** *thirty (cents) / five thirty*
- *a one-****pound*** *coin*
- *a ten-****dollar*** *note* (NOT ~~*a ten-dollars note*~~)

1 True or false? Write *T* or *F*.

▶ You can pay for things in cash or by credit or debit card. T

1 If you pay in cash, you use coins and notes. .....
2 If you buy two things for £30 each, the total is £30. .....
3 If a cake costs $5 and you have a ten-dollar note, you haven't got enough. .....
4 You can put a debit card in a wallet. .....
5 Things cost more if you pay in cash. .....
6 When you pay by debit card, the money comes from your bank account. .....
7 The past tense of *cost* is *cost*. .....

2 Complete the sentences using a word from the box.

cost coins cash enough -dollar purse total dollars credit card bought ✓ each

▶ She bought a new car yesterday.

1 I paid in ..... .
2 I put the notes in my ..... .
3 I paid by ..... .
4 I've got a few notes and ..... .
5 The ticket ..... €50.
6 I need a ten ..... note.
7 It cost five ..... twenty.
8 That's a ..... of £100.
9 Have you got ..... money?
10 The peaches cost 50c ..... .

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Do you always have a lot of cash with you? Why? / Why not? .....
2 Where do you keep your money when you go out? .....
3 Do you have enough money with you today to buy a coffee? A book? Some jewellery? .....
4 Do you pay at the supermarket in cash or by debit/credit card? .....

TEST YOURSELF

B Money in adverts

Sell your car for a great **price** on eSellers.com!

Spend £50 **on** food and get a **FREE** drink.

Pay your gas **bill** **online** and **save** £40.

Earn $30 an hour in your own home.

☎ RING 0990 557731

Win cash and **prizes!**
CALL US TODAY.

SALE
all **products**
50% **off**

GLOSSARY	
sell *pt* **sold**	give sth to sb who pays you money for it OPP **buy** *pt* **bought**
price	the money you have to pay for sth
spend money (on sth) *pt* **spent**	pay money for sth
free	If sth is **free**, you don't pay for it.
bill	a piece of paper which shows how much you must pay
online	on the internet
save	If you **save** £40 on a bill, you pay £40 less.
earn	get money by working
win *pt* **won**	get money or a prize, often because you are better than others or lucky
prize	sth that you give to a person who wins a game, race, etc.
sale	a time when a shop sells sth for less money than usual
product	sth that people make or grow to sell
(50%) off	50% (= 50 **per cent**) taken off the normal price

4 **Circle the correct answer.**

▶ They're going to sell a new ***product*** / ***price***.

1 What's the ***price*** / ***bill*** of these shoes?
2 I don't ***spend*** / ***buy*** a lot on food.
3 I bought ten boxes and ***earned*** / ***saved*** £3.
4 I ***won*** / ***earned*** £100 in a card game.
5 The ***prize*** / ***price*** of the classes was $400.
6 I bought this table ***online*** / ***free***.
7 Doctors can ***win*** / ***earn*** a lot of money.
8 I ***bought*** / ***sold*** my old car and got a new one.
9 She paid the restaurant ***bill*** / ***price***.
10 The shoes are 15% ***out*** / ***off***.

5 **Cover the glossary and write the past simple forms.**

▶ pay paid

1 buy .....
2 spend .....
3 sell .....
4 earn .....
5 win .....
6 save .....

6 **Complete the questions with a word from the glossary.**

▶ How much do you spend on food every week?

1 Do you ever shop ..... ?
2 Do you pay restaurant ..... in cash?
3 Is water ..... in restaurants?
4 What's the ..... of a litre of milk?
5 Do you often buy things cheaper in a ..... ?
6 Do women ..... more than men?
7 What kind of ..... do men buy a lot?
8 Have you ever won a ..... ?

ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

7 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY **Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

28 Shopping

A Places

PLACES	WHAT THEY SELL
shopping centre	**everything**
department store	everything (e.g. clothes, furniture, books, etc.) except food
supermarket	food, drinks, soap, cleaning products, etc.
chemist's/pharmacy	**medicine**, soap
baker's	bread and cakes
electrical store	TVs, computers, coffee machines, etc.
toy shop	dolls, model aeroplanes, building blocks
gift shop	T-shirts, toys, cups, etc.

GLOSSARY

everything	all things
except	but not; not including
medicine	special liquids and pills to make you get better when you are ill
gift	sth that you give to or get from sb SYN **present**
toy	a thing for a child to play with

SPOTLIGHT noun + *shop*

For many shops, we often use a *noun* + **shop**, e.g. a shop where you buy books is a **bookshop**. ALSO **shoe shop, clothes shop, furniture shop, music shop** (for CDs, etc.), **fruit and vegetable shop**, etc.

1 Correct any spelling mistakes.

▶ furnishure shop furniture
1 cemist's _____
2 farmacy _____
3 departement store _____
4 shoping centre _____
5 medecine _____
6 cloths shop _____
7 pressent _____
8 elektrical store _____

2 Underline the stressed part of the word. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ shopping centre bookshop department store clothes shop pharmacy
supermarket electrical store furniture shop everything medicine except

3 Cross out the one wrong answer.

▶ I got the vegetables from the …
a) supermarket
b) ~~baker's~~
c) fruit and vegetable shop

1 I got the medicine from the …
a) chemist's
b) toy shop
c) pharmacy

2 I got these jeans from the …
a) department store
b) gift shop
c) clothes shop

3 I got these boots from the …
a) shoe shop
b) department store
c) furniture shop

4 I got Gemma's present from the …
a) bookshop
b) fruit and vegetable shop
c) gift shop

5 I got this coffee machine from the …
a) shopping centre
b) electrical store
c) music shop

6 I got the bread from the …
a) baker's
b) shopping centre
c) chemist's

4 Where can you buy the following things? More than one answer is possible.

A shop where you can buy …

▶ sugar, rice and soap: a supermarket
1 cakes and bread: _____
2 something for a child to play with: _____
3 something for somebody's birthday: _____
4 a CD: _____
5 medicine: _____
6 new shoes: _____
7 a chair and a bed: _____
8 trousers and a shirt: _____
9 a TV and a fridge: _____

TEST YOURSELF

B Why go shopping?

Why go shopping?

A lot of people **shop online**, but sometimes they **prefer to** go shopping. Here's why:

- In the shops, you can **touch** and feel things, like clothes, and **try** them **on**.
- You can **choose particular** items, like fresh fruit or fish.
- You can see and **compare** the **quality** of items.
- You get a more **personal service** from a shop assistant than you do online.
- Often shops **reduce** the prices of items in the **sales**, which is very popular.

GLOSSARY

online	using a computer or the internet **shop online**
prefer	like one thing or person better than another: *Would you **prefer** juice or water? I **prefer to** buy fruit in a shop.*
touch	(sounds like *much*) put your hand or finger on sth or sb
try sth on	put sth on to see if you like it and it is the right size: *I **tried** the shoes **on**, but they were too small.*
choose	decide which thing you want **choice** *n*
particular	one only, and not any other: *She eats a **particular** kind of bread.*
compare	think about or look at things together so that you can see how they are different
quality	how good or bad sth is
service	the work that sb does for customers in a shop, restaurant, etc. **serve** *v*; **personal service** service for one person
reduce	make sth smaller or less
sale(s)	a time when a shop sells things for less money than usual

5 **Underline the correct word or phrase.**

▶ *good* / *big* quality
1 compare *two things* / *a choice*
2 prefer *to* / *or* go home
3 try *the shoes* / *the shoes on*
4 a choice *of two things* / *shop online*
5 *person* / *personal* service
6 shop *the sales* / *online*
7 a particular *shop* / *sales*
8 reduce *the sales* / *the price*
9 touch *the sky* / *somebody's face*

6 **Match 1–8 with a–h.**

▶ They gave more choice ...f...
1 He tried the coat on .....
2 She reduced the price for me .....
3 We compared the prices .....
4 The shop assistant had to .....
5 The quality of clothes was terrible .....
6 I touched the jacket .....
7 I shop online .....

a so I was very happy.
b and it felt very nice.
c when I can't find what I want in the shops.
d but it was too small.
e so I didn't buy anything.
f to their customers. ✓
g serve three customers at the same time.
h and bought the cheapest chair.

7 ABOUT YOU **Complete the words in the questions.**

1 Do you p.....supermarkets or small shops? .....
2 Is it easy for you to c.....clothes in shops? .....
3 Is good s.....in shops very important to you? .....
4 Is there a p.....kind of shoe that you wear? .....
5 When you buy new clothes, do you always t.....them .....? .....
6 Do you prefer to go to the shops, or shop o.....? .....
7 What time of year are the s.....in your country? .....
8 Do you like to t.....and feel things before you buy them? .....

8 **Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 7, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

29 Possessions

A Family possessions

One of my favourite **possessions** is a **diary**[1] that **belonged to** my aunt.

A **recording**[5] of my grandmother's **voice**. She was quite a famous singer. It has very happy **memories** for me.

My grandfather's old **camera**[2]. I've also got some of his old **tools**[3]. I had his **gun**, but I haven't got it **any more** – I gave it to a museum.

A book of my mother's **recipes**[4]. I use it a lot.

GLOSSARY

possessions	the things that you have or own
belong to sb	That book **belongs to** me. = It is my book.
gun	a weapon that shoots out pieces of metal to kill or hurt people or animals
(not) any more	used at the end of negative sentences and questions to mean 'now'
recording	sounds on CD, video or film
voice	the sounds that you make when you speak or sing
memory	sth that you remember

1 **These words all have the same weak sound in them, as in *important*, *remember* and *comfortable*. Underline the sound in these words. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ family **1** recipe **2** memory **3** diary **4** camera **5** possession

2 **Write the name of the possession that matches the definition.**

▶ You use this when you do a special job with your hands. a tool

1 You take photos with this. _____
2 You read these when you're cooking. _____
3 things that belong to you _____
4 This can kill people or animals. _____
5 You use this when you're singing or talking. _____
6 You write what you're going to do in this. _____
7 sounds on a computer file, CD, etc. _____
8 something that you remember _____

3 **Complete the dialogues.**

▶ Do you know the date of the party? ~ Yes, I wrote it in my diary.
1 Do you still sing? ~ I did a few years ago, but I don't _____.
2 How are you going to cut that wood? ~ I have a special _____ for it.
3 How did you make that pasta dish? ~ I used a _____ from my Italian cookbook.
4 Have you still got that photo of grandfather? ~ Yes, it brings back happy _____.
5 That man looks very dangerous. ~ Yes! He's got a _____!
6 I can't hear what she's saying. ~ No, she's got a very quiet _____.
7 Whose car is that? ~ It _____ to my brother.
8 You love that old diary of grandmother's. ~ I do. It's one of my favourite _____.

4 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 Have you got any important family possessions? If so, what are they? _____
2 Have you got happy memories of school? What did you like? _____
3 Do you use a camera, or do you use the camera on your phone? Why? _____
4 Have you got a recording of a family member's voice? If so, who and why? _____

TEST YOURSELF

B Describing possessions

fan

electric fan

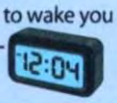
phone (ALSO **telephone**)

phone / mobile (phone)

A **fan** is an **unusual shape** and is used to make you cooler. It's made of **wood** and **material** or paper. There are also **electric fans.**

A **mobile phone** is a **device** made of **metal** and **plastic.** Modern phones are **flat** and thin. It has a lot of different **purposes** – a phone, an **alarm clock**, a **digital** camera, or a device for playing games.

GLOSSARY

unusual	If sth is **unusual**, you do not see it often or it does not happen often.	**plastic**	an artificial substance that is used for making many different things, e.g. ***plastic** flowers, **plastic** cups*
shape	A circle ◯ and a square □ are two different **shapes**.	**flat**	thin and wide and with no parts higher than the rest
wood	**Wood** comes from trees.	**purpose**	the reason for doing sth
material	cloth you use for making clothes, curtains, etc.	**alarm clock**	a clock that makes a noise to wake you up
device	a piece of equipment you use for doing a special job	**digital**	this is a **digital** clock — ALSO ***digital camera/TV*** 
metal	Gold, silver and iron are types of **metal**.		

5 **True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ Chairs are often made of wood. T
1 Clothes are often made of plastic. .....
2 Trousers are made of material. .....
3 A digital television is flat. .....
4 An alarm clock is often made of material. .....
5 A circle and a square are different shapes. .....
6 The purpose tells you why you are doing something. .....
7 If something is unusual, it's normal. .....
8 An electric fan is useful if it's very cold. .....
9 Mobile phones and digital cameras are devices. .....

6 **One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?**

▶ The / of that big electric fan is to make the room cooler. purpose
1 I use my mobile as an clock in the mornings. .....
2 My desk is made of and is very old. .....
3 What is the table? ~ I think it's round. .....
4 He's got a very alarm clock – it's made of wood. .....
5 The garden chairs are made of white and they're very hard. .....
6 A computer is made of and plastic. .....
7 What do you call the that turns the TV on and off? .....

7 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 What shape is the table in your living room / dining room? .....
2 Do you use the alarm clock on your mobile phone? .....
3 What can you see in front of you that is made of wood? Plastic? Metal? .....
4 Have you got a digital TV? .....
5 Do you ever use a fan or an electric fan? .....

TEST YOURSELF

30 Crime

A TV report

Police have **found** the **body** of a 19-year-old man in a park in East London. The **dead** body was **discovered** by a woman walking her dog early this morning. The police have not **named** the man, but there has been a **series** of **crimes** in the **area** in **recent** weeks. They think the man was **killed** and the **attack** was **planned**.

GLOSSARY	
find *pt/pp* **found**	see or get sth after looking
body	the whole form of a person or animal
dead	not living OPP **alive**
discover	find or learn sth for the first time **discovery** *n*
name	tell people sb's name
series	a number of things of the same kind that come one after another: *a **series** of accidents*
crime	sth that sb does that is wrong and against the law, e.g. if you attack or kill sb. A person who does this is a **criminal**.
area	a part of a town, a country or the world
recent	that happened or began only a short time ago
kill	make sb die
attack	an act which is done to hurt sb or damage sth **attack** *v*: *He **attacked** the man with a knife.*
plan	decide what you are going to do and how you are going to do it **plan** *n*

1 Same or different? Write *S* or *D*.

▶ The girl was alive. / The girl was a criminal. D
1 They found the body. / They discovered the body. .....
2 The dog was dead. / The dog was alive. .....
3 They named him. / They said who he was. .....
4 He attacked someone. / He killed someone. .....
5 It's a recent problem. / It's an old problem. .....
6 This is a nice area of town. / This is a nice part of town. .....
7 a series of crimes / a number of crimes .....
8 They planned the crime. / They discovered the crime. .....

2 Answer *Yes* or *No*.

▶ Does a person have a ***body***? Yes
1 If someone is ***dead***, can they speak? .....
2 Can a ***body*** be a dead person? .....
3 If you ***kill*** somebody, are they dead? .....
4 Do the police look for ***criminals***? .....
5 If a crime was ***recent***, was it a long time ago? .....
6 Is a ***series*** more than one? .....
7 If you ***attack*** somebody, are they happy? .....
8 If you ***discover*** something, have you lost it? .....

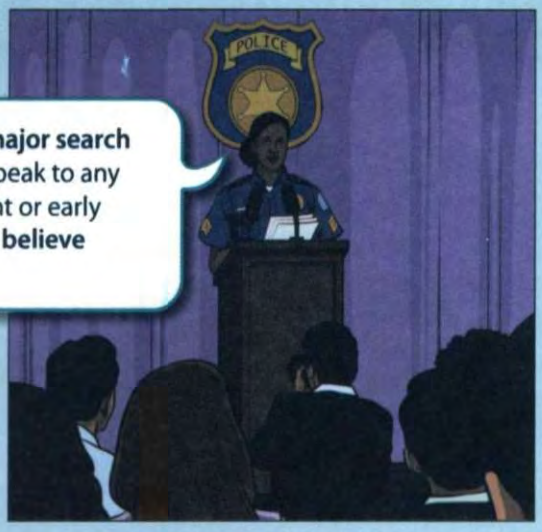
3 Complete the sentences.

▶ There were purple marks on the body.
1 The police have ..... a body in the woods outside town.
2 I never go there because it's a dangerous ..... of town at night.
3 The woman was ..... by the police as Josephine Smith.
4 Two men ..... an old man in a bar, and he had to go to hospital.
5 The man died later in hospital but the police don't know who ..... him.
6 The police are worried about the number of serious ..... in the town.
7 There has been a ..... of car accidents on that road.
8 The old man was still ..... when they found him, and he was taken to hospital.

TEST YOURSELF

B Police statement

… We think the crime **happened late** last night, so a **major search** of the area is now **taking place** and we would like to speak to any **members** of **the public** who were in that area last night or early this morning. I would also like to **stress** that we do not **believe** there is any **danger** to the public.



GLOSSARY	
statement	sth you say or write, which is often formal
late	near the end of a period of time: *He's in his **late** 20s* (= 27-29).
major	large or important
search	when you try to find sb or sth **search** *v*
member	sb who is part of a group or team
the public	people in general; everybody
stress	say sth strongly to show that it is important
believe	think that sth is true or possible
danger	the possibility that sth bad may happen: *You may be **in danger** if you are alone.* **dangerous** *adj* OPP **safe**

SPOTLIGHT *happen* and *take place*

These words have the same basic meaning, but **happen** usually describes something that is not planned:
- *How did the accident **happen**?*

Take place usually describes something that is planned:
- *The meeting **took place** yesterday evening.*

4 **Same or different? Write *S* or *D*.**

▶ a member of the team / one person in the team S
1 a major problem / a small problem .....
2 They believe it's true. / They think it's true. .....
3 The place is dangerous. / The place is safe. .....
4 It was late last night. / It was early last night. .....
5 members of the public / members of the police .....
6 They're searching for him. / They're trying to find him. .....
7 They made a statement. / They made a decision. .....
8 It happens every year. / It takes place every year. .....

5 **Complete the definitions.**

▶ A statement is something you say or write.
1 If you search an area, you try to ..... somebody or something.
2 A member is somebody who is part of a ..... .
3 If you stress something, you are saying it is ..... .
4 If you believe something is true, then you ..... it is true.
5 The public are ..... in general.
6 If something takes place, it ..... .

6 **Complete the dialogues.**

▶ Have the police spoken to anyone? ~ Yes, they're talking to the public now.
1 He's about 28, isn't he? ~ Yeah, he's in his ..... 20s.
2 Have the police said anything? ~ Yes, they've made a formal ..... .
3 Is he safe? ~ No, he could be in ..... .
4 Have the police found anything? ~ No, but they're ..... the area now.
5 Is it important? ~ Yes, it's a ..... problem.
6 Do you think they'll find the boy? ~ Yes, I ..... they will.
7 How did the fire ..... ? ~ I think it was a cigarette that started it.
8 Are the police talking to people? ~ Yes, they're interviewing members of the ..... .

TEST YOURSELF

31 Illness

A Common health problems

I don't feel well.

What's the matter?

I've got ...

a headache

toothache

stomach ache

backache

a cold

a cough

(the) flu

a temperature

I feel sick.

GLOSSARY

common	If sth is **common**, it happens often.
health	If you are in good **health**, you are well, not often ill. **healthy** *adj* OPP **unhealthy**
a cold	a common illness of the nose and throat
(the) flu [U]	an illness like a very bad cold, and often with a temperature

SPOTLIGHT *be ill* and *be sick*

Ill means not well. An **illness** is a period of feeling ill.

- *Rafa's not here today: he's **ill**. He didn't go to school because of **illness**.*

To **be sick** usually means to bring up food from your stomach (ALSO **vomit**). If you **feel sick**, you think you are going to **be sick**.

- *I felt **sick**, so I ran to the bathroom. I **was sick** on the floor.*

1 **Circle the correct answer.**

▶ *I'm / (I've got)* a temperature.

1 ***What / What's*** the matter?
2 She ***feels / 's got*** a cold.
3 He doesn't ***feel / be*** well.
4 I ***feel / 've got*** toothache.
5 I've got ***headache / a headache***.
6 ***Is / Has*** she got a temperature?
7 She's a ***healthy / health*** person.
8 I don't ***feel / be*** ill.
9 Do you ***feel / be*** sick?
10 A cold is ***a common / an often*** illness.
11 She ***is / 's*** got backache.
12 He's got ***flu / a flu***.
13 I ***don't feel / haven't got*** a cough.
14 ***Does he feel / Has he got*** stomach ache?

2 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ I had to stand up for ten hours. Now I've got backache.

1 She smokes a lot, and now she's got a bad _____.
~ Yes, and she doesn't do any exercise. She's very _____.
2 He's got a _____. Look, it's 39 degrees.
3 What's the _____? You look terrible.
~ I don't feel _____ and I've got _____: I need to see a dentist.
4 I ate too much at lunch, and now I've got _____ _____.
5 My little boy had four ice creams and now he feels _____.
6 I've got a temperature and a terrible headache. I think I've got _____.
7 She's often ill. She's not in good _____.
8 Flu is a horrible _____, and it's very _____ in winter.
9 I don't think he's got flu. It's probably just a bad _____.

TEST YOURSELF

B What should I do?

If you need **medical advice**, you **should** go to the **chemist's**.

Take some of those **tablets** to help you **rest** and sleep well.

You should **stay in bed** for **a couple of** days. You'll soon **get better**.

Have soup and hot drinks to **keep** you warm.

SPOTLIGHT *should* + verb

You use ***should*** when you tell people what you think is the best thing for them to do. ***Should*** is used for giving advice.

- *I feel terrible.* ~ *You **should** go to bed.*
  ~ *You **shouldn't** go to work today.*

GLOSSARY

weak	If you don't eat for a few days, you feel **weak**. OPP **strong**	**advice**	words you say that help sb decide what to do
catch an illness *pt* **caught**	get an illness, e.g. *a cold, a virus*	**chemist's**	a shop where you get medicine ALSO **pharmacy**
virus	a living thing that is too small to see but can make you ill. Flu is caused by a **virus**.	**rest**	relax, sleep or do nothing
		stay in bed	go to bed and not get up
medical	connected to doctors, hospitals and medicine	**a couple**	two or a small number: ***a couple of*** *days/weeks*, etc.
		get better	feel less ill SYN **improve**
		keep (warm)	stay (warm)

3 **Are the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ illness / medical D

1 virus / advice .....
2 should / couple .....
3 weak / keep .....
4 couple / improve .....
5 catch / chemist's .....
6 advice / caught .....

4 **True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ If you stay in bed, you can rest. T

1 If you get better, you feel weaker. .....
2 A couple of weeks is about four weeks. .....
3 You can get tablets at the chemist's. .....
4 If you don't sleep for a week, you feel strong. .....
5 A chemist's is the same as a pharmacy. .....
6 A doctor can give you medical advice. .....
7 You shouldn't keep warm if you have flu. .....
8 If you stay in bed, you get up. .....
9 You shouldn't go to work if you have a virus. .....
10 If you start to improve, you get better. .....

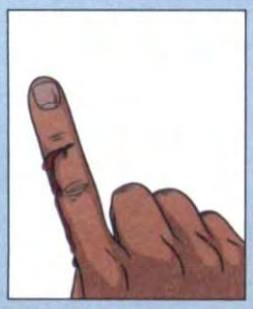
5 **Complete the text.**

Last week, I got home from travelling around Europe and I felt really ill. I probably ▶ caught a virus on the plane. I **(1)** ..... in bed for a **(2)** ..... of days, but I didn't **(3)** ..... . I was worried, so I phoned my doctor to get some medical **(4)** ..... . She gave me the name of some **(5)** ..... and told me I **(6)** ..... go to the **(7)** ..... and get some. She also said I had to stay in bed and **(8)** ..... as much as possible. I had hot drinks to **(9)** ..... me warm. I think I'm **(10)** ..... better now, but I still feel quite **(11)** ..... .

Send

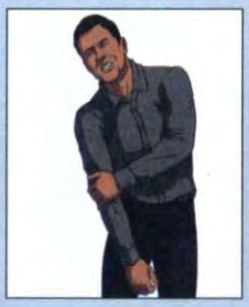
TEST YOURSELF

32 Injuries



I **cut** my finger and there was a lot of blood!

I fell over and now I've got a terrible **pain in my** leg.



My arm really **hurts.** I **hit** it **on** the table.

I **burnt** my hand when I picked up the pan.

We were in a car **accident** and I **broke** my leg – my friend also had **serious injuries.** We've been put on **drugs** for the pain.

GLOSSARY

cut *pt* **cut**	(*see picture*) **cut** *n*	**accident**	sth bad that happens, but not because you planned it
pain (in your back, leg, etc.)	the feeling that you have in your body when you are hurt or ill	**break** *pt* **broke**	(*see picture*) **broken** *adj*: ***a broken arm, leg,*** etc.
hurt *pt* **hurt**	feel pain	**serious**	very bad
hit *pt* **hit**	touch sth very hard SYN **knock**	**injury**	A cut finger, a broken arm, etc. are **injuries** to your body.
burn *pt* **burnt/ burned**	(*see picture*)	**drug**	medicine you take to make you feel well again

SPOTLIGHT injuries

We say:

- *I **cut my** finger.* (NOT ~~*I cut the finger.*~~)
- *She **hurt her** knee.* (NOT ~~*She hurt the knee.*~~)
- *I **burnt** my arm.* (NOT ~~*I burnt the arm.*~~)

1 Complete the sentences.

▶ Did he break his leg in the accident?

1 I hit my shoulder on the door, and it really ..... .

2 She fell off her bike and has a small ..... on her knee.

3 Dad was driving at night in the rain and had a bad ..... .

4 I fell and hurt my ankle and the pain is terrible. I think it's probably ..... .

5 She's in hospital and they're giving her a lot of ..... for the pain.

6 Joe was in a terrible accident and had a really bad ..... to his back.

7 He went to the doctor because he had a terrible ..... in his stomach.

8 He had to go to hospital because he ..... his hand with a bread knife.

9 She had a car accident, but she's OK and it's not ..... .

2 Correct one mistake in each sentence.

▶ He's got a ~~break~~ arm. broken

1 She had a pain on her arm. .....

2 He had a serious injure. .....

3 I hit my head at the door. .....

4 I knocked in my head on the wall. .....

5 I burnt the mouth on the hot soup. .....

6 She cutted her foot on the broken glass. .....

7 My arm is hurt a lot. .....

8 The doctor gave me some drogs for the pain. .....

9 I broken a bone in my ankle. .....

3 Complete the questions.

1 Have you ever had a ..... arm or leg?

2 Have you ever taken ..... for pain?

3 Do you ever have bad ..... in your back?

4 When did you last cut ..... finger or hand?

5 Have you ever ..... your hand when you were cooking?

ABOUT YOU

.....

.....

.....

.....

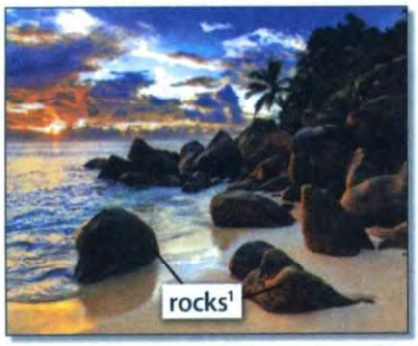
.....

4 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

33 Geography

at geography?



1 How many **islands** are there in the **world?**
1,000 / 2,000 / 3,000

2 Which is the largest **desert?**
the Gobi Desert / the Arabian Desert / the Sahara Desert

3 How old are the **rocks**[1] at the bottom of the Grand Canyon?
half a billion / a billion / two billion years old

4 Which is the **deepest** ocean?
the Atlantic Ocean / the Pacific Ocean / the Indian Ocean

5 Which **region** of the Earth has the largest area of **forest?**
Siberia in Russia / the Amazon in Brazil / Quebec in Canada

6 Is there **anywhere** on Earth where **humans** have never walked?
Yes, a few places. / No, **nowhere.**

GLOSSARY

island	a piece of land with water all around it
world	the Earth with all its countries and people
desert	a large, dry area of land, e.g. the Sahara
deep	Sth that is **deep** goes down a long way.
region	a part of a country or the world
forest	a large area of land covered by trees
human	a person **human** *adj*

SPOTLIGHT *somewhere, anywhere, nowhere, everywhere*

Somewhere means 'in or to a place', but you do not say or know where.
- *They are **somewhere** in the Sahara Desert.*

Anywhere is used in questions and negative sentences.
- *Is there a house **anywhere** on the island? I can't see a house **anywhere**.*

Nowhere means 'in no place'.
- *There is **nowhere** to stay in this region.*

Everywhere means 'in every place'.
- *There are rocks **everywhere** on the beach.*

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ rock / everywhere D
1 desert / anywhere .....
2 island / somewhere .....
3 world / forest .....
4 desert / region .....
5 desert / forest .....
6 somewhere / nowhere .....
7 island / human .....
8 human / nowhere .....

2 Write *Yes* or *No*.

▶ Is the **world** bigger than the **sun**? No
1 Is Sicily an **island**? .....
2 Does it rain a lot in the **desert**? .....
3 Are there trees in a **forest**? .....
4 Is a **region** the same as a **country**? .....
5 Are trees **human**? .....
6 Do you find **rocks** in the sea? .....
7 Is a river as **deep** as the middle of the sea? .....
8 Is **everywhere** the same as **somewhere**? .....

3 Complete the sentences with *anywhere/somewhere/nowhere/everywhere*.

▶ Everywhere in the world, there are good people and bad people.
1 Is there ..... in the forest where we can buy a coffee?
2 Are there any seas in the desert?
~ No, ...
3 Are there any humans on the island?
~ Yes, they live ..... in the north.
4 The rocks are ..... under the water. I can see hundreds of them.
5 There was ..... quiet in the forest; there were noises everywhere.
6 Ali is ..... in the forest, but I'm not sure where exactly.
7 There isn't ..... in the region where humans live.
8 The deepest river in the world is ..... in Africa, I think.

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the quiz at the top of the page, or talk to another student.

TEST YOURSELF

34 The environment

A Environmental problems

Every year, we are **destroying** more and more forests.
15 billion trees are **disappearing** every year.
As the world population **increases**, the **land** is being used to **build** cities, grow food and make furniture.
This will be a **disaster** for **the environment** and will bring more **extreme** weather.
Governments around the world need to work together to stop this disaster.

GLOSSARY

destroy	break sth completely so that you can't use it again or it is gone
disappear	If sth **disappears**, it goes away so that people can't see it.
increase	become bigger or more **increase** *n*
land	the part of the Earth that is not the sea
build *pt/pp* **built**	make sth by putting parts together: ***build*** *houses*
disaster	sth very bad that happens, and may hurt a lot of people
the environment	the air, water, land, animals, and plants around us **environmental** *adj*
extreme	very great or strong
government	**The government** is the group of people who control a country and decide what laws it will have.

1 **Underline the stressed syllable. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ to increase
1 government
2 disaster
3 environment
4 disappear
5 destroy

2 **Circle the correct word.**

▶ Extreme weather is a *disaster* / *land* for growing food.
1 The number of people in the world is ***destroying*** / ***increasing***.
2 Forests around the world are ***building*** / ***disappearing***.
3 The ***government*** / ***environment*** has to do something quickly.
4 We need to ***build*** / ***destroy*** more cities for people to live in.
5 Unfortunately, we are ***increasing*** / ***destroying*** more forests every year.
6 People need ***land*** / ***the environment*** to build houses on.

3 **Cover the glossary and complete the sentences.**

▶ If you make something like a house or factory, you build it.
1 If something gets bigger, it ..... .
2 The people who are in control of a country are the ..... .
3 Something very bad that happens and hurts people is a ..... .
4 The place where people build homes or grow food is the ..... .
5 The water, air, land, animals and plants are all the ..... .
6 If something goes away and you can't see it any more, it ..... .
7 If you break something and can't use it again, you ..... it.
8 In the desert, you can have ..... heat and cold.

TEST YOURSELF

B Talking about the environment

coal

petrol

electricity

gas

Word	Example	Meaning
source	*The forests are a **source** of wood.*	a place, person or thing that you get sth from
energy	*Coal, petrol, gas and electricity are all sources of **energy**.*	**Energy** comes from *gas, electricity, coal, petrol,* etc. and is used to make machines work and to make heat and light.
develop	*Scientists are **developing** cleaner ways to use coal.*	think of or produce a new idea or product, etc.
pollution	*There is a lot of **pollution** in rivers and oceans.*	the act of making the air, rivers, etc. dirty and dangerous
cause	*What is the **cause** of the oceans getting warmer?*	the thing or person that makes sth happen **cause** *v*
recycle	*If we **recycle** more, we help the environment because we don't make so many products from new materials.*	do sth to paper, glass, etc. so that they can be used again

4 **Correct the spelling mistakes.**

- ▶ polution pollution
- 1 recicle .....
- 2 energie .....
- 3 gaz .....
- 4 cole .....
- 5 petrole .....
- 6 elektricity .....
- 7 develope .....
- 8 cuase .....

5 **True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

- ▶ You can't see electricity. T
- 1 Pollution is a good thing. .....
- 2 Smoking cigarettes causes illness. .....
- 3 If you recycle something, you use it again. .....
- 4 Coal is black and hard. .....
- 5 You can see gas. .....
- 6 You put petrol in cars. .....
- 7 If you develop something, you destroy it. .....
- 8 We use coal to get energy. .....
- 9 Pollution is good for fish and animals. .....
- 10 Humans are one cause of pollution. .....

6 **Match 1–6 with a–g.**

- ▶ We should recycle e
- 1 Gas is a .....
- 2 We need to develop .....
- 3 We use electricity .....
- 4 Pollution is the cause .....
- 5 Coal is used to .....
- 6 Petrol in cars causes .....

- a of serious illness.
- b a lot of pollution.
- c make a fire.
- d new types of energy.
- e more bottles. ✓
- f source of energy.
- g to keep our houses warm.

7 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 In your home, what type of energy do you use? .....
2 In your country, which is more expensive: gas, electricity or coal? .....
3 Is there a lot of air pollution where you live? .....
4 What causes pollution in your home town? .....
5 Do you recycle a lot? If so, what do you recycle? .....

TEST YOURSELF

35 Countries and nationalities

Where are you from?

Where do you come from?

Continents and areas in the world	Country *I'm from / I come from ...*	Nationality (and language) *I'm ...*
Europe	the Czech Republic	Czech
	France	French
	Germany	German
	Greece	Greek
	Hungary	Hungarian
	Italy	Italian
	Poland	Polish
	Portugal	Portuguese
	Russia	Russian
	Spain	Spanish
	Switzerland	Swiss (German, French, Italian)
	Turkey	Turkish
Asia	India	Indian (Hindi)
	China	Chinese
	Japan	Japanese
	South Korea	Korean
	Thailand	Thai
North America	Canada	Canadian (English, French)
	the United States (of America)	American (English)
Central America ALSO Latin America	Mexico	Mexican (Spanish)
South America ALSO Latin America	Argentina	Argentinian (Spanish)
	Brazil	Brazilian (Portuguese)
Africa and the Middle East	Egypt	Egyptian (Arabic)
	Saudi Arabia	Saudi (Arabic)
Australia	Australia	Australian (English)

The word for the language and the word for the nationality are usually the same word, e.g. *Czech*.
Jana is Czech. Do you speak Czech?
Sometimes they are different, e.g. people from ***Mexico*** are ***Mexican***, but the language they speak is ***Spanish***. Countries, nationalities and languages begin with capital letters: ***Japan*** (NOT ~~*japan*~~).

GLOSSARY

country	e.g. *France, China, Brazil*
nationality	e.g. *American, Swiss, French*
language	e.g. *German, Japanese, Arabic*
continent	e.g. *Asia, Europe, Africa*
(Great) Britain	= *England, Wales* and *Scotland*
the United Kingdom / the UK	= *England, Wales, Scotland* and *Northern Ireland*

SPOTLIGHT people from a country

To talk about people from a country, we often add *s* to the nationality.

- *Italians, Brazilians, Thais, Greeks*

Some plural forms are irregular.

- *The British, the French, the English, the Spanish, the Chinese, the Japanese, the Swiss*

1 **Underline the stressed syllable for the nationalities. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ Poland / Polish
1 China / Chinese
2 Hungary / Hungarian
3 Germany / German
4 Italy / Italian
▶ Portugal / Portuguese
5 Japan / Japanese
6 Canada / Canadian
7 Korea/ Korean
8 Egypt / Egyptian

2 **True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ Argentinians speak Spanish T
1 Saudis speak Arabic. .....
2 Mexicans speak Spanish. .....
3 Thais speak Japanese. .....
4 Hungarians speak Hungarian. .....
5 Australians speak Australian. .....
6 Brazilians speak Portuguese. .....
7 Americans speak English. .....
8 The Swiss speak French, Spanish or German. .....

3 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ Northern Ireland is in the UK .
1 Scotland is in Great ..... .
2 Hungary is in ..... .
3 Mexico is in ..... America.
4 Africa is a ..... .
5 Argentina is in ..... America.
6 Egypt is in ..... .
7 Saudi Arabia is in ..... .
8 India is in ..... .
9 Asia is a ..... .

4 **Write the first letter of each word. Remember, countries and nationalities begin with CAPITAL LETTERS. Then write *C* (*country*) or *N* (*nationality*) next to each one.**

▶ S audi N
1 ___taly ___
2 ___ungary ___
3 ___exico ___
4 ___wiss ___
5 ___hina ___
▶ B ritain C
6 ___zech ___
7 ___gypt ___
8 ___panish ___
9 ___razil ___
10 ___urkey ___
11 ___reek ___
12 ___rench ___
13 ___ermany ___
14 ___ussia ___
15 ___rgentinian ___
16 ___ortugal ___

5 **Complete the text.**

My name's Magda, and I'm studying ▶ En glish in London at the moment. I'm from **(1)** Po....., and I live with two students: Silvia, who's **(2)** Br....., and Irina who's from **(3)** Ru...... Irina speaks **(4)** Ru..... and **(5)** Po..... . We go to a language school in the centre. Our class has many nationalities: there are two **(6)** Ja..... students, a **(7)** Ko..... man, three **(8)** Tu..... women, a young **(9)** It..... girl, a **(10)** Ch..... boy and four students from **(11)** Sp..... . Our teacher is Dennis, and he's **(12)** Au..... .

6 **Complete the boxes with nationalities ending in these letters.**

-ian	-ish	-an	-ese
▶ Italian			
....	.....	.....	.....
....	.....	.....	.....
....	.....	.....	.....
....	.....	.....	

7 ABOUT YOU **Do you know people from any of these countries? Put a (✓) next to the country if you do. If possible. tell another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

36 My country

A Geography

Brazil is **enormous**. The Atlantic **Ocean**[1] is in the **east**. The **coast**[2] is 3,000 **kilometres long**. In the **north, south** and **west,** there are **borders**[3] with ten different countries. The longest **river**[4] is the Amazon, and Pico da Neblina is about 3,000 metres **high**: it's the **highest mountain**[5] in Brazil. Many of the **major** cities are **on the coast**, but not the **capital**, Brasilia. The most **famous** city is Rio de Janeiro, which has Sugarloaf Mountain and Corcovada, plus some great **beaches**, like Copacabana. It is very **popular** with tourists.

GLOSSARY

enormous	very big SYN **huge**	**capital**	a city where a country has its government
3,000 **kilometres** (km) **long**	3,000 km from one end to the other	**famous**	If sth is **famous**, many people know about it: *Rio is **famous for** Carnival.*
3,000 **metres** (m) **high**	3,000 m from top to bottom (A mountain is **high**. NOT ~~tall~~)	**beach**	an area of sand next to the sea, e.g. Copacabana
major	large and important	**popular**	If sth is **popular**, many people like it.

1 Study the map of Brazil and the text, then complete the sentences.

▶ Brasilia is the capital.

1 The Amazon is the longest _____.
2 Pico de Neblina is the highest _____.
3 Porto Alegre is on the _____.
4 Pico de Neblina is 3,000 m _____.
5 The Amazon is nearly 7,000 km _____.
6 There's a _____ between Brazil and Argentina.
7 The Atlantic _____ is on the _____ coast.
8 Sao Paolo is a _____ city.
9 The Amazon is in the _____ of Brazil.
10 Brazil is an _____ country.
11 Rio's beaches are _____ with tourists.

2 Complete the dialogues.

▶ Is Porto Alegre a small place? ~ No, it's a major city.

1 Is Iguape _____ ? ~ No, most people don't know about it.
2 China's enormous. ~ Yes, it's _____, isn't it?
3 Is California on the east coast? ~ No, it's on the _____ coast.
4 Is New York in the south? ~ No, it's in the _____ of the USA.
5 Is the Pacific a sea? ~ No, it's an _____.
6 How _____ is the Nile? ~ It's 6,853 kilometres _____.
7 Is Copacabana the capital? ~ No, it's a famous _____.
8 Do people go there a lot? ~ Yes, it's very _____.

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 What's the capital, and where is it? _____
2 What are some of the other major cities? _____
3 Does it have borders with any other countries? If so, what are they? _____
4 What's the longest river? _____
5 What's the highest mountain? _____
6 Which are the most famous places in your country? _____

TEST YOURSELF

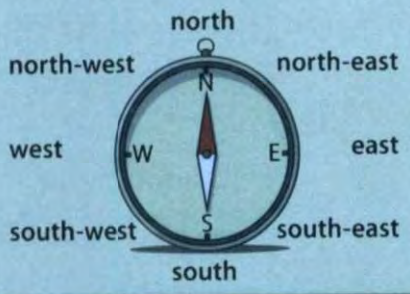
B Facts about places

I live in …

a big **city**	**in** the **north-west of** Poland
a **town**	**on** the coast
a small **village**	**on** the River Dee

It has a **population** of **over / just under** a million/100,000.

Interesting **facts**:
It's famous for …
- its **ancient** buildings
- its **industry** (computers, cars, etc.)
- its **culture**
- its fantastic **climate**



GLOSSARY

city	a very large town, e.g. 2 million people
town	smaller than a city, e.g. 30,000 people
village	smaller than a *town*, and in the countryside
population	the number of people who live in a place
over (a thousand)	more than (a thousand) OPP **under**
just under	a little under ALSO **just over**
fact	a piece of true information
ancient	very old OPP **modern**
industry	the work of making things, e.g. *cars, electronics*
culture	activities like art, music, theatre, literature, etc.
climate	the normal weather in a place

4 **Is the pronunciation of the <u>underlined</u> letters the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise the words.**

▶ c<u>u</u>lture / ind<u>u</u>stry D
1 t<u>o</u>wn / s<u>ou</u>th .....
2 anc<u>i</u>ent / <u>c</u>limate .....
3 f<u>a</u>mous / <u>a</u>ncient .....
4 pop<u>u</u>lation / cult<u>u</u>re .....
5 <u>c</u>ity / <u>c</u>ulture .....
6 villa<u>g</u>e / j<u>u</u>st .....

5 **Write the phrases in the correct columns.**

in the north-east ✓ | on the coast | famous for its modern buildings | over two million
mobile phone industry | just under 50,000 | on the River Duero | a small village | south-west of the capital
about 3,000 | a large city | a warm climate | a small town | a city full of culture

SIZE	WHERE?	POPULATION	INTERESTING FACTS
.....	in the north-east	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....

6 **Complete the text about Turin.**

Turin is a large ▶ city, 140 km south-west **(1)** ..... Milan, **(2)** ..... the north-west **(3)** ..... Italy. It is **(4)** ..... the River Po and three other rivers. It has a **(5)** ..... of about one million (in fact, it is 908,000). It is famous for one very important **(6)** ..... : car-making. It also has many **(7)** ..... buildings, including palaces and castles. The **(8)** ..... is cold in winter and hot in summer.

7 ABOUT YOU **Write a similar text about your city/town/village.**

.....

.....

.....

TEST YOURSELF

37 Weather

A What's the weather like?

What's the weather like?

It's **sunny**. The **sun's shining**. It's a **bright** day.

It's **cloudy**. There are **a lot of** grey **clouds**.

It's **raining**. The roads are **wet**. There's a lot of **rain**.

It's **windy**. The **wind** is **blowing**. *pt* **blew**

There's **snow** on the mountains and **ice** on the river. **icy** *adj*

SPOTLIGHT *a lot (of)* and *a bit (of)*

a lot of / a bit of + noun	verb + **a lot / a bit**	**a bit** + adjective
▪ *We had **a lot of** rain.*	▪ *It snowed **a lot**.*	▪ *It's **a bit** cold today.*
▪ *There's **a bit of** snow.*	▪ *It's raining **a bit**.*	▪ *It was **a bit** windy.*

We don't usually use **a bit** with positive adjectives: NOT ~~*a bit sunny/good*~~.

1 Match 1–9 with a–j.

▶ It's d
1 It .....
2 The wind .....
3 It isn't .....
4 The sun .....
5 Is .....
6 There's a bit .....
7 There are lots of .....
8 It doesn't .....
9 What's .....

a clouds in the sky today.
b it bright and sunny outside?
c isn't raining.
d cold this morning. ✓
e of snow on the roads.
f rain a lot here.
g the weather like?
h very windy.
i blew my hat off.
j is shining.

2 Rewrite the sentences keeping the same meaning.

▶ There was a lot of rain. It rained a lot.
1 It isn't wet outside. It isn't ..... .
2 Is the sun shining? Is it ..... ?
3 We often have snow. It often ..... .
4 She doesn't like wind. She doesn't like ..... weather.
5 Is it hot or cold today? What's the ..... like?
6 There are a few clouds. It's a bit ..... .
7 Is there any ice on the roads? Is it ..... ?
8 It's windy today. The wind is ..... today.

3 Write *a lot, a lot of, a bit* or *a bit of*.

▶ We had a lot of ..... rain this morning, but it's good for the garden.
1 It's ..... wet today.
2 There was ..... wind this morning. I couldn't use my umbrella.
3 It snows ..... in the mountains – sometimes over twenty centimetres a day.
4 There's ..... rain, but not much. You don't need your umbrella.
5 It snowed ..... last night – only two centimetres.
6 It rained ..... yesterday – I couldn't go out.
7 It's not a bad day. It's ..... cloudy but with some sun.
8 Don't go out in your car. There's ..... ice on the roads.

TEST YOURSELF

B Weather in the seasons

In my country, the weather in spring **changes all the time**. It can be **dry** and **warm**, but we often have **showers**. It can get very hot in the cities in summer and then **suddenly** we have a **storm**. It's a lot **better** on the coast, where it's cooler. In autumn, we have **strong winds** and **heavy rain**. Winter brings clear **skies** and sunny days, but it's **extremely** cold.

GLOSSARY	
change	become sth different
all the time	always or very often
dry	with no rain OPP **wet**
shower	a short period of rain
suddenly	quickly and often in a very surprising way
storm	(*see picture*)
better (than)	comparative form of **good** (here = nicer) OPP **worse (than)**: *The weather here is quite good, but the weather in the south is* ***better.***
strong winds	A 50 kph wind is a **strong wind**.
heavy rain	a lot of rain
sky	the sky is above you when you look up into the air; **clear skies** are blue with no clouds in them
extremely	very

4 **Circle the correct word.**

▶ Warm weather is very *nice* / *uncomfortable*.

1 It was very sunny between the ***showers*** / ***storm***.
2 ***Suddenly*** / ***Extremely***, it started raining.
3 The sky is very ***warm*** / ***clear*** this morning.
4 Showers usually last a few ***hours*** / ***minutes***.
5 We had some very ***big*** / ***strong*** winds last night.
6 The weather ***changes*** / ***rains*** all the time.

5 **Rewrite the sentences using the words on the right and the word IN CAPITALS.**

▶ It's wet outside. RAIN It's raining outside.
1 It rained a lot last night. HEAVY There was .....
2 The weather here isn't as good as Spain. BETTER The weather in Spain .....
3 There was a bit of rain in the afternoon. SHOWER There .....
4 The weather's different every day. CHANGE The weather .....
5 It isn't wet today. DRY It .....
6 We had heavy rain and strong winds. STORM We had .....
7 There are no clouds in the sky. CLEAR There are .....
8 There's snow every day in winter. ALL THE TIME It .....

6 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY **Does your country have ...**

▶ storms in summer? We often have storms in summer.
1 a lot of showers in spring? .....
2 much snow? .....
3 good weather in summer? .....
4 dry winters? .....
5 heavy rain in spring? .....
6 strong winds? .....

TEST YOURSELF

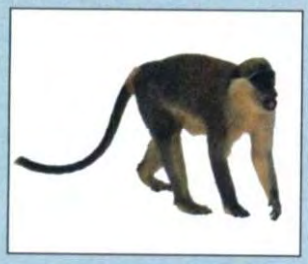
38 Animals, insects and birds

lion

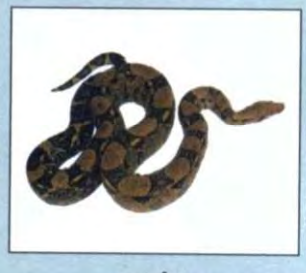
tiger

elephant

bear



monkey

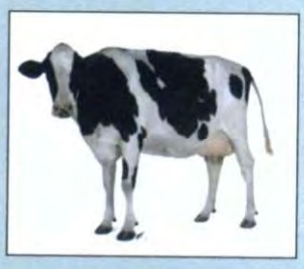


snake

whale

bird

horse



cow

sheep (*pl* sheep)

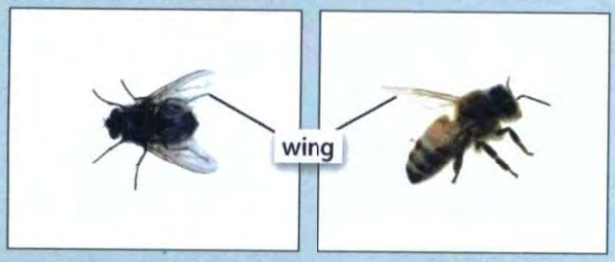
pig

dog

cat

mouse (*pl* mice)

spider



fly

bee

SPOTLIGHT *both*

Both means 'each of two'.

- *Dogs and cats are* ***both*** *common in England.* (= Dogs are common and cats are also common in England.)
- *Do lions swim? Yes, and tigers. They can* ***both*** *swim.*
- *Do you like cows and sheep? Yes, I like* ***both of them****.*

GLOSSARY

animal	any living thing that can move or feel. **Animal** is sometimes used to talk only about *cats, dogs, cows,* etc. and not about *people, birds, fish* or *insects.*
wild animal	A **wild animal** lives in nature, not with people, e.g. *a lion* or *an elephant.*
pet	an animal or bird that lives with people in their home. *Dogs* and *cats* are common **pets** in Britain.
insect	a small animal with six legs and usually wings, e.g. *a bee, a fly*
zoo	(sounds like *you*) a place, often in or near a town, where people can go and look at wild animals
farm	land and buildings where people keep animals and grow things. The person who does this is a **farmer**. *Pigs* and *cows* are **farm** animals.

1 **Write the names of these animals and insects in order from big to small.**

bear cat fly whale monkey sheep elephant lion mouse

big whale .... small

2 **Put the animals in the correct column.**

sheep elephant tiger cow cat fly dog horse pig bee lion bear

PETS	FARM ANIMALS	INSECTS	WILD ANIMALS
.....	▶ sheep	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....
	.....		.....
	.....		.....

3 **Think about the pronunciation of the underlined letters, then answer the questions. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ Is *c<u>o</u>w* the same as *n<u>o</u>w* or *kn<u>o</u>w*? now

1 Is *b<u>o</u>th* the same as *m<u>o</u>st* or *d<u>o</u>g*? .....

2 Is *t<u>i</u>ger* the same as *s<u>i</u>t* or *l<u>i</u>on*? .....

3 Is *sn<u>a</u>ke* the same as *b<u>a</u>ck* or *wh<u>a</u>le*? .....

4 Is *m<u>o</u>nkey* the same as *s<u>o</u>n* or *g<u>o</u>ne*? .....

5 Is *b<u>ea</u>r* the same as *h<u>ai</u>r* or *h<u>ea</u>r*? .....

6 Is *el<u>e</u>phant* the same as *c<u>a</u>t* or *t<u>i</u>ger*? .....

7 Is *sp<u>i</u>der* the same as *w<u>i</u>ld* or *m<u>i</u>ss*? .....

4 **Complete each sentence with one word.**

▶ Lions and tigers can both swim .

1 Dogs usually live with ..... .

2 People often sit on ..... .

3 Whales live in the ..... .

4 Birds often eat ..... .

5 Birds and bees can both ..... .

6 Cats sometimes catch and eat ..... .

7 Pigs live on ..... .

8 People often see wild animals in a ..... .

9 Flies have two ..... .

5 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ Elephants are one of the biggest animals in the world.

1 Are dogs and cats common ..... in your country?

2 My uncle is a ..... . He has a ..... with over 500 sheep and cows.

3 You can see lots of ..... animals in parts of Africa.

4 Did you see a lion or tiger at the zoo? Yes, I saw ..... of them.

5 A spider is not an ..... because it has eight legs.

6 I've seen wild animals in the ..... near where I live.

7 The bird had a problem with one of its ..... and it couldn't fly.

8 I often go to the zoo with my brother: we ..... like wild animals.

6 **Which animal(s) or insect(s) has/have:**

▶ eight legs? spider

1 four legs? .....

2 two legs? .....

3 six legs? .....

4 no legs? .....

7 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 Do you have any pets? If so, what? .....

2 Have you ever seen wild animals (not on TV)? If so, where? .....

3 Are you afraid of any animals or insects? .....

4 What animals are usually used as farm animals in your country? .....

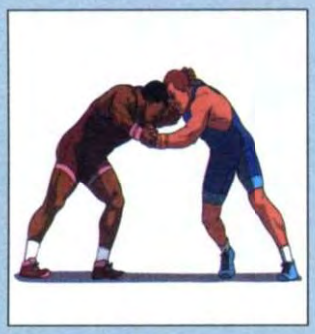
5 Do people often go to zoos in your country? What do you think about zoos? .....

6 Is there an animal or insect on the opposite page that you especially like or dislike? .....

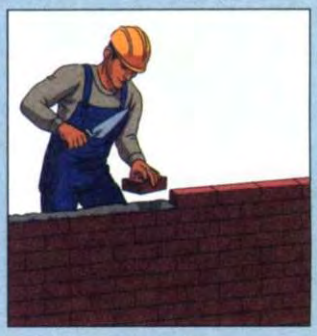
TEST YOURSELF

39 Irregular verbs

Here are some common irregular verbs in English, which follow similar patterns. They are all taught in different parts of the book, so use the Word List or APP to help you if necessary. A more complete list is on page 198.

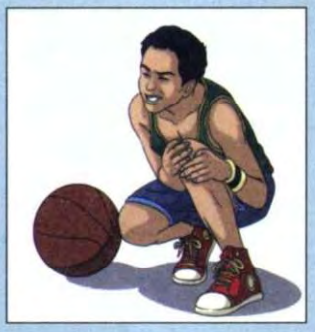


ring



build

hold



hurt

ride

pt/pp *-a/-u*	pt/pp – one vowel change	pt/pp *-o/-en*
sing/s**a**ng/s**u**ng	get/g**o**t/g**o**t	write/wr**o**te/writt**en**
swim/sw**a**m/sw**u**m	forget/forg**o**t/forg**o**tten	drive/dr**o**ve/driv**en**
ring/r**a**ng/r**u**ng	sit/s**a**t/s**a**t	ride/r**o**de/ridd**en**
drink/dr**a**nk/dr**u**nk	come/c**a**me/c**o**me	break/br**o**ke/brok**en**
begin/beg**a**n/beg**u**n	hold/h**e**ld/hel**d**	speak/sp**o**ke/spok**en**
run/r**a**n/r**u**n	fall/f**e**ll/fall**en**	wake (up)/w**o**ke/wok**en**
	win/w**o**n/w**o**n	

pt/pp *-ought/-ought*	pt/pp *-t*	pt/pp – no change
bring/br**ought**/br**ought**	lend/l**e**nt/l**e**nt	put/**put**/**put**
think/th**ought**/th**ought**	send/s**e**nt/s**e**nt	cut/**cut**/**cut**
buy/b**ought**/b**ought**	spend/sp**e**nt/sp**e**nt	hurt/**hurt**/**hurt**
fight/**fought**/**fought**	build/b**u**ilt/b**u**ilt	cost/**cost**/**cost**
pt/pp *-aught/-aught*	spell/sp**e**lt/sp**e**lt ALSO spelled	shut/**shut**/**shut**
catch/c**aught**/c**aught**	lose/l**o**st/l**o**st	let/**let**/**let**
teach/t**aught**/t**aught**	burn/b**u**rnt/b**u**rnt ALSO burned	hit/**hit**/**hit**

SPOTLIGHT *ever*

We often use **ever** (= any time before now) in questions in the present perfect (*has/have* + past participle).

- *Have you **ever** bought a car? ~ No, I haven't.* OR *No, I've never bought one.*
- *Has your sister **ever** written a blog? ~ Yes, she has.* (NOT ~~*Yes, she ever has.*~~)

1 **Cover the left-hand page, then write the past tense of the verbs.**

▶	sit	sat	**5**	buy		**10**	hold	
1	teach		**6**	sing		**11**	spell	
2	put		**7**	spend		**12**	ring	
3	let		**8**	drive		**13**	sit	
4	bring		**9**	speak		**14**	burn	

2 **For each question, which two verbs ...**

▶	don't change in the past tense?	(hurt) / fight / (shut)
1	change ***i*** to ***a*** in the past tense?	swim / begin / hit
2	change ***i*** to ***o*** in the past tense?	write / sit / drive
3	change to ***-ought*** in the past tense?	buy / catch / think
4	change from ***d*** to ***t*** in the past tense?	hold / send / build
5	don't change in the past tense?	put / forget / cut
6	have one vowel change in the past tense?	get / fall / cost

3 **Answer the questions using the same verb in the past tense.**

▶	What did Olivia sing?	~ She sang a pop song.
1	How far did you swim?	~ I ..... .
2	What did the teacher forget?	~ He ..... .
3	What did Ava send?	~ She ..... .
4	What did Mason lend you?	~ He ..... .
5	Where did your sister put the books?	~ She ..... .
6	Where did Liam fall?	~ He ..... .
7	How much money did Isabella lose?	~ She ..... .
8	How far did the children run?	~ They ..... .

4 **Complete the sentences with verbs in the past tense from page 82.**

▶ My sister taught in a school for five years.

1 I ..... across the river.

2 My dad ..... a fish in the lake last week.

3 I ..... the horse, and Ben ..... his bike.

4 When Esther ..... her finger, she said it really ..... .

5 My grandmother ..... a car until she was 90.

6 I ..... an email to my aunt last week to thank her for my birthday present.

7 This book only ..... £3.99.

8 The children ..... home at 10.00 and went to bed.

9 Darius ..... me early this morning to tell me the good news.

10 I went shopping and ..... a pair of shoes.

11 Martina ..... her new Italian course yesterday and really enjoyed it.

12 I ..... at 6 a.m. because I had to get up early.

5 ABOUT YOU **Complete the questions with the past participle of verbs from page 82. Then answer the questions about you.**

Have you ever ...

▶	got ill from eating eggs?	No, I haven't.
1	..... a very fast car?	.....
2	..... a horse?	.....
3	..... your own hair?	.....
4	..... a large amount of money?	.....
5	..... to a famous person? What did you say?	.....
6	..... somebody because you were very angry?	.....
7	..... a bone in your body?	.....
8	..... from a tree?	.....

40 *have got* and *have*

A *have got* and *have*

My brother — **has got** / **has** — a small car.

His wife — **has got** / **has** — a large motorbike.

They — **'ve got** / **have** — two daughters.

The girls — **haven't got** / **don't have** — boyfriends yet.

SPOTLIGHT *have got* and *have*

You can use **have got** or **have** to talk about something that is yours (= belongs to you). You can also use **have (got)** to describe illness, relationships and appearance. **Have got** is the usual form in spoken British English.

- ***Have*** *you* ***got*** *a car? ~ Yes, I* ***have***. (NOT ~~*Yes, I have got.*~~)
  OR
- *Do you* ***have*** *a car? ~ Yes, I* ***do***.

1 **Change *have* to the correct form of *have got* in each sentence.**

▶ I have an old car. I've got an old car.
1 She has blue eyes. .....
2 They have a small dog. .....
3 I don't have a smartphone. .....
4 He doesn't have any money. .....
5 Do you have any sisters? .....
6 Does she have a flat in town? .....
7 They don't have a shop now. .....
8 Do they have a big office? .....

2 **Correct the mistakes.**

▶ He have a car. He's got a car. OR He has a car.
1 She got any children? .....
2 They has got a lovely garden. .....
3 Have she got long hair? .....
4 My sister no have a boyfriend. .....
5 Have you a computer? .....
6 We don't got any friends here. .....

3 **Complete the questions.**

ABOUT YOU

▶ Have ..... you got a car? If so, what kind? — Yes, I have. It's a Ford.
1 Have you ..... a bike? If so, when do you use it? .....
2 ..... you have a computer? If so, what kind? .....
3 ..... your parents got a dog? If so, what's its name? .....
4 ..... your parents have a house in the country? If so, where? .....
5 ..... you got an English dictionary? If so, what's it called? .....
6 ..... you have any English-speaking friends? If so, who are they? .....

4 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

B *have* + noun

We use **have** + *noun* (NOT ~~*have got*~~) in a number of common expressions in English.

have a wash/shower/bath (~~*have got a wash*~~, etc.)		*I **had a** quick **shower** before I left.*
have breakfast/lunch/dinner (~~*the breakfast*~~, etc.)		*We **had lunch** in a pizzeria.*
have a drink/sth to eat		*I **had a drink** with Leo last night.* *Let's **have something to eat**.*
have a swim/walk/run (activities you do because you enjoy them)		*I didn't **have a run** this morning.* *We **had a** nice **walk** yesterday.*
have a (great/nice/terrible) time/day		*We **had a great time** in Kyoto.*
have a (good/nice) weekend/holiday/journey		***Have a nice weekend!*** ***Have a good journey.***
have a look (at sth)	look at sth to see it closely or read it	*Can I **have a look at** your camera?*
have a break	stop working for a short period and relax	*OK, let's **have a break** for 10 minutes.*
have a rest	relax and do nothing	*I **had a rest** in the afternoon.*

5 **Cover the table above. Make four more groups of phrases with *have* from the words below.**

swim	breakfast	holiday	bath	journey	rest ✓	lunch
shower	weekend	break ✓	dinner	walk	wash	run

GROUP 1	GROUP 2	GROUP 3	GROUP 4	GROUP 5
rest				
break				

6 **Complete the email.**

Dear Carla,

We're having a great ▶ time here in Parati. The hotel's nice, and we've got a lovely view of an old church from our room. Yesterday we had a **(1)** _____ round the town and bought a few things. In the evening, we had a **(2)** _____ in the bar you recommended. Afterwards, we had **(3)** _____ in a very nice fish restaurant. We're going to spend this morning on the beach so I can have a **(4)** _____ in the sea, then maybe do some more shopping this afternoon. I think we'll have a **(5)** _____ after that. I hope you're enjoying yourself in Rio, and have a good **(6)** _____ back to Buenos Aires on Saturday. See you in two weeks' time.

Love, Nicky

Send

7 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ I got up late and didn't have any breakfast.

1 Would you like to have something to _____? We've got lots of food.
2 We often have a _____ after lunch – along the river or in the park.
3 We have a twenty-minute _____ between the lessons.
4 I want to have a _____ round town this afternoon, maybe buy a few things.
5 Did you have a good _____ in London yesterday?
6 Have a nice _____. See you on Monday.
7 They had a fantastic _____ in Mallorca. They were there for three weeks.
8 I always have a shower in the summer, but in winter I prefer to have a _____.

41 *make* or *do*

A *make* and *do*: general differences

Here are two common meanings of **make**:

1 produce or create sth:

*The factory **makes** cars.*

*I'm **making** a cake for Tom's birthday.*

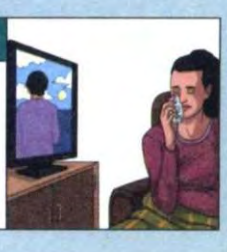
*This shirt is **made of** cotton.*

2 produce a change in sb or sth:

*Chocolate **makes you** fat.*

*Romantic films sometimes **make me** cry.*

*The book **made them** laugh.*



Here are two common meanings of **do** as an ordinary verb (not an auxiliary verb):

1 used about activities:

*What are you **doing** this evening?*

*I didn't **do** much at the weekend.*

2 have a job, or study sth:

*What do you **do**?*
~ I'm a doctor.

*I want to **do** medicine at university.*

1 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

▶ did / what / do / yesterday / you What did you do yesterday ?
1 does / his / wife / do / what ?
2 makes / his / software / company / programs .
3 make / does / you / why / English / tired ?
4 school / Spanish / to / I / next / want / year / do / at .
5 is / jumper / of / made / this / wool ?
6 you / night / did / do / what / last ?

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of *do* or *make*.

▶ The long walk made the children tired.
1 These shoes are ..... of leather.
2 She doesn't work at the bank any more. ~ Oh. What does she ..... now?
3 Matthew wants to ..... law when he goes to university.
4 Flying ..... me nervous.
5 I've just ..... sandwiches for lunch. Is that OK?
6 Cheese is ..... from milk.
7 What are you going to ..... next year?
8 My nephew wants to ..... a film about his school.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 What kinds of things are made in your country? .....
2 Do you ever make things for other people, e.g. clothes? .....
3 Do films or music ever make you cry? .....
4 What subjects did you do at school? (or are you doing at school?) .....
5 What are you doing this evening? .....
6 What did you do last weekend? .....

4 Look at the example sentences at the top of the page. How would you translate *make* and *do* in each sentence? If possible, talk to somebody who speaks your own language.

TEST YOURSELF

B *Do* or *make*?

Both **do** and **make** are used with a number of nouns with the meaning 'perform an action'.

do + action:	make + action:
your best	the bed
exercise [U] (in the gym)	a decision
exercises (in class)	a mistake
the housework [U]	money
your homework [U]	a noise
the shopping	sense

do exercise

do the housework

do your homework

GLOSSARY	
do your best	do all that you can: *I may not finish the work today, but I'll **do my best**.*
make a decision	choose what you want to do
make money	get money, often from work: *She **made** a lot of **money** when she worked in America.*
make a noise	make a sound, especially one that is loud and not nice
make sense	be possible to understand: *This sentence doesn't **make sense**.*

5 **Underline the correct verb.**

▶ I always try to ***do*** / ***make*** my best.

1 Have you ***done*** / ***made*** the shopping?
2 I ***make*** / ***do*** most of the housework at the weekend.
3 Don't become a teacher if you want to ***do*** / ***make*** a lot of money.
4 The children ***did*** / ***made*** a lot of noise last night.
5 We ***did*** / ***made*** a couple of grammar exercises in class.
6 Mia ***did*** / ***made*** a terrible mistake in her essay.
7 This exercise doesn't ***do*** / ***make*** sense.
8 I have to ***do*** / ***make*** a decision soon about the flat.

6 **Match 1–5 with a–f.**

▶ do exercise d
1 make sense .....
2 make a mistake .....
3 do the shopping .....
4 do your best .....
5 make a decision .....

a try as much as you can
b buy food
c choose what you want to do
d move your body to keep it strong ✓
e be possible to understand
f do something wrong

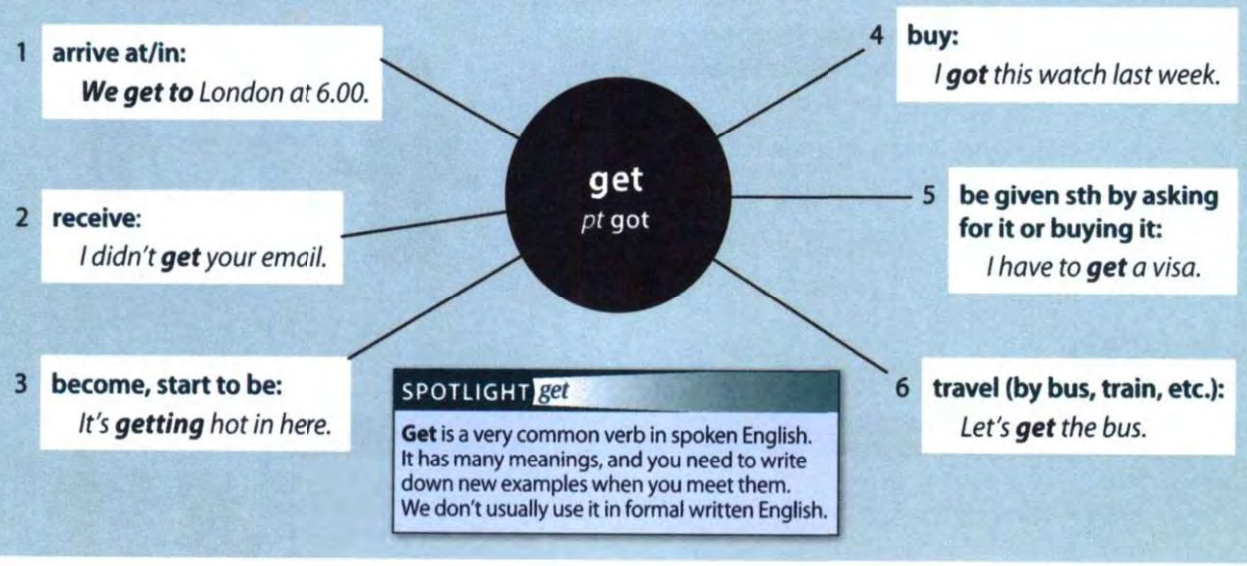
7 ABOUT YOU **Complete the questions.**

▶ Do you do many written exercises in class? No, we usually do written exercises for homework.
1 Do you ..... your own bed? .....
2 Do you often ..... mistakes with English? .....
3 Do your neighbours often ..... a lot of noise? .....
4 Do you ..... much housework? .....
5 Do you often ..... the shopping? .....
6 Is it important for you to ..... a lot of money? .....
7 Do you always try to ..... your best? .....

8 ABOUT YOU **Write answers to the questions in Exercise 7, or ask another student. If possible, also explain why / why not in your answers.**

TEST YOURSELF

42 get



SPOTLIGHT *get*

Get is a very common verb in spoken English. It has many meanings, and you need to write down new examples when you meet them. We don't usually use it in formal written English.

1 **In column 2, rewrite each sentence with the correct form of *get*.**

▶ I must buy some new clothes.	I must get some new clothes.	buy
1 Did you receive my message?		
2 He becomes angry if you're late.		
3 We arrived home late last night.		
4 It's becoming cold.		
5 I received three letters today.		
6 Where did you buy that bag?		
7 He needs to be given a job.		
8 Do you want to travel by train?		

2 **Cover sentences 1–8 in Exercise 1. Look at the sentences you wrote. What does *get* mean in each one? Write your answer in column 3.**

▶ I must get some new clothes. ..... buy .....

3 **Complete the sentences in a logical way using *get*.**

▶ There weren't any buses, so we got the train .
1 Could you close the window? It's ..... .
2 What time did you ..... ?
3 Those shoes are lovely. Where did you ..... ?
4 Do you want to walk or ..... ?
5 I need a map of the town. Where can I ..... ?
6 She sent me an email but I didn't ..... .
7 I must go now, it's ..... .
8 I have to be at the cinema in ten minutes, so I'm going to ..... .
9 Tom worked hard for his maths and he ..... .
10 How many text messages do you ..... ?

4 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

▶ What time do you get home from work/college/school? I get home from school at 5 o'clock each day.
1 How often do you get the bus? .....
2 How cold does it get in your country? .....
3 How many texts do you get every day? .....
4 What was the last new item of clothing you got? .....
5 Where can you get information about your town/city? .....

TEST YOURSELF

43 see

see
pt saw *pp* seen

1 **know or notice sth with your eyes:**
*Can you **see** that church over there?*

2 **find out about sth by looking, asking, etc:**
*I'll **see** what time the train leaves.*

3 **visit or spend time with sb:**
*I went to **see** my parents at the weekend.*

4 **watch a film / TV programme / game:**
*I **saw** a film at the cinema.*

5 **understand sth:**
*Do you **see** what I mean?*

SPOTLIGHT *see* and *watch*

When you **see** something, you know about it with your eyes.
- *Can you **see** that bird in the tree?* (NOT ~~watch~~)

When you **watch** something, you look at it for a long time.
- *We **watched** a spider for about 15 minutes.* (NOT ~~saw~~)

You can **see** or **watch** a film, TV programme or game.
- *I **saw/watched** a football match in the park yesterday.*

1 Write down the meaning (1–5) of *see* in each of the sentences.

▶ I saw them at the show last night. I
1 I can't see the road from here. .....
2 Martin wants to see if he can buy tickets for the concert. .....
3 I want to see the new Spielberg film. .....
4 We're going to see friends this evening. .....
5 I may go, but it depends on the weather. ~ OK. I see. .....
6 It was so dark I couldn't see. .....
7 Did you see the news on TV? .....
8 I can't see why he wants to leave his job. .....

2 Underline the correct verb. Be careful: both verbs are correct in two of the sentences.

▶ Come and ***see*** / ***watch*** us for coffee next week.
1 I looked for Will, but I couldn't ***see*** / ***watch*** him.
2 The police know where the criminal lives, so they're going to ***see*** / ***watch*** his house.
3 Did you ***see*** / ***watch*** that new detective series on TV?
4 I must ***see*** / ***watch*** how much the tickets cost.
5 I have to ***see*** / ***watch*** the children carefully when they're in the street.
6 When are you going to ***see*** / ***watch*** the doctor?
7 I ***saw*** / ***watched*** in the paper that they're building a new theatre.
8 We ***saw*** / ***watched*** a great basketball game on Saturday.

3 Complete the questions with the correct form of *see* or *watch* or either.

ABOUT YOU

▶ Can you *see* any trees from where you live? Yes, I can see lots. We're opposite a park.
1 Can you ..... very well without glasses? Why? / Why not? .....
2 Do you ever ..... your father when he's working? .....
3 Are there some programmes on TV that you always ..... ? If so, what? .....
4 What was the last TV programme you ..... ? .....
5 How often do you ..... your best friend? .....
6 How often do you ..... your parents? .....
7 Can you ..... why *get* is a difficult verb for students learning English? .....

4 ABOUT YOU **Write answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

44 Verbs and nouns with the same form

- Many verbs in English can be used as nouns, with the same form and a similar meaning.
  *Did you **promise** to help him?* *Did you **make a promise** to help him?*
- When the verbs are used as nouns, you need to learn which verb to use with the noun.
  *She **surprised** me.* *She **gave** me **a surprise**.*
  *Could I **look** at your paper?* *Could I **have a look** at your paper?*
  *What **caused** the accident?* *What **was the cause** of the accident?*

The boys were **fighting.**
The boys were **having a fight.**

I called Jim.
I gave Jim **a call.**

I slept well.
I had a good **sleep.**

Does it **smell nice?**
Does it **have a nice smell?**

I dream about Ava.
I have dreams about Ava.

She **smiled at** me.
She **gave** me **a smile.**

Here are some more examples.

*Did you **reply**?*	*Did you **write/send** Jana **a reply**?*
*Did they **comment on** your work?*	*Did they **make a comment on** your work?*
*He can't **control** that dog.*	*He **has no control over** that dog.*
*I **emailed** you yesterday.*	*I **sent** you **an email** yesterday.*
*We often **chat**.*	*We often **have a chat**.*
***How much** did the hotel **cost**?*	*What **was the cost** of the hotel?*
*Can you **copy** this?*	*Can you **make a copy** of this?*

GLOSSARY

promise	say you will certainly do or not do sth **promise** *n*	**control**	make sb/sth do what you want **control** *n*
surprise	do sth that sb does not think you are going to do **surprise** *n*	**chat (to sb)**	talk in a friendly informal way to sb **chat** *n*
cause	be the reason why sth happens **cause** *n*	**copy**	write, draw or make sth exactly the same as sth else: *We **copied** a list of words into our notebooks.* **copy** *n*
comment (on sth)	say or write what you think about sth **comment** *n*		

1 **Circle the sound that is different. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶	promise	surprise	cause	**3**	over	comment	cost
1	comment	control	promise	**4**	surprise	smell	cause
2	promise	surprise	write	**5**	copy	surprise	control

2 **Do you need your hands and/or your mouth? Write *H*, or *M*, or *H and M*.**

▶	make a promise	M	▶	send an email	H
1	make a copy	.....	**4**	give someone a call	.....
2	give someone a smile	.....	**5**	send a reply	.....
3	have a fight	.....	**6**	have a chat	.....

3 **Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in the box.**

control	dream	fight	sleep	surprise	cost
cause	promise	smell	comment ✓	chat	

▶ The boss commented on your work – he was very pleased with it.
1 The hotel was expensive, but I don't know exactly how much it ..... .
2 The police caught the young men – they were ..... outside a night club.
3 It's a very big dog, and I'm afraid my wife can't ..... it.
4 I can't come tomorrow because I ..... to take my children to the zoo.
5 I stopped to ..... with a couple of friends. We talked about the game last Saturday.
6 Molly expected me at 8.00, so I arrived at 7.30 to ..... her.
7 I could ..... something wonderful coming from the kitchen: roast beef.
8 I was ..... about our holiday when I woke up.
9 There was something wrong with the computer, but I don't know what ..... the problem.
10 I went to bed early but I couldn't ..... .

4 **Rewrite the sentences using the verb as a noun.**

▶	She emailed me.	She sent me an email.
1	I dreamt about you.	I ..... .
2	Did he comment on the report?	Did he ..... ?
3	She promised to help me.	She ..... .
4	Does this soap smell nice?	Does this soap ..... ?
5	They surprised him.	They ..... .
6	I must reply to Jilly's letter.	I must ..... .
7	Did you call Mo?	Did you ..... ?
8	I looked at her newspaper.	I ..... .
9	Could you copy this?	Could you ..... ?
10	He smiled at me this morning	He ..... .

5 ABOUT YOU **Write down something that …**

▶ you promised to do I promised to help my father at the weekend.
you sometimes dream about .....
.....
costs a lot of money in your country .....
.....
has a strong smell .....
.....
is the main cause of problems in your country .....
.....
surprises you about people in your country .....
.....
the world cannot control .....

TEST YOURSELF

45 Shopping for food

A Food

milk [U]

bread [U]

butter [U]

cheese [U]

eggs

sugar [U]

cake [U]

a cake

jam [U]

biscuits

olives

olive oil [U]

rice [U]

pasta [U]

SPOTLIGHT uncountable nouns

The nouns with a [U] are usually uncountable.

- ***butter*** OR ***some butter*** (NOT ~~*a butter/butters*~~)
- *This bread* ***is*** *nice.* (NOT ~~*These breads are nice.*~~)

We can use phrases to count or talk about an amount of an uncountable noun.

- ***a piece of*** *cheese*
- ***two bars of*** *chocolate*

Some nouns can be countable or uncountable. Uncountable is for the food, etc. generally. Countable is for a small unit of it.

- *I like* ***chocolate****.* [U]
- *Would you like* ***a chocolate****?* [C]

chocolate [U]
a bar of chocolate

a box of chocolates

1 **Tick (✓) the answers that are right, and correct the answers that are wrong. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ a butter — butter / some butter

1 biscuits .....
2 a piece of cheese .....
3 two butters .....
4 a piece of chocolate .....
5 a bread .....
6 some sugar .....
7 an olive oil .....
8 rices .....
9 a jam .....
10 olives .....
11 a cheese .....

2 **Circle the correct word.**

▶ There *is* / *are* sugar in jam.

1 You make ***cheese*** / ***pasta*** with eggs.
2 You can put ***cheese*** / ***cake*** on bread.
3 There's a lot of sugar in ***cake*** / ***bread***.
4 You can eat ***rice*** / ***biscuits*** with meat.
5 There's no sugar in ***chocolate*** / ***pasta***.
6 I've got a box of ***milk*** / ***chocolates***.
7 ***Butter*** / ***Pasta*** comes from milk.
8 We have ***olives*** / ***biscuits*** with coffee.

3 ABOUT YOU **Look at the pictures. Which things do you: often buy? sometimes buy? never buy? Write your answers, or tell another student.**

▶ I often buy eggs.

TEST YOURSELF

B Buying food

Customer **Could I have** a **kilo** of onions, **please?**
Shop assistant **OK.** Do you **need** a **bag?**
Customer No, I've got one, thanks. And **have you got any** peaches?
Shop assistant Yes. **How many** do you want?
Customer Four, please. Are they **ready** to eat?
Shop assistant Yes, they're lovely.
Customer Great. **That's all, thanks.**

Customer I need some cheese, please.
Shop assistant Sure. **How much?**
Customer Oh, **half a kilo.** And some of those olives, please. About 200 **grams.**
Shop assistant **Right.** This is **just over.**
Customer **That's fine,** thanks.

SPOTLIGHT *how much?* and *how many?*

We use **how much** with uncountable nouns and **how many** with countable nouns:

- ***How much*** *butter do you want?*
- ***How many*** *apples do we need?*

GLOSSARY

Could I have ..., please?	This is a polite way of saying 'I want'.
kilogram	= 1,000 **grams**. **Kilo** is short for **kilogram**. **Half a kilo** = 500 **grams**.
bag	(*see picture*)
Have you got any ...?	= Do you have any ...? (**Any** is usually used in questions.)
ready	If sth is **ready to eat**, you can eat it now.
That's all, thanks.	= I don't want any more things.
need	If you **need** sth, you must have it.
right	OK. This means 'Yes, I understand you'.
just over (a kilo)	a little more than (a kilo) OPP **just under**
That's fine.	= That's OK.

4 Match 1–6 with a–g.

▶ Right. d
1 shop assistant .....
2 customer .....
3 that's all .....
4 ready to eat .....
5 need something .....
6 just under .....

a a person who works in a shop
b I don't want to buy any other things.
c OK to have it now
e must have something
d I understand what you mean. ✓
f a little less than
g a person who buys things in a shop or on the internet

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

▶ all / that's / thanks That's all, thanks. / Thanks. That's all.
1 twelve / have / could / please / eggs / I ..... ?
2 need / you / a / do / bag ..... ?
3 got / French / you / cheese / any / have ..... ?
4 much / do / pasta / how / need / you ..... ?
5 kilo / just / half / a / over / that's ..... .
6 oranges / many / need / do / how / you ..... ?

6 Complete the dialogues.

▶ A Yes? B I'd like ..... six lemons, please.
1 A Have you ..... any apples?
B Yes. How ..... would you like?
2 A Could I ..... some cheese, please.
B Sure, how ..... ?
A Oh, about 100 ..... . And that's ..... , thank you.
3 A ..... I have a kilo of potatoes, please?
B Sure. That's ..... under a kilo.
A ..... fine.
4 A These bananas don't look ..... to eat.
B No, they ..... two or three more days.

TEST YOURSELF

46 Fruit and vegetables

A Fruit

banana

orange

peach

apple

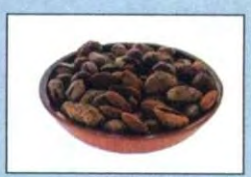
pear

lemon

strawberry

grapes

pineapple


nuts

GLOSSARY

fruit [U]	*Oranges, pears* and *nuts* are types of fruit: *I buy my **fruit** at the supermarket.*
taste	If sth **tastes** of lemon, it's like lemon when you eat or drink it: *This ice cream **tastes of** orange. It **tastes** sweet.*
sweet	tasting of sugar: *These strawberries are very **sweet**.*

1 **Find the end of each word.**

banana/grapeslemonnutsstrawberriespineapplepearorangepeachapple

2 **Circle the correct answer.**

▶ Which fruit is green: strawberries or apples?

1 Which taste sweet: oranges or nuts?
2 Which are yellow: grapes or lemons?
3 Which are round: peaches or pears?
4 Which are big: pineapples or grapes?
5 Which are long: bananas or apples?
6 Which are hard: strawberries or nuts?

3 **Complete the definitions.**

▶ Apples can be green, red or yellow, and are round.

1 ..... are long and yellow.
2 ..... are like lemons but are sweet and round.
3 ..... are yellow inside and have green leaves on top.
4 ..... are small and dry, and hard on the outside.
5 ..... things taste of sugar.
6 ..... are green or red/purple, and we use them to make wine.
7 ..... are small, soft and red.
8 ..... are soft and round, with a big stone in the centre.
9 Pears and lemons are types of .....

4 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or tell another student.**

Which fruit do you ...
eat every week? ..... eat every month? .....
often eat in summer? ..... never eat? .....

TEST YOURSELF

B Vegetables

potato

beans

onion

carrot

peas

cabbage

mushroom

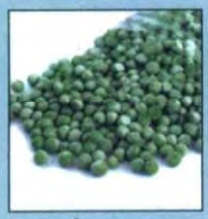
garlic

lettuce

tomato

cucumber

red pepper / green pepper


frozen

cooked

fresh

SPOTLIGHT *salad*

A **salad** can have different fresh **vegetables**. It usually has *lettuce*, and often has *tomatoes* and *cucumber*. *Red pepper*, *carrots* or *onion* are also possible.

5 **Make vegetables from the letters. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ ladas salad

1 sape .....
2 nonio .....
3 prepep .....
4 oatotp .....
5 gacabeb .....
6 ecultte .....
7 naseb .....
8 meuccrub .....
9 oouhmsrm .....
10 motaot .....
11 ragcil .....
12 ractor .....

6 **True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ Carrots are small and round. F

1 Potatoes and onions are vegetables. .....
2 Fresh peas are good to eat. .....
3 Lettuce is often frozen. .....
4 Garlic is usually cooked. .....
5 Mushrooms are green. .....
6 People eat frozen beans. .....
7 You often have tomatoes in a salad. .....
8 Salad is often cooked. .....
9 You need to cook carrots. .....
10 Cucumbers are long and green. .....

7 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

Questionnaire

Do you eat these things in your country? *Yes, we do. / Yes, a lot. / Yes, but not much. / No, we don't.*

cabbage _____ mushrooms _____ red peppers _____
fresh tomatoes _____ frozen peas _____ cooked onions _____
fresh cucumber _____ lettuce _____ frozen carrots _____
beans _____ cold potatoes _____ garlic _____

TEST YOURSELF

47 Meat and fish

animal	cow	sheep lamb	chicken	duck	pig	
types of meat (part of the animal or bird that you eat)	beef	lamb	chicken	duck	pork	ham
fish	salmon	tuna				
seafood	squid	prawns	crab			

bacon sausages

SPOTLIGHT saying what you eat

- *I eat* ***meat.*** = **Meat** is OK for me.
- ***I don't eat pork.*** = **Pork** is no good for me.
- ***I'm (a) vegetarian.*** = I don't eat **meat** or **fish**.

1 **True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ Tuna is a kind of meat. F

1 Vegetarians eat salmon. .....
2 Lamb is an animal and a type of meat. .....
3 Duck is a type of fish. .....
4 You get bacon from cows. .....
5 You can make sausages from pork. .....
6 Prawns are smaller than crab. .....
7 Salmon and squid are both fish. .....
8 Pig is a type of meat. .....
9 Chicken is a type of bird. .....
10 You get ham from sheep. .....

2 **Complete the names of *meat*, *fish* or *seafood*.**

▶ lam b

1 ..ee.. 2 ..a.. 3 ..un.. 4 ..uc.. 5 ..ra..
6 ..qui.. 7 ..aco.. 8 ..ausa.. 9 ..or.. 10 ..raw..

3 **Which one is different? Why?**

▶ cow sheep salmon pig — Salmon, because it's a type of fish, not an animal.
1 cow pig pork sheep — ....., because .....
2 ham lamb sausages bacon — ....., because .....
3 lamb pork beef tuna — ....., because .....
4 vegetarian squid chicken tuna — ....., because .....
5 sausage beef pork cow — ....., because .....
6 crab salmon prawns squid — ....., because .....

4 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

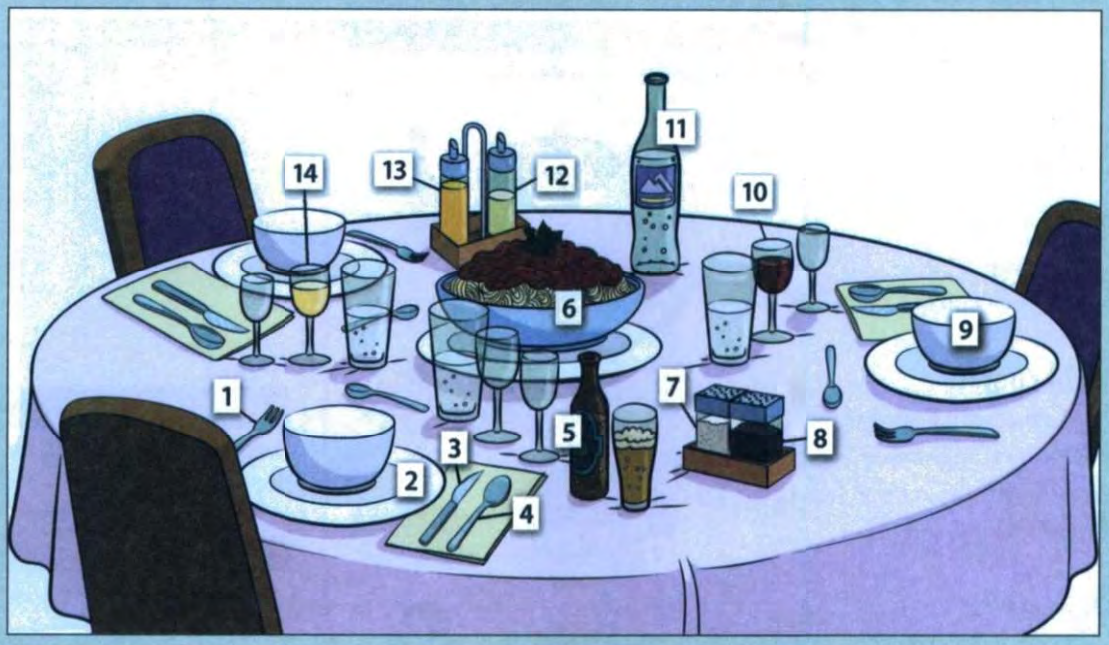
Do you eat these things? Why? / Why not?

▶ bacon Yes, I like bacon. / No, I'm vegetarian. / No, I don't eat bacon because I don't eat meat from pigs.

1 beef ..... 4 crab ..... 7 duck .....
2 squid ..... 5 tuna ..... 8 lamb .....
3 salmon ..... 6 prawns .....

TEST YOURSELF

48 A restaurant table



1	**fork**	8	**(black) pepper**
2	**plate**	9	**bowl**
3	**knife**	10	**glass of red wine**
4	**spoon**	11	**bottle of fizzy water**
5	**bottle of beer**	12	**vinegar**
6	**dish** (of pasta)	13	**oil**
7	**salt**	14	**glass of white wine**

SPOTLIGHT plural forms of nouns

For nouns ending in *-sh, -ch, -s* and *-x*, add *-es* in the plural.

- ***dish/dishes***
- ***church/churches***
- ***glass/glasses***
- ***box/boxes***

For nouns ending in *-f* or *-fe*, change to *-ves* in the plural.

- ***wife/wives***
- ***knife/knives***

1 Look at the picture. Write the numbers.

▶ How many glasses are there? 9

1 How many knives are there? .....
2 How many bowls? .....
3 How many spoons? .....
4 How many wine glasses? .....
5 How many plates? .....
6 How many bottles? .....
7 How many large dishes? .....
8 How many forks? .....

2 Look at the picture and complete the text.

On the table, each person has a ▶ knife, **(1)** f.....k, and **(2)** s.....n. They each have a white **(3)** p.....e and a **(4)** b.....l. To drink, there's a **(5)** b.....e of **(6)** f.....y w.....r, and two **(7)** g.....s of **(8)** w.....e: one **(9)** r.....d and the other **(10)** w.....e, plus a **(11)** b.....e of **(12)** b.....r. There is also some **(13)** s.....t and **(14)** b.....k p.....r, and little **(15)** b.....s of **(16)** o.....l and **(17)** v.....r.

4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY **Think about the things on the table, in the picture and complete the sentences.**

On restaurant tables in my country, we usually or sometimes have .....
We don't usually have .....
We never have .....

TEST YOURSELF

49 Eating in a restaurant

A The menu

GLOSSARY

fried	cooked in hot oil **fry** *v*
boiled	cooked in hot water **boil** *v*

SPOTLIGHT *menus*

A **menu** is a list of food you can have in a restaurant.

The **starter** (or **first course**) is usually small. The **main course** is the most important part of the meal.

Desserts are sweet and come at the end of the meal.

1 Correct the mistakes.

▶ Chips aren't a ~~start~~ starter

1 It's boil rice. .....
2 The potatoes are fry. .....
3 A cheese sorce. .....
4 The first course was salade. .....
5 Did you have ice creme? .....
6 There was fruit for desert. .....
7 I had tomato soap. .....
8 How was the apple pea? .....

2 True or false? Write *T* or *F*.

▶ You eat the starter after the main course. F

1 You eat ice cream with a knife and fork. .....
2 You eat the main course before dessert. .....
3 You can have eggs fried or boiled. .....
4 You eat chips in a bowl of soup. .....
5 The list of food to eat is called a menu. .....
6 The starter is the first thing you eat. .....
7 People often have cream on pizza. .....
8 Chips are fried. .....
9 Pasta usually has a sauce on it. .....
10 Apple pie is a starter. .....

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ I'd like fried fish .

1 Do you like cheese s..... on pasta?
2 Could I have the apple p....., please?
3 I don't like f..... chicken.
4 My starter was fish s..... .
5 What's your main c.....?
6 I love ice c..... .
7 I had chicken with b..... rice.

4 ABOUT YOU **Look at the menu. Write your answers, or ask another student.**

Which starter would you like? .....
Which main course would you like? .....
Which dessert would you like? .....

TEST YOURSELF

B Ordering the meal

Waiter **Are you ready to order?**
Customer Yes, **I'll have** the duck, please, but **without** the potatoes.
Waiter **Sure.** Would you like rice **instead?**
Customer Yes, please. And a glass of red wine, and some water.
Waiter **Fizzy** or **still?**
Customer Oh, still is fine.
(Later ...)
Customer Could I have **another** bottle of water, please? Oh, and **some more** bread.
Waiter Yes, **of course.**
(Later ...)
Waiter Was everything **all right** with your **meal?**
Customer Yes – the duck was **delicious.** Could I have **the bill**, please?
Waiter **Certainly.**

SPOTLIGHT *another* and *some more*

Say **another** (= one more) with countable nouns.
- ***another*** *glass/biscuit/apple*

Say **some more** with nouns in the plural and uncountable nouns.
- ***some more*** *biscuits/glasses*
- ***some more*** *water/wine/bread*

GLOSSARY

Are you ready to order?	= Do you know what you want to eat?	**instead**	in the place of sth or sb
order	ask for food or drinks in a restaurant, bar, etc.	**still water**	water without gas (**fizzy water** = water with gas)
I'll have tuna.	= I'd like/I want tuna.	**all right**	OK
without	*without sugar* = with no sugar	**meal**	Breakfast, lunch and dinner are **meals.**
sure / of course / certainly	These phrases all mean 'Yes, no problem'.	**delicious**	very good to eat
		the bill	a piece of paper that shows how much money you must pay for sth

5 Circle the correct word.

▶ I *like* / *'d like* a coffee, please.
1 Could I have ***some more*** / ***another*** potatoes?
2 Are you ready ***order*** / ***to order***?
3 Do you want ***another*** / ***some more*** bottle?
4 We had a delicious ***meal*** / ***food*** last night.
5 Is everything ***right*** / ***all right*** with your meal?
6 There's no salmon. Would you like ***some more*** / ***tuna instead***?
7 Yes, ***course*** / ***of course***.
8 Could I have ***a*** / ***the*** bill, please?
9 ***I*** / ***I'll*** have the prawns, please.
10 Yes, ***certainly*** / ***certain***.
11 You order from the ***customer*** / ***waiter***.
12 Black coffee is ***with*** / ***without*** milk.

6 Complete the conversations.

Conversation 1

W Are you ▶ ready to order?
C Yes, I'll **(1)** ..... the chicken, please.
W And is that with or **(2)** ..... cream sauce?
C With, please. And a bottle of water.
W Yes, of **(3)** ..... . Fizzy **(4)** .....?
C Fizzy, please.

Conversation 2

C Could I have **(5)** ..... more water, please?
W **(6)** ..... . And would you like a dessert?
C Er, yes, I **(7)** ..... have the ice cream. Then could I have the **(8)** .....?
W Yes, **(9)** ..... .

TEST YOURSELF

50 In a café

A Food and drinks

DRINKS

1 (white) coffee
2 black coffee
3 tea (with milk or lemon)
4 hot chocolate
5 orange juice (with ice)
6 a fizzy drink

SNACKS

7 a sandwich (white bread)
8 a sandwich (brown bread)
9 a toasted sandwich
10 a roll
11 crisps
12 cakes

SPOTLIGHT *café, bar, pub*

In a **café**, you can have a *drink* or a *snack*. In a **bar** or **pub**, you can have *drinks*, e.g. *juice*, but also *alcoholic drinks*, e.g. *beer* or *wine*. People go to pubs in Britain to have a drink, meet people and often eat food.

1 Find the end of each drink or snack.

You can have a ▶ roll/crispssnackcheesesandwichcaketoastedsandwich
You can have a ▶ hotchocolate/teawithlemondrinkblackcoffeefizzydrinkorangejuice

2 True or false? Write *T* or *F*.

▶ White coffee has milk in it. T
1 Ice is a drink. .....
2 Crisps and rolls are snacks. .....
3 Beer is an alcoholic drink. .....
4 Hot chocolate is a snack. .....
5 Cakes and orange juice are sweet. .....
6 You can eat in a café or some pubs. .....
7 You can have wine in a café. .....
8 You can have a fizzy drink in a bar. .....
9 Crisps are sweet. .....
10 A toasted sandwich is hot. .....

3 Complete the phrases.

▶ a ham sandwich
1 brown .....
2 a toasted .....
3 hot .....
4 juice with .....
5 black .....
6 alcoholic .....
7 ..... drinks
8 bar, café or .....?
9 brown or ..... bread?
10 ..... or white coffee?
11 apple .....
12 ..... with milk

4 ABOUT YOU **Look at the drinks and snacks. Which do you like most? Which don't you like? Write a list, or tell another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

B Buying food and drinks

A Hi, **what can I get you?**
B **I'd like** a ham sandwich on brown bread and two cheese rolls, **please.**
A Is that to **have** here or **take away?**
B To have here, please.
A **Fine. Anything else?**
B Yes, **can I have two coffees** and an apple juice?
A **Would you like** ice in the juice?
B **No, thanks.**
A **Is that everything?**
B Yes, **that's all, thanks.**
A OK, the **food** will be **a couple of** minutes. **Take a seat.**

SPOTLIGHT *please* and *thanks*

You use **please** when you ask for something politely.
- *Can I have a coffee,* ***please****?*

Yes, please is a polite way of saying 'yes'.
No, thanks/thank you is a polite way of saying 'no'.
- *Would you like a drink?* ***Yes, please. / No, thanks.***

That's all, thanks. = I don't want anything else.

GLOSSARY

What can I get you?	a polite way to ask 'What do you want?' ALSO **What would you like?**
I'd like	= I would like; a polite way to say 'I want'
have	You **have** (= eat) a sandwich. You **have** (= drink) a coffee.
take away	eat in another place, not the café
fine	= OK
anything else?	= Do you want any more things? ALSO **Is that everything?**
Can I have ...?	a polite way to say 'I want' ALSO **Can I get ...?**
two coffees	two cups of coffee ALSO **three teas**, etc.
food	things that people or animals eat
a couple of	two or three (e.g. minutes)
take a seat	sit down ALSO **have a seat**

5 **The same or different? Write *S* or *D*.**

▶ Would you like a drink? / Do you want a drink? S
1 a couple of minutes / two or three minutes .....
2 Please sit down. / Please have a seat. .....
3 Do you want some food? / Do you want something to drink? .....
4 No, thanks. / No, thank you. .....
5 What can I get you? / What would you like? .....
6 That's fine. / No, thanks. .....
7 Two teas, please. / Two cups of tea, please. .....
8 I'd like a beer, please. / I like beer. .....
9 Can I get a coffee, please? / Would you like a coffee? .....
10 Anything else? / Is that everything? .....

6 **Put the words in the correct order to complete the conversation.**

▶ A please / yes Yes, please.
B two / sandwiches / ham / please / toasted / like / I'd .....
A that / have / is / here/ to / away / take / or .....?
B have / please / to / here .....
A everything / that / is .....?
B teas / get / can / two / I / please .....
A be / will / a / minutes / of / it / couple .....
please / seat / a / take .....

7 **One word is missing in each line of the conversation. What is it and where does it go?**

▶ A Hi, What / I get you? Hi, what can I get you?
B Can I a tea with lemon, please. 1 .....
A To drink here or away? 2 .....
B To here. And a chicken sandwich, please. 3 .....
A Would you brown bread? 4 .....
B Yes. 5 .....
A OK, anything? 6 .....
B Thanks. 7 .....
A Fine. It will be a couple minutes. 8 .....
a seat, please. 9 .....

TEST YOURSELF

51 Vehicles and roads

A Vehicles and public transport

car

bus

coach

van

lorry/truck

bicycle/bike

motorbike/ motorcycle

taxi

the underground

GLOSSARY

vehicle	A car, a bus, a lorry, etc. are all types of **vehicles**.
public transport	buses, trains, etc. that everybody can use
coach	in Britain, a comfortable bus that takes people on long journeys
truck	is more common than **lorry** in American English.
motorcycle	is more common than **motorbike** in American English.
the underground	is called **the subway** in America.

SPOTLIGHT verbs used with vehicles

We **drive** a car, bus or taxi, but **ride** a bike or motorbike.

We often use **go** and **take** when we say how we travel.

- *I **go to** work **by** bus or **by** car.* (BUT *I **go to** work **on foot**.* = walk)
- *My children **take** the bus or the underground to school.*

1 **Underline the correct answer(s). Sometimes both answers are correct.**

▶ You don't see much if you take ***the bus / the underground***.

1 I go ***for / to*** work by bus.
2 She often drives her brother's ***car / bike***.
3 He's just bought a new ***motorcycle / motorbike***.
4 Do you often go ***by / on*** foot?
5 Can you ***ride / drive*** a motorcycle?
6 We often use ***public transport / the underground***.
7 My uncle drives a ***lorry / truck***.
8 I went from London to Scotland by ***bus / coach***.

2 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ When it's late, I take a taxi but they can be very expensive.

1 He never ..... his bike in the winter: it's too cold.
2 I can take the train from Paris to Amsterdam but the ..... is cheaper.
3 You often see very large ..... on the motorways and other big roads.
4 I like taking the bus in big cities but the ..... is usually quicker.
5 I'm too afraid to ride a big ..... .
6 I could drive, but I prefer to go on ..... – and it's good exercise.
7 All ..... can be dangerous, but especially large lorries.
8 Workmen often have ..... so they can carry everything they need for their work.

3 ABOUT YOU **Complete the sentences. If possible, ask someone else the questions.**

1 Can you drive? If so, when did you learn? .....
2 When did you learn to ride a bike? .....
3 How do you get to school, college or work? Are there different ways you can go? .....
4 Can you ride a motorbike? If not, would you like to ride one? .....
5 Is public transport good in your country? Is it expensive? .....
6 Do you go anywhere by coach? Why? / Why not? .....

TEST YOURSELF

B On the road

Beth and Marco, who is from Italy, are talking about a **journey**.

Marco Beth, **how far is it** from London to Bath?
Beth Oh, about 110 miles. That's about 180 kilometres, Marco.
Marco And what's the best way to **get there**?
Beth I think the best way is the M4 **motorway** from London. Then, at **exit** 18, keep on the **main road**, the A46 – and that goes all the way to Bath. It's about ten miles.
Marco Right. And are the motorways very **busy**?
Beth Yes, **unfortunately** they are – there's a lot of **traffic**, especially in the **rush hour**, or if there is an accident.
Marco OK. And how fast can you go on motorways here?
Beth Well, the **speed limit** is 70 **miles per hour**, but lots of people go faster.

GLOSSARY

journey	an act of travelling from one place to another
How far is it?	= How many kilometres/miles is it?
get there / to a place	arrive at a place
motorway	a large and wide fast road between towns
exit	the place where you leave, e.g. a motorway, a cinema, etc.
main road	a large, important road
busy	A **busy** road has a lot of cars on it. OPP **quiet**
unfortunately	a word that shows you are not happy about sth
traffic [U]	all the cars and vehicles that are on a road
rush hour	the busy time when people are going to and from work
speed limit	the fastest that you are allowed to travel on a road
miles per hour (mph)	how fast sb is travelling (ALSO **kilometres per hour** OR **kph**)

4 Cover the glossary, then write your answers.

▶ the place where you leave somewhere such as a motorway exit
1 all the cars and vehicles that are on a road .....
2 a busy time when people go to and from work .....
3 an important road in or around a town .....
4 What does *mph* mean? .....
5 the fastest you can travel on a road .....
6 the opposite of a *busy road* .....
7 a very large fast road between big towns and cities .....

5 Complete the sentences.

▶ You can take a country road, but the motorway is quicker.
1 It's a very ..... road in the rush ..... .
2 I saw an accident this morning on the ..... road into town.
3 How ..... is it from Paris to Marseille? ~ It's 740 kms.
4 Does it take long to ..... there? ~ Yes, ... it does. It's very tiring.
5 It's a long ..... and takes about five hours.

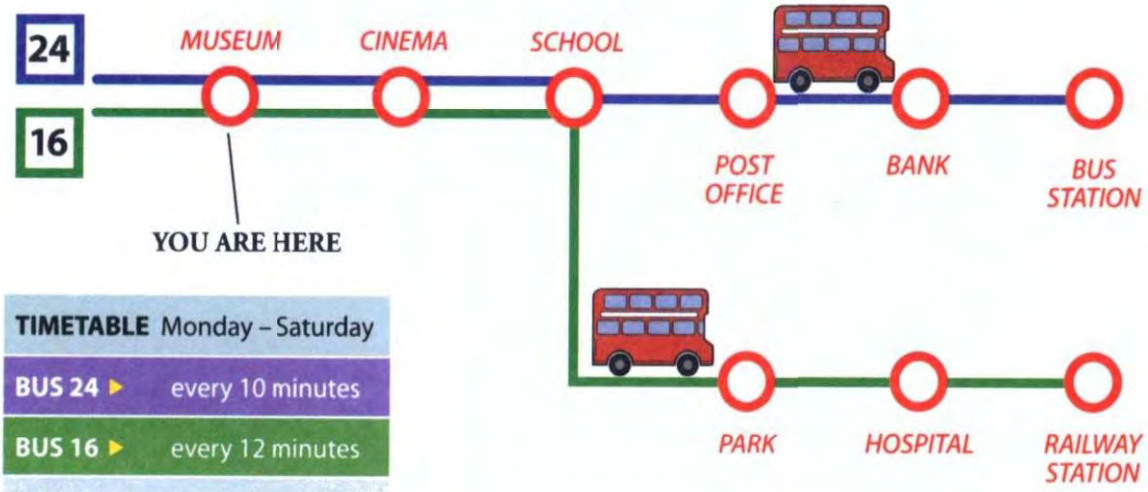
6 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 Is there a lot of traffic on motorways? If so, why? .....
.....
2 How fast can cars travel on motorways? .....
.....
3 Do you use motorways a lot? Why? / Why not? .....
.....
4 Do you drive on the left in your country? .....
.....
5 What time is the rush hour in the morning and evening? .....
.....
6 What was the last long journey you went on? .....

TEST YOURSELF

52 Buses

BUS ROUTES 24 and 16



TIMETABLE Monday – Saturday

BUS 24 ▸ every 10 minutes

BUS 16 ▸ every 12 minutes

3 minutes from stop to stop

Questions	Answers
Excuse me, which bus do I **get** to the park?	The 16.
Does the 24 **go** to the railway station?	No, it doesn't.
Does the 24 stop **near** the bank?	Yes, it does.
Does the 16 stop **outside** the park?	Yes, it does.
How often does the 16 **run**?	**Every** 12 minutes.
How many **stops** is it to the park?	Three.
Which is the **last stop** for the 24?	The bus station.
Where do I **get off** for the cinema?	At the **next stop**.
How long does it take to the bus station?	**It takes** about 15 minutes.

GLOSSARY

route the way you take to go somewhere. A **bus route** is the way a bus usually takes.

timetable a list of times when sth happens: ***a bus/train timetable***

excuse me We say **excuse me** when we start talking to sb we don't know, especially in the street to ask a question.

get a train, bus, etc. travel on a bus, train, etc. ALSO **take a train, bus,** etc.

go travel to a place

near the bank

outside the bank

run take passengers on a bus, train, etc.

every (12 minutes) e.g. 9.00, 9.12, 9.24, etc.

(bus) stop the place where you get on or off a bus

last stop the bus stop at the end of the route

get off leave the bus OPP **get on**

next stop the first stop after now

SPOTLIGHT *How long does it take?*

How long? = how much time? (NOT ~~*how long time*~~?)

- ***How long does it take*** *(to get) to the station?*
  - ~ ***It takes*** *about 10 minutes.*
  - ~ ***It takes a long time.***
  - ~ ***It doesn't take long.*** = It takes a short time.

1 **Match a word or phrase from group A to a word or phrase from group B to make a new phrase or sentence.**

A	▶bus ✓	get off	How long	the next	It doesn't	Excuse
B	the bus	stop	me	take long	route ✓	does it take?

▶ bus route .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

2 **Write the words in the correct order to make questions.**

▶ near / bank / stop / does / the 24 / the Does the 24 stop near the bank ?

1 post office / the 24 / does / outside / stop / the .....?

2 off / do / get / I / where / cinema / for / the .....?

3 park / the 24 / does / to / go / the .....?

4 often / run / does / the 24 / how .....?

5 which / stop / last / is / for / the 16 .....?

6 stops / many / to / how / it / railway station / is / the .....?

7 school / me / bus / which / excuse / get / I / to / do / the .....?

8 take / the / long / how / does / to / railway station / it .....?

3 **Answer the questions in Exercise 2, using the bus information on page 104. Remember, you are at the museum.**

▶ Yes, it does.

1 .....

2 .....

3 .....

4 ..... minutes.

5 .....

6 .....

7 .....

8 ..... minutes.

4 **Complete the text, using the bus map information on page 104.**

If you ▶ get a bus from the museum, there are two bus **(1)** ..... you can take: the 24 and the 16. For the 24, the first **(2)** ..... is the museum, and the **(3)** ..... stop is the cinema. The **(4)** ..... stop is the bus station, where everybody has to **(5)** ..... the bus. The 16 starts at the museum too, but it **(6)** ..... to the railway station. The **(7)** ..... tells you how often the buses **(8)** ..... . The 24 route is very frequent: it runs **(9)** ..... ten minutes. It only **(10)** ..... two or three minutes to get from the school to the park, and it stops **(11)** ..... the park. After that, it goes to the hospital. And it doesn't take **(12)** ..... – only another three or four minutes.

5 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 Is there a bus stop near your house? If so, where is it? .....

2 Which bus routes stop there? .....

3 Where do they go? .....

4 How often do they run? .....

5 Do you often get the bus? If so, where to? .....

6 How many stops is it? .....

7 How long does it take? .....

TEST YOURSELF

53 Trains

A At the station

GLOSSARY	
get/take a train	travel by train
the 12 o'clock train	= the train that leaves at 12.00
journey	an act of travelling from one place to another
fare	money that you pay to travel by train, and also by bus, taxi, etc.
a fast train	a train that goes very quickly OPP **a slow train**
railway/train station	a place where trains stop and people get on and off. People meet **at a station**.

SPOTLIGHT *last*

Last has different meanings:

1 final: *The **last** train leaves at 11.30 p.m.* (= there are no trains after 11.30 p.m.) *Marseille is the **last** stop.*

2 most recent, the one before now: *My **last** train journey was two weeks ago.*

1 Answer the questions.

▶ What's another verb for *get a train*? take a train

1 What's the opposite of *a slow train*? .....

2 What's the opposite of *get on the train*? .....

3 What do you call the money you pay to travel by train? .....

4 What's another way of saying *the train that leaves at 7*? .....

5 What do you sit on in a train? .....

6 Where do you get a train? .....

7 Where do you look for the train times? .....

8 What's another word for a *coach* on a train? .....

2 Complete the sentences.

▶ We can get the 7.45 train.

1 How much was the train .....?

2 Our seats are in the second ..... .

3 I'm sorry I'm late. I ..... the train.

4 We can ..... a train from Zug to Bern.

5 The ..... train is just after midnight.

6 Quickly, ... the train before it goes.

7 We ..... for the train in the café.

8 Look at the ..... for a later train.

9 They had to wait ..... the last train.

10 Don't take the 7.15 – that's a ..... train.

11 It's long train ..... from Rome to Paris.

TEST YOURSELF

B Buying a ticket

It's now 9.30. A **passenger** is talking to someone at the **ticket office** in the station.

Passenger A **return** to Cardiff, please.
Ticket office That's £21.40.
*(The passenger takes the **ticket**.)*
Passenger Thank you … when's the **next** train?
Ticket office There's one that **leaves** at 10.07.
Passenger OK. Do I have to **change**?
Ticket office No, it's **direct**.
Passenger That's good. And when does it **get to** Cardiff?
Ticket office 10.56.
Passenger Right. And which **platform** is it?
Ticket office Platform 6, **over there**.
Passenger OK. Thanks a lot.

GLOSSARY

passenger	a person travelling or going to travel in a train, bus, etc.
ticket office	the place where you buy tickets at a station
return (ticket)	a ticket to travel from a place and back again OPP **single** one way only
next	The **next** train is the first one after now.
leave	go away from a place or person OPP **get to / arrive at** (Oxford, the station, etc.)
change (trains)	get off one train and get on another
direct	A journey is **direct** if you don't need to change trains.
platform	the part of the station where you get on and off the train
over there	*(see picture)* OPP **over here** a place or position near you

SPOTLIGHT *book/reserve something*

If you **book/reserve a seat**, you buy a train ticket days or weeks before you travel, with a seat number on the ticket. For a hotel, you can **book/reserve a room**, and in a restaurant you can **book/reserve a table**.

3 **Complete the sentences using words from the box.**

direct London office change train is it ✓ there return passengers seat

▶ Which platform is it?
1 Can I book a _____?
2 Do I have to _____?
3 Do you want a single or _____?
4 Is the train _____?
5 Were there many _____?
6 When do we get to _____?
7 Where's the ticket _____?
8 When's the next _____?
9 The ticket office is over _____.

4 **Look at the timetable and complete the text.**

Platform	Cheltenham	Kemble	London Paddington
2	dep 8.35	9.08	
		9.22	arr 10.45

I'm going from Cheltenham to London Paddington next month. There isn't a ▶ direct train around 8.30, so I have to **(1)**_____ at Kemble. The train **(2)**_____ Cheltenham at 8.35 from **(3)**_____ 2, and it **(4)**_____ to Kemble at 9.08. Then I have to **(5)**_____ the 9.22, which gets **(6)**_____ London Paddington at 10.45. A **(7)**_____ costs £22, but if I want to come back the same day, I'll get a **(8)**_____. I'll probably **(9)**_____ my seat because it will be very busy at that time in the morning.

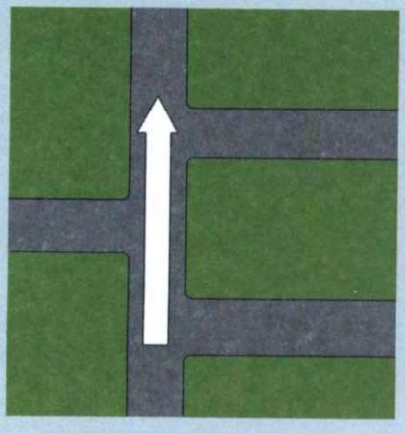
5 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 When was your last train journey? _____
2 Was it a single or a return? _____
3 Where did you go, and why? _____
4 Can you remember the train fare? _____
5 Did you book a seat before you travelled? _____
6 Was it direct, or did you have to change trains? _____

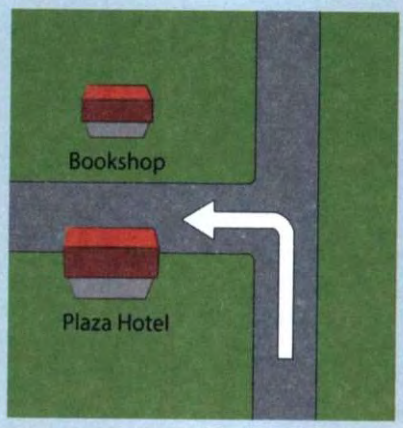
TEST YOURSELF

54 Directions

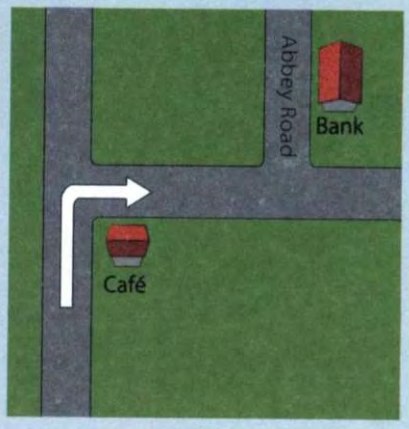
GLOSSARY	
directions	words that tell you how to get to a place
excuse me	When you want to talk to sb you don't know, especially in the street, it is polite to say **Excuse me**.
near	not far away, close to sb or sth
nearest	the first one from where you are
way	a road that you must take to get to a place



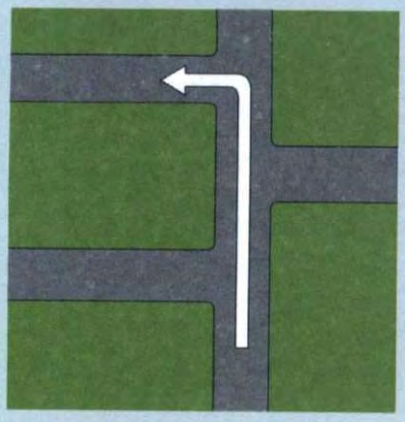
Go straight on. OR **Keep going.** It's about ten minutes.



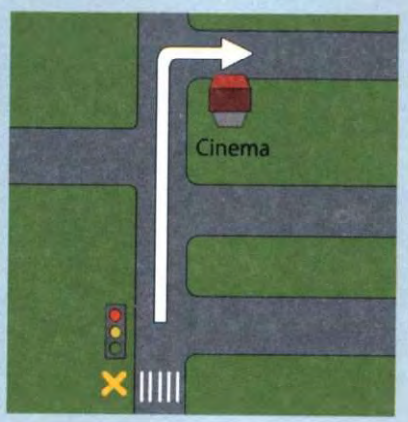
Go along here and **turn left.** The bookshop is **opposite** the Plaza Hotel.



Turn right at the café, then **left into** Abbey Road, and the bank is **on your right.**



Go along here and **take the second turning on the left.**



OK. **Cross** the road at the **traffic lights**, then go straight on and it's the **third turning on the right.** There's a cinema **on the corner.**

1 Cross out one word in each sentence.

▶ Turn right into ~~the~~ Duke Street.
1 The bookshop is opposite of the hotel.
2 Go straight on and keep to going.
3 Is there a cinema near from here?
4 It's on your left side.
5 Turn to left and go straight on.
6 It's the third road turning on the right.
7 Where's the most nearest post office?

2 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ here / there D
1 cross / corner .....
2 third / turning .....
3 second / opposite .....
▶ here / near S
4 straight / way .....
5 right / opposite .....
6 there / thanks .....

3 Make sentences from the words.

▶ turn / and / go / right / here / along Go along here and turn right.
1 excuse / I / get / do / museum / the / me / how / to .....?
2 here / left / along / and / turn / go .....
3 post office / me / near / there / is / a / excuse / here .....?
4 the / turning / it's / right / on / the / third .....
5 way / the / excuse / to / know / me / do / station / the / you .....?
6 traffic / the / lights / road / at / the / cross .....

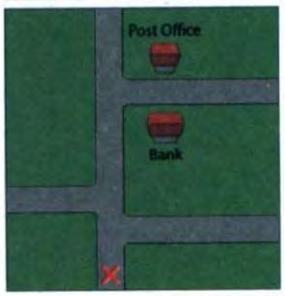
4 Complete the phrases with a single word.

▶ turn left (OR right)
1 Take the second _____.
2 Thanks very _____.
3 It's on the _____.
4 Excuse _____.
5 Cross the _____.
6 Keep _____.
7 Go straight _____.
8 Go along _____.
9 I want to go to the bank. Do you know the _____?
10 Turn left at the traffic _____.

5 Complete the dialogues. Use the maps to help you.

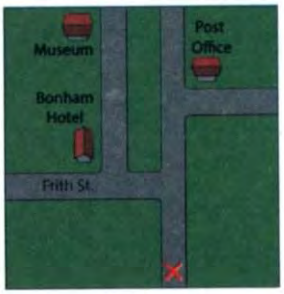
1 A Excuse ▶ me _____. How do I **(1)** _____ to the cinema from here?
B OK. Go **(2)** _____ on, and it's the second … no, the third **(3)** _____ on the **(4)** _____.
A Thanks very **(5)** _____.
B That's OK, no **(6)** _____.

2 A **(1)** _____ me. Is there a post office **(2)** _____ here?
B Yes. Go **(3)** _____ here and **(4)** _____ the second **(5)** _____ on the **(6)** _____. The post office is **(7)** _____ the bank.
A **(8)** _____ very much.
B **(9)** _____ OK. No problem.



6 Look at the map. Give directions.

1 A Excuse me. Do you know the way to the Bonham Hotel?
YOU Yes. Go straight on, then _____.
2 A Excuse me. How do I get to the museum?
YOU _____.
3 A Excuse me. Is there a post office near here?
YOU _____.



TEST YOURSELF

55 Signs and notices

GLOSSARY

sign	a small piece of writing or a picture that tells you sth
notice	a piece of writing that tells you sth, usually information
closed	not open SYN **shut**
toilet	(*see picture*)
exit	a way to go out of a building SYN **way out**
sale	a time when a shop sells things for less money than usual
keep left	stay on the left ALSO **keep right**
out of order	broken; not working correctly
no parking	= do not leave your car here
danger	the possibility that sth bad may happen
entrance	a way to go into a building **enter** *v*
feed	give food to sb or sth
no vacancies	In a hotel window, **no vacancies** means that the hotel is full.
queue	wait in a line of people
mind	be careful of sb or sth: ***mind*** *the step*; ***mind*** *your head* (above a low door)
gap	the space between two things (here, the space between a train and the platform)
keep off (the grass)	do no go on (the grass)

SPOTLIGHT *allow* and *let*

If you **allow** somebody to do something, you say that they can do something SYN **let**.

- *My parents **allow me to go** on holiday with friends.*
- *My parents **let me go** on holiday with friends.*

Allow is often used in the negative.

- *Smoking **is not allowed*** = no smoking.

In spoken English, you can say.

- *You **aren't allowed to** smoke in cinemas.* (NOT ~~*It's not allowed to smoke in cinemas.*~~)

1 Match 1–9 with a–j.

▶ NO SMOKING ...g...
1 No parking .....
2 Exit .....
3 Please queue here .....
4 OUT OF ORDER .....
5 Mind the gap .....
6 SALE .....
7 Entrance .....
8 No vacancies .....
9 DANGER .....

a The hotel is full.
b It's broken.
c It's not safe here.
d You can go in here.
e Everything is cheaper at the moment.
f You can't leave your car here.
g Do not smoke here. ✓
h This is the way out.
i Be careful when you get off the train.
j Wait in a line here.

2 Where can you see these signs? Circle the correct answer.

▶ Keep left: *in the underground* / *in a supermarket*
1 No Parking: *in a road* / *in a shop*
2 Toilets: *in a restaurant* / *in a kitchen*
3 Entrance: *in a school* / *in a house*
4 SALE: *in a shop window* / *in a restaurant*
5 OUT OF ORDER: *on a menu* / *on a drinks machine*
6 No vacancies: *on a bridge* / *in a hotel window*
7 DANGER: *near the sea* / *near a shopping centre*
8 Please queue this side: *in a bank* / *on a telephone*

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ It clearly says no ...parking... in front of the garage doors.
1 There are NO SMOKING ..... everywhere on the underground.
2 Did you read that ..... ? It said, dogs are not allowed on the beach.
3 There was a big sign for a ..... in the window of that clothes shop.
4 The notice says that you aren't ..... to walk on the grass.
5 It said CLOSED on the door, but the sales assistant ..... me go in and buy something.
6 You have to mind the ..... when you get off the train.
7 I'm afraid the shop is ..... for lunch at the moment. It doesn't ..... again until 2.30.
8 The sign says: 'Don't ..... the ducks'. Bread is bad for them.
9 ..... the step when you go out of the door.
10 We found the ..... for women, but we couldn't find one for men.

4 Complete the dialogues.

▶ Can we go up on the right side? ~ No, the sign says ...keep left...
1 Can I leave my car here? ~ No, it says .....
2 Can we go out here? ~ No, it says .....
3 Can I have a cigarette? ~ No, the sign says .....
4 Can we walk across the park here? ~ No, look, the sign says .....
5 Can we use the machine over there? ~ No, it says .....
6 Can we give this bread to the monkeys? ~ No, the sign says .....
7 Can we take the dog in the park? ~ No, it says that dogs aren't .....
8 Can we stand and wait over there? ~ No, it says, please .....
9 Is it safe to swim here? ~ No, it says .....
10 Can we walk up the left side? ~ No, it says .....

5 Complete these notices.

NO PARKING	NO	PLEASE	MIND	MIND	KEEP .....

TEST YOURSELF

56 My town

A Buildings and places in a town

castle

palace

church

museum

art gallery

market

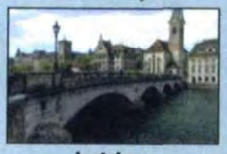
park

library

post office

tower

square


bridge

GLOSSARY

building e.g. a shop, a church, a castle (NOT ~~square~~, ~~park~~, etc.)

place a particular building, shop, town, country or area: *This is a good **place** to eat. Prague is a lovely **place** to visit. The park is a nice **place** to go for a walk.*

1 **Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ place / park D

1 castle / market .....
2 square / park .....
3 tower / post office .....
4 library / bridge .....
5 palace / bridge .....
6 church / museum .....
7 park / art gallery .....
8 church / bridge .....
9 market / castle .....

2 **Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. More than one answer is possible.**

▶ You can see all the main town buildings in the square.
1 You can see pictures and paintings in an .....
2 You can buy fruit and vegetables at a .....
3 You can read and study in a .....
4 You can learn about how people lived in the past in a .....
5 Children enjoy playing in the .....
6 You can see the city below from the top of the .....
7 You can buy stamps at the .....
8 The best place to see the river is if you stand on the .....
9 Some people get married in a .....
10 Churches, libraries and post offices are different kinds of .....
11 Squares, bridges and parks are different ..... in a town.

3 ABOUT YOU **Are the sentences true for you? If not, write true sentences about where you live, or tell another student.**

▶ There are no bridges where I live. False. There are three bridges in my town.
1 There is one post office where I live. .....
2 There's a good library and I often go there. .....
3 There's an art gallery and a museum. .....
4 There are a lot of parks where I live. .....
5 The buildings are all very old. .....
6 There's a market where I live every day. .....
7 There's a big square where people sit. .....
8 It's a terrible place to live. .....

TEST YOURSELF

B Describing a town

Word	Example	Meaning
opinion	*What's your **opinion of** the new bridge?* *~ I think it's wonderful.* ***In my opinion**, it's too big.*	Your **opinion** is what you think about something. SYN **view**
busy	*It's **busy** in the summer when the tourists arrive.*	If a place is **busy**, it is full of people, cars, activity, etc. OPP **quiet**
crowded	*The bars get very **crowded** at night.*	full of people or too full of people **crowd (of people)** *n*
safe	*It's **safe** during the day, but can be **dangerous** at night.*	If a town is **safe**, there is not much crime there. OPP **dangerous**
dirty	*Some of the old buildings are very **dirty**.*	OPP **clean**
pollution	*There's a lot of **pollution** because of all the industry.*	dirty and dangerous air, gas, water, etc.
there's a lot to do **there's lots to do**	***There's a lot to do** in the evening – clubs, cinemas, and so on.*	= there are many activities and places to visit OPP **there's nothing to do**
noise	*There's too much **noise** at night.* *It's impossible to sleep.*	something that you can hear that is often loud and not nice **noisy** *adj* OPP **quiet**

4 **Underline the correct word.**

▶ The trains are usually ***crowded*** / ***crowd*** when people are going to work.

1 It's ***noise*** / ***noisy*** down by the station.

2 There's ***lots*** / ***lot*** to do in the city.

3 What's your ***view*** / ***think*** of the town?

4 In my ***opinion*** / ***idea***, it's quite safe.

5 Is your town a ***dangerous*** / ***safe*** place to live?
~ Yes, there isn't much crime.

6 It's a ***dirty*** / ***busy*** place – there's so much paper on the streets.

7 ***It's*** / ***There's*** nothing to do in the village.

8 What do you think about the ***noise*** / ***pollution*** in the river?

5 **Do the speakers like the places they're talking about? Tick (✓) *yes* or *no*.**

	YES	NO
▶ 'The streets are very dirty.'	☐	☑
1 'I think there's a lot of pollution, don't you?'	☐	☐
2 'There's lots to do during the day.'	☐	☐
3 'I always feel safe at night.'	☐	☐
4 'It's always very crowded at the weekends.'	☐	☐
5 'There's nothing to do at night.'	☐	☐
6 'It's so clean on the coast.'	☐	☐
7 'There's very little noise at night.'	☐	☐
8 'It's a really dangerous city.'	☐	☐

6 **Complete the dialogue.**

A What's your ▶ view of Walton?

B Well, in my **(1)** _____, it's a great place to live and work.

A Yes, but is it safe?

B Well, every town or city is a bit **(2)** _____ at night, but there's a lot to **(3)** _____ here.

A And is it very **(4)** _____ in the centre?

B There aren't so many people on weekdays, but there are big **(5)** _____ of people at the weekends, mainly local people and tourists. One thing I don't like is that there is so much traffic. The air isn't very **(6)** _____ because there's a lot of **(7)** _____ from the cars.

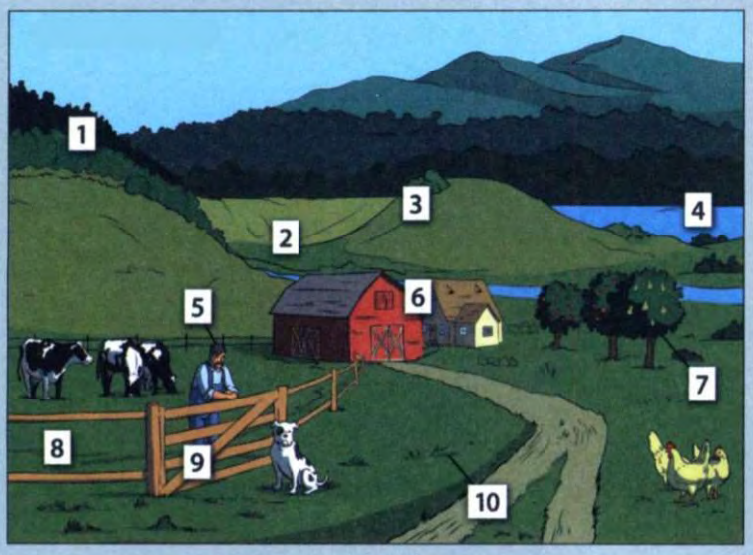
A How about outside the centre?

B Well, there are some beautiful parks, and nice, **(8)** _____ places to sit in the sun and do nothing.

TEST YOURSELF

57 The countryside

A On a farm



1	**wood**
2	**valley**
3	**hill**
4	**lake**
5	**farmer**
6	**farm** (the house and the fields)
7	**tree**
8	**field**
9	**gate**
10	**grass**

Jack Robson's family have been in **farming** for over a hundred years, and Jack now **owns** Eatwell **Farm**. He keeps cows and **produces** about a million litres of milk a year. He also **grows** fruit: pears and apples.

GLOSSARY

farming	managing a **farm**, or working on it
own	If you **own** sth, it is yours. The person who **owns** sth is the **owner**.
produce	make or grow sth, e.g. milk, cheese, cars
grow	Farmers **grow** potatoes, rice, fruit, etc. to sell.

1 **Circle the verbs.**

woodhavevalleyowngategrassfieldproducetreefarmerlakegrowhill

2 **Look at the picture. Are the sentences true or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ There's a lake near the trees. T

1 There is nothing in the field. .....
2 The dog's next to the gate. .....
3 The farmer owns fruit trees. .....
4 The wood is on the hill. .....
5 A dog lives on the farm. .....
6 Some of the cows are eating grass. .....
7 The owner of the farm produces milk. .....
8 There are a lot of trees near the farmer. .....
9 The farmer grows vegetables. .....
10 The lake's in the valley. .....

3 ABOUT YOU **Complete the words.**

▶ Do you live near a w o o d? — Yes, I do. There's one up the hill.

1 Do you live in a v ll y or on a h ll? .....
2 Is there a l k near your home? .....
3 Can you see any gra where you are now? .....
4 Can you see a g e where you are now? .....
5 Are there any f ds near your home? .....
6 Do you wn a dog? .....
7 Is fa g very important in your area? .....
8 What do farmers gr w or pr d e in your country? .....

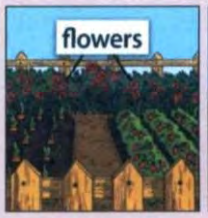
4 ABOUT YOU **Answer the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

B In a garden

WHY I LOVE **my garden** (Joel, 38)

My **garden** is so important to me because it's the place where I can be **creative**. I love being out there in the **fresh air**, enjoying the beauty of **nature**. In one **area** of my garden, I grow fruit and vegetables. My children love to get their fingers dirty in the **earth** when they **plant** our strawberries. They **water** the strawberry plants and **pick** the strawberries in summer. Another area is full of **flowers**, but I leave another part **wild** and **natural** to help birds and insects.



garden

plant *v* plant *n*

water *v*

pick *v*

GLOSSARY

creative	Someone who is **creative** has a lot of ideas or is good at making new things. **create** *v*
fresh air	clean and cool air
nature	all the plants, animals, etc. in the world, and all the things that happen in it that are not made or caused by people **natural** *adj*
area	part of a place that you use for a particular activity
wild	Plants or animals that live and grow in nature are **wild**.

5 **Match 1–6 with a–g.**

▶ Plants grow in e.
1 Don't pick the .....
2 I need fresh .....
3 Please water .....
4 I've planted .....
5 She created .....
6 I've got a wild .....

a flowers.
b some beans.
c a beautiful garden.
d area in my garden.
e earth. ✓
f air.
g the plants.

6 **Complete the sentences with words from the box.**

water nature creative pick earth garden ✓ natural area fresh

▶ Do you grow fruit and vegetables in your garden ?
1 You have to ..... plants in the summer if it doesn't rain.
2 ..... air is good for you; get as much as possible.
3 Some people like to have an ..... where they can grow vegetables.
4 You grow plants in the ..... ; then they just need water.
5 Nowadays, people like gardens which are ..... .
6 Freida's garden is full of interesting ideas – she's very ..... .
7 The strawberries in dad's garden are ready to eat. Let's go and ..... them.
8 My sister is very interested in ..... : trees, plants, animals, etc.

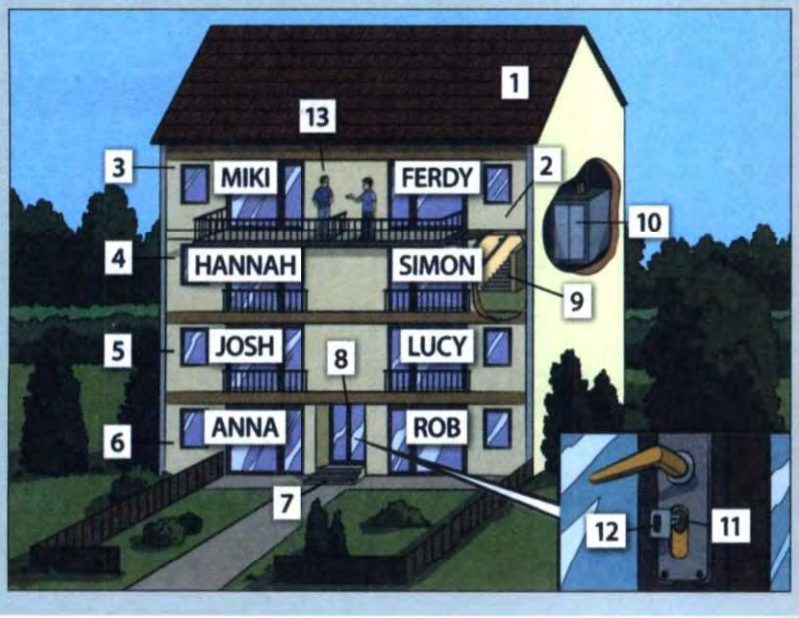
7 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 Do you ever pick flowers from a garden? .....
2 Do you ever pick fruit? .....
3 Do you grow any plants – inside or outside your home? If so, what? .....
4 How important are these things to you?
fresh air ..... the beauty of nature .....
wild flowers ..... areas in towns with plants and grasses .....

TEST YOURSELF

58 Home

A Flats



1 **roof**
2 **flat/apartment**
3 **(on) the top floor**
4 **(on) the second floor**
5 **(on) the first floor**
6 **(on) the ground floor**
7 **steps** *pl*
8 **front door**
9 **stairs** *pl*
10 **lift**
11 **lock**
12 **key** (Put the **key** in the **lock** to open the door.)
13 **neighbour** (Miki and Ferdy are **neighbours**.)

1 Look at the picture. Write your answers.

▶ Who lives on the second floor? Hannah and Simon
1 Who lives on the ground floor? .....
2 Where does Miki live? .....
3 Who is Josh's neighbour on the first floor? .....
4 Which floor does Ferdy live on? .....
5 What is above the top floor? .....
6 How many flats are there? .....
7 Where are the steps? At the .....
8 What's below the top floor? .....
9 Where does Lucy live? .....
10 How does Ferdy get up to his flat? He uses ..... or .....
11 How do you get in the front door? .....

2 Complete the words.

▶ k e y
1 l___ ___t
2 ap___ ___ ___ ___ ___nt
3 g___ ___ ___ ___d f___ ___ ___r
4 f___ ___ ___t d___ ___r
5 s___ ___ ___s
6 ne___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___r
7 r___ ___f
8 s___ ___ ___ ___s
9 t___p f___ ___ ___r

3 Complete the words. ABOUT YOU

1 Do you live in a flat/apartment? If so, which f..... do you live on? .....
2 What's on the g..... floor? .....
3 Who are your n.....? .....
4 Has the building got a l....., or just s.....? .....
5 Are there s..... to the front door? .....
6 Do you need a k..... to open the front door? .....

4 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

B Houses

BATHFORD

Modern family **home** in this quiet village with lovely **views** of the countryside. Through the **hall**[1], you come to the **living room**[2], **dining room**[3], **study**[4] and a **kitchen**[5]. **Upstairs** there are four good-sized **bedrooms**[6] and a family **bathroom**[7]. **Outside** there is a large garden and **parking** for two cars.

GLOSSARY	
modern	of the present time OPP **old**
view	what you can see from a place
upstairs	to or on a higher level in a building OPP **downstairs**
outside	not in a house or other building OPP **inside**
parking [U]	a place where you can **park** (= leave) your car

SPOTLIGHT *flat, house, home*

A **flat** is a number of rooms on one floor of a building. SYN **apartment**

A **house** is a building that is made for people to live in. It can have more than one floor.

Home is where you live (in a flat or a house).

5 **Find the end of each word.**

study | viewmodernlivingroomhallkitchenhomediningroomupstairsbedroomparkingbathroom

6 **Complete the texts.**

I live in a small ▶ modern house – it's only four years old. It's got a **(1)** ..... room, dining room, kitchen, two bedrooms and a **(2)** ..... . It's in the town centre, and from the living room I've only got a **(3)** ..... of the railway station, which is not very nice. To the left of the house, I've got a space to **(4)** ..... my car, and there's a beautiful, small garden, so I can eat **(5)** ..... when the weather is nice.

My brother's got a big house in a village near me, and from the house you can see fantastic **(6)** ..... of the countryside. Through the front door, you come into the **(7)** ..... , and from there you can see the living room, dining room, large **(8)** ..... and a **(9)** ..... , where my brother works. **(10)** ..... , there are four **(11)** ..... and two **(12)** ..... , so there's lots of space when I visit with friends. There's also enough **(13)** ..... for two cars, and a large garden. In the summer, they eat **(14)** ..... all the time, and I think that's better than being **(15)** ..... .

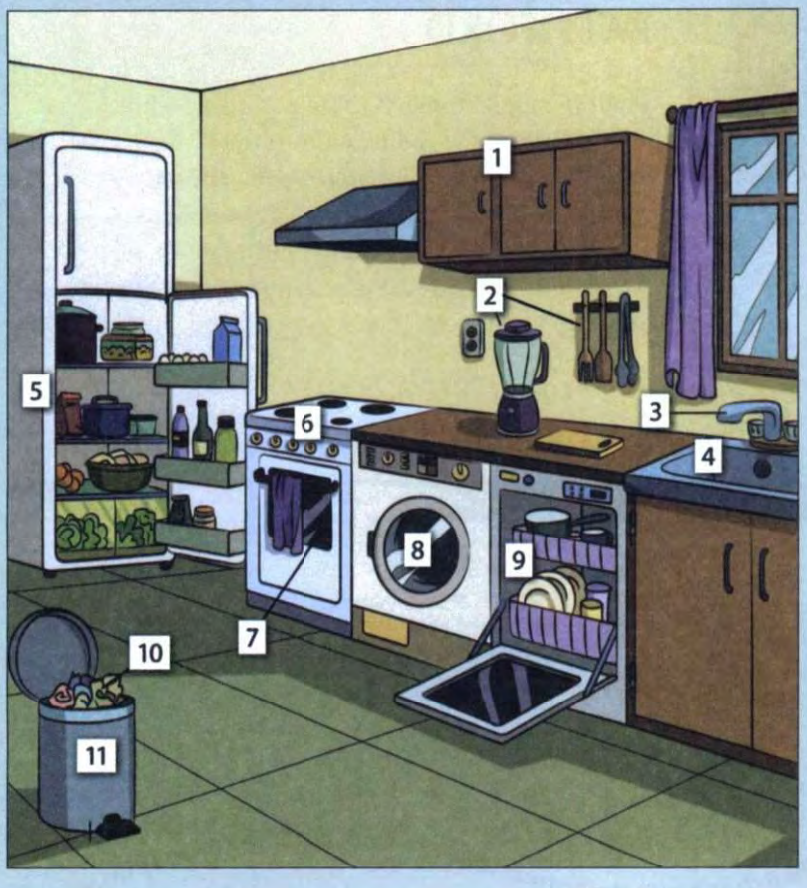
7 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 Where you live, do most houses have two floors, or more? .....
2 Do houses have the same rooms as the picture, or something different? .....
3 Do they have parking? If so, inside or outside? .....
4 Are most houses modern where you live? .....
5 Are there more houses in towns or the countryside? .....
6 Are houses more expensive if they have a good view or a garden? .....

TEST YOURSELF

59 Kitchen

A In the kitchen



1 **cupboard**
2 **(kitchen) equipment** [U]
3 **tap**
4 **sink**
5 **fridge**
6 **cooker**
7 **oven**
8 **washing machine**
9 **dishwasher**
10 **rubbish**
11 **bin**
(The bin is **full**. OPP **empty**
You need to **empty** the bin.
OPP **fill**)

SPOTLIGHT *turn something on/off*

You can **turn on/off** something electrical.
- ***Turn*** *the light* ***on***. ***Turn*** *the dishwasher* ***off***.
- ***Turn on/off*** *the washing machine.*

You can also **turn on/off** water and gas.
- ***Turn*** *the tap* ***on***. ***Turn*** the gas cooker ***off***.
(NOT ~~*Open/close the tap/gas.*~~)

1 **Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ kitchen / fridge D
1 oven / cupboard .....
2 turn on / rubbish .....
3 cooker / cupboard .....
4 tap / machine .....
5 equipment / empty .....
6 dishwasher / machine .....
7 cooker / full .....

2 **Complete the sentences using vocabulary from the picture.**

▶ Put the milk in the fridge.
1 Put those dirty clothes in the w.....
2 Put the dirty plates in the d..... or the s.....
3 Put the cups and bowls in the c.....
4 Put the empty boxes in the b.....
5 Put the meat in the o.....
6 Put the dessert in the f.....
7 Is the dishwasher f.....?
8 Can you t..... the oven ....., please?
9 Is the r..... bin full?
10 Can you e..... the bin, please?
11 Could you turn the hot water t..... off?
12 Have you got a lot of kitchen e.....?
13 The oven is part of the c.....

3 ABOUT YOU **Write down anything in the picture you have got or haven't got in your kitchen.**

▶ We've got a dishwasher.
We haven't got a washing machine in the kitchen. It's in another room.

TEST YOURSELF

B Jobs in the kitchen

Everyday tasks: I have to ...

- **do the housework** [U]
- **do the washing up**[1] [U]
  SYN **wash the dishes** [*pl*]
- **do the washing**[2] [U]
- **do the ironing**[3] [U]
- **clean**[4] the cooker and cupboards
- **prepare** and **cook**[5] meals for the family
- **look after** the children when they come home from school
- **feed**[6] the cats

GLOSSARY

everyday	normal, not special	**do the housework** [U]	do work in the house, e.g. cleaning and washing. Be careful: **housework** = cleaning the house; **homework** = work teachers give students to do after class.
task	a piece of work that you must do, often difficult and not nice	**prepare**	make something ready: ***prepare*** *the lunch/dinner*
have to (do sth)	used for saying that sb must do sth, or that sth must happen: *I **have to** cook the meals / clean the house.*	**look after sb**	do the things for sb that they need: *I **look after** my grandmother because she can't see very well.*

4 **Circle the correct word.**

▶ a daily *task* / *ironing*

1 I ***feed*** / ***prepare*** the breakfast.
2 I do my ***housework*** / ***homework*** on the bus.
3 I ***make*** / ***do*** the washing up.
4 I ***clean*** / ***feed*** the kitchen.
5 I ***look after*** / ***cook*** the dog.
6 I ***have to*** / ***have*** cook the dinner.

5 **Complete the sentences using different words**

▶ Do you do it daily? ~ Yes, it's an *everyday* task.

1 Do you give the cats their food? ~ No, I never _____ them. My mother does.
2 Do you wash the clothes? ~ No, I don't _____ the _____. My cousin does it.
3 Is it an easy job? ~ No, actually it's quite a difficult _____.
4 Do you wash the dishes? ~ Yes, my mum says I have to do the _____ _____.
5 Do you clean the house? ~ Yes, I always _____ the _____. Nobody else does it!
6 Do you do the tasks your teacher gives you? ~ Yes, I _____ my _____.
7 Do you spend a lot of time with the children? ~ Yes, I _____ _____ them all day.
8 Is it necessary for you to do all these tasks? ~ Yes, I _____ _____ do them.

6 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

WHO DOES THE MOST WORK IN YOUR HOME?

Who does the housework? _____
Who does the washing-up? _____
Who does the washing? _____
Who cooks the dinner? _____
Who cleans the kitchen? _____
Who does the ironing? _____
Who does most of the everyday tasks? Why? _____

TEST YOURSELF

60 Bedroom and bathroom

A Bedroom

Hi! I'm Kimiko and I'm living in an **international** student house where I have all I need. There's a **bed**[1] with **sheets**[2], and a small **table**[3] and **lamp**[4] next to the bed. There's a large **wardrobe**[5] for my clothes, and a desk and chair, which I use all the time when I'm studying. I've put a few **pictures**[6] on the **wall**[7] to make it feel like home. There's **space** under the bed for my **suitcase**[8] and boxes. The **furniture** is all **wooden** and quite nice.

GLOSSARY

international	**International** student accommodation has people from many different countries. **National** is about one country: ***national*** *newspapers/holidays*	**space** [U]	a place that is big enough for sth or sb to go into SYN **room** [U]: *There's **space/room** for you to sit here. There's **space/room** for three chairs here.*
a few	some, but not many	**furniture** [U]	tables, chairs, beds, etc. A bed is a **piece of furniture**.
		wooden	made of **wood** (*see picture*)

Put the words below into the correct group, according to the pronunciation of the underlined sound. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

cat ✓ tuna ✓ national ✓ picture seat Portuguese match
international suitcase table nature dictionary sheet furniture

GROUP A ▶ cat .....
GROUP B ▶ tuna .....
GROUP C ▶ national .....

2 Look at the picture. Match 1–9 with a–i.

▶	The table's	d	
1	The lamp's	.....	
2	The sheets are	.....	
3	The pictures are	.....	
4	The furniture's all	.....	
5	The wardrobe's	.....	
6	There are a few	.....	
7	The suitcase is	.....	
8	Kimiko's room has all	.....	

a	made of wood.
b	pictures above the bed.
c	under the bed.
d	next to the bed. ✓
e	the furniture she needs.
f	on the table, by the bed.
g	next to the desk.
h	on the wall.
i	on the bed.

3 Write the answers.

▶ You sleep on it: a bed
1 A place where you keep clothes: .....
2 You put these on a bed: .....
3 You put pictures on this in a room: .....
4 You put clothes in this when you travel: .....
5 You need it to read at night: .....
6 It means 'room to put something'. .....
7 A bed, a desk and a chair are all ....
8 If something is made of wood, it's .....
9 You put books or a clock by the bed on this: .....
10 It means 'connected to just one country'. .....
11 It means 'from many different countries'. .....
12 If you don't have many books, you only have ....

4 ABOUT YOU Look at Kimiko's text about her bedroom. Write a similar text about your bedroom at home.

TEST YOURSELF

B Bathroom

- You **have a wash** with **soap** [U].
- You **brush/clean** your teeth with a **toothbrush**.
- You **brush/do** your hair with a **brush/hairbrush**.
- You **have a shave** with a **razor** or an **electric razor**.
- You **put on make-up**.

SPOTLIGHT *have + noun*

Notice these phrases with **have**:

- *I **have a shower** every day.*
- *I don't **have a bath** very often.*
- *Do you **have a shave** every morning?*
- *I **have a wash** after work.*

5 **Circle the correct word.**

▶ I *wash* / *clean* my teeth after eating.

1 I *do* / *put on* my hair with *soap* / *a brush*.
2 Do you *have* / *do* a bath every day?
3 She *puts on* / *has* make-up when she goes out.
4 Do you often have a *shave* / *wash* with an electric razor?
5 I brush my teeth at the *toilet* / *washbasin*.
6 I use a *towel* / *soap* after I *have* / *make* a shower.
7 I lie down in the *shower* / *bath* for fifteen minutes after work.
8 I *brush* / *make* my hair in front of the *mirror* / *brush*.

6 **Complete the text.**

AMELIA: When I get up in the morning, I usually have a quick ▶ shower, but in winter, if I have time, I like to have a **(1)** _____. I dry myself with a **(2)** _____, and quickly get dressed. Then I look in the **(3)** _____ and do my **(4)** _____. I **(5)** _____ my teeth standing in front of the **(6)** _____, and after that, I **(7)** _____ some make-up. I'm ready to go to work.

HARRY: I look terrible in the morning when I wake up. The first thing I do is to clean my **(8)** _____, and that makes me feel better. If I don't have time for a shower, I have a quick **(9)** _____ with soap and hot water. My hair is very short so I don't have to **(10)** _____ it, but I always have a **(11)** _____ with an electric **(12)** _____.

7 **Complete the questions.**

▶ How many times a week do you have a bath or shower?
1 Do you brush your t_____ before or after breakfast?
2 How many times a day do you do your h_____?
3 How many times a day do you look in the m_____?
4 Do you carry a b_____ in your bag?
5 If you wear m_____-_____, do you p_____ it _____ every day or only sometimes?
6 If you shave, how often do you h_____ a shave? Do you use a r_____ or an e_____ r_____?

ABOUT YOU

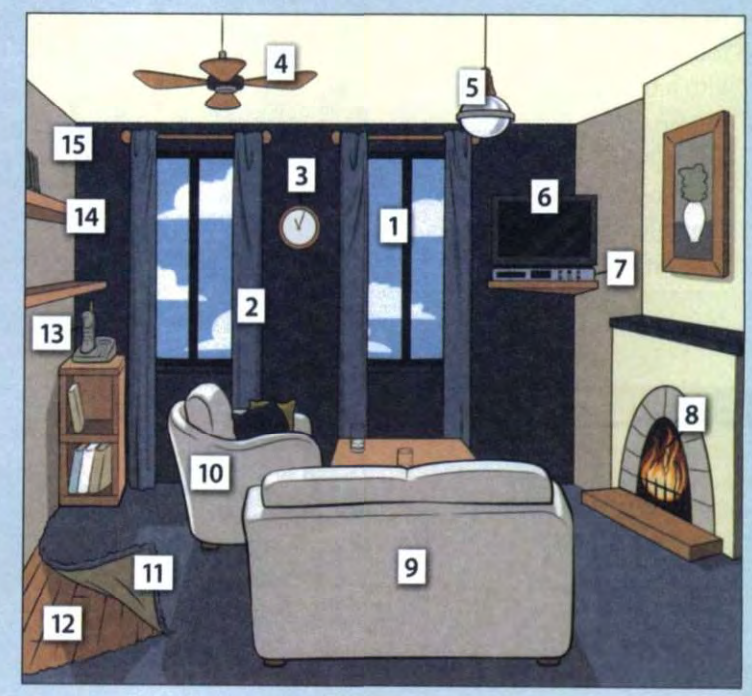
I have a shower every day.

8 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 7, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

61 Living room

1 **window**
2 **curtain**
3 **clock**
4 **fan**
5 **light**
6 **TV/television**
7 **DVD player**
8 **fire**
9 **sofa**
10 **armchair**
11 **carpet**
12 **floor**
13 **telephone/phone**
14 **shelf** (*pl* **shelves**)
15 the **corner** of the room



1 Complete the words.

▶ co r n e r

1 arm___ ___ ___ ___r
2 car___ ___t
3 f___ ___ ___r
4 li___ ___t
5 wi___ ___ ___w
6 f___ ___e
7 s___ ___a
8 sh___ ___f
9 te___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___n
10 cur___ ___ ___n
11 c___ _____k
12 te___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___e

2 Look at the picture. True or false? Write *T* or *F*.

In the living room, there is only one …

▶ DVD player T
1 window .....
2 TV .....
3 sofa .....
4 clock .....
5 armchair .....
6 telephone .....
7 fan .....
8 corner .....
9 light .....
10 curtain .....
11 floor .....
12 carpet .....
13 shelf .....
14 fire .....

3 Complete the answers.

▶ You watch this in the evening: TV/television
1 You talk to somebody on this: .....
2 You sit on this: ..... / .....
3 You close these at night: .....
4 You check the time with this: .....
5 You need this when it's hot: .....
6 You need this when it's cold: .....
7 You need this when it's dark: .....
8 You can put a clock on this: .....
9 This goes over the floor: .....
10 This is where two walls meet: .....
11 You look through this: .....

4 ABOUT YOUR HOME **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 What furniture have you got in your living room? .....
2 Which electrical things have you got in your living room? .....
3 Have you got these in your living room: a clock? a telephone? a carpet? If so, where are they? .....
.....

TEST YOURSELF

62 Adjectives with prefixes

Are you sure you have the correct answers? ~ No, I'm **uncertain** about two of them.
Are you a **lucky** person? ~ I'm **lucky** with money, but **unlucky** in love.
How's your brother these days? ~ Well, he smokes a lot – I think he's very **unhealthy**.
Did you need to buy a new car? ~ No, it was completely **unnecessary**.
Did you think the manager was being **rude**? ~ Yes, I thought he was very **impolite**.
Can you get home before six o'clock? ~ No, that's completely **impossible**.
Did you enjoy the meeting? ~ Yes, thanks. It was quite **informal** and fun.
Is 'fall' a **regular** verb? ~ No, it's **irregular**: *fall, fell, fallen*.

GLOSSARY

uncertain	not sure OPP **certain** SYNS **unsure/sure**
lucky	If you are **lucky**, good things happen to you that you cannot control. OPP **unlucky**
unhealthy	not well, often ill OPP **healthy**
unnecessary	If sth is **unnecessary**, you don't need to do it, or you don't need it. OPP **necessary**
rude	not speaking or behaving in a way that is correct for the social situation SYN **impolite** OPP **polite**: *In Britain, it is **rude/impolite** to eat with your mouth open.*

SPOTLIGHT *-in, -im, -ir, -un*

Some adjectives form opposites with prefixes *in-, im-, ir-*.
formal OPP **informal**
possible OPP **impossible** (*im-* before **p**)
regular OPP **irregular** (*ir-* before **r**)
Some other adjectives form opposites with the prefix *un-*.
certain OPP **uncertain** **healthy** OPP **unhealthy**

1 Correct the mistakes. Be careful: two answers are correct.

▶ imformal informal
1 incertain .....
2 inlucky .....
3 inregular .....
4 impossible .....
5 innecessary .....
6 inhealthy .....
7 unsure .....
8 unpolite .....

2 Circle the correct word.

▶ Can you help me? I'm *sure* / (*unsure*) what to do next.
1 People who open the door for you in a shop are very ***polite*** / ***rude***.
2 Words like ***hi*** and ***yeah*** are ***formal*** / ***informal***.
3 *Remember* is ***a regular*** / ***an irregular*** verb.
4 We had two weeks of sunny weather for our holiday, which was very ***lucky*** / ***unlucky***.
5 It was ***necessary*** / ***unnecessary*** to take a taxi because the hotel was very near the station.
6 If you don't say *thank you* for a present, people may think you are ***polite*** / ***impolite***.
7 He has to decide where to go, but at the moment he is very ***certain*** / ***uncertain***.
8 My sister watches TV all day and eats lots of cakes. She's very ***healthy*** / ***unhealthy***.

3 Complete the sentences with a suitable word. ABOUT YOU

▶ I think spelling in English is impossible.
1 Where I live, the neighbours are all very p..... .
2 I..... verbs are difficult to remember in English.
3 My English lessons are i..... and fun.
4 I'm very u..... on holiday. The weather is always terrible.
5 I'm u..... where to go for my holidays next summer. I just can't decide.
6 I think it's u..... to eat your food too quickly.
7 I think it's r..... to look at your phone when you're having a meal with people.
8 I think it's important to be clean, but it's u..... to have a shower every day.

4 ABOUT YOU **Are the sentences in Exercise 3 true for you? If not, write them so that they are true.**

▶ I think spelling in English is impossible. I think it's difficult, but not impossible!

TEST YOURSELF

63 Adjective opposites

A Common opposites 1

1 She's **asleep.**
OPP **awake**

2 The river is **wide.**
OPP **narrow**

3 The man is **weak.**
OPP **strong**

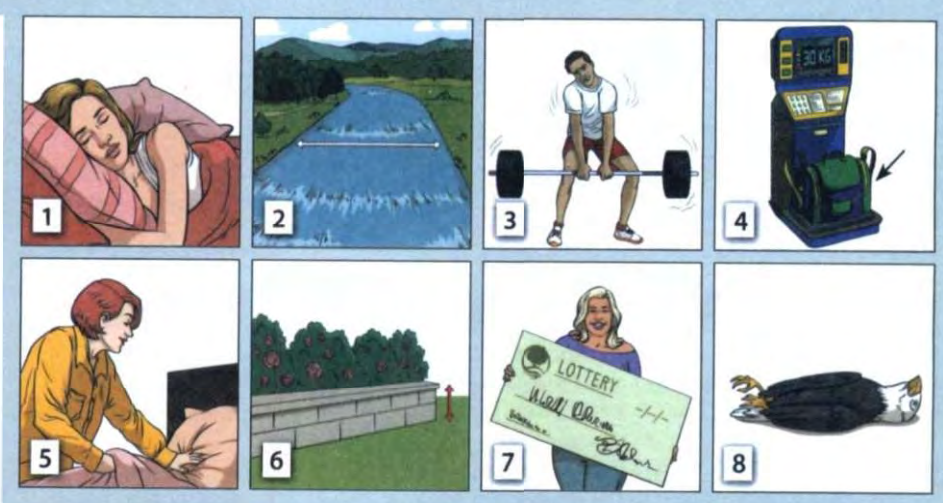
4 This is **heavy.**
OPP **light**

5 It feels **soft.**
OPP **hard**

6 It's a **low** wall.
OPP **high**

7 The woman is **rich.**
OPP **poor**

8 The bird is **dead.**
OPP **alive**



SPOTLIGHT position of adjectives

Adjectives usually go before a noun. They can also go after *be*.
- *It's a **quiet** village. The village is **quiet**.*

You can't use **alive**, **awake** or **asleep** before a noun.
- *The man is **alive**.* (NOT ~~*an alive man*~~)

1 Write *Yes* or *No*.

▶ Is a 120 kg person heavy? Yes
1 Is the River Nile narrow? .....
2 Does wood feel hard? .....
3 Is Nelson Mandela still alive? .....
4 Are mobile phones light? .....
5 Are elephants very strong? .....
6 Are you asleep at the moment? .....
7 Is America a rich country? .....
8 If you are walking, are you awake? .....
9 Are all the buildings in Dubai low? .....
10 Is rice soft before you cook it? .....

2 Write the opposite.

▶ The bed is ***hard***. soft
1 His legs are ***weak***. .....
2 The dog's ***asleep***. .....
3 They're very ***rich***. .....
4 The roof is ***high***. .....
5 The road is ***narrow***. .....
6 The cat is ***dead***. .....
7 The bag was ***heavy***. .....

3 Complete the dialogues.

▶ Is it safe to walk on this bridge? ~ Yes, it's very strong.
1 Did you sleep well? ~ No, the bed was too ..... . It was like sleeping on the floor.
2 Can Rowena walk very far? ~ No, she's still ..... after her illness.
3 Has Eric got a lot of money? ~ Yes, he's very ..... .
4 Has Kelly still got a dog? ~ No, it's ....., I'm afraid.
5 Can you see over the wall? ~ No, it's too ..... . I can't see a thing.
6 Can we carry that table to the garden? ~ Yes, it's quite ..... .
7 Can you swim across the river here? ~ Yes, it's quite ..... – that will be easy.
8 Dan's eyes are closed. ~ Yes, I think he's ..... . He said he was very tired.
9 That family lives in one room. ~ Yes, they're very ..... .
10 What a lovely little baby! ~ Yes, his skin is so lovely and ..... .

TEST YOURSELF

B Common opposites 2

OPPOSITES QUESTIONNAIRE

- Is it **common** or **unusual** for you to get a cold or flu?
- Do you prefer **traditional** houses or **modern** houses?
- Do you prefer to sleep in a **dark** room or a **light** room?
- Do you and your best friend enjoy **similar** things or **different** things?
- For you, is **social media** a **positive** thing or a **negative** thing?
- On holiday, do you prefer to have **general** plans or more **specific** plans?
- Is knowing about history **useful** or **useless** in your daily life?
- Do other people think you are **lazy** or **hardworking**?

GLOSSARY

common	If sth is **common**, it happens often, or you find it in many places: *a **common** name* OPP **unusual**
traditional	If sth is **traditional**, it is typical of things that people have done for a long time. **tradition** *n* OPP **modern**
dark	with no light, or not much light OPP **light**
similar	the same in many ways, but not completely the same OPP **different**
social media	websites, e.g. WhatsApp, Instagram, where you can communicate with people who have similar interests
positive	thinking or talking about the good parts of a situation OPP **negative**
general	not in detail, giving only the main parts of sth OPP **specific**
useful	good and helpful for doing sth OPP **useful**
lazy	A **lazy** person doesn't like working hard. OPP **hardworking**

4 **Tick (✓) the words with the main stress on the first syllable, like *narrow* and *tiny*. Put a cross (✗) for the others. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ modern ☐ prefer ☒

1 useless ☐ 3 different ☐ 5 general ☐ 7 unusual ☐ 9 tradition ☐

2 common ☐ 4 specific ☐ 6 media ☐ 8 useful ☐ 10 similar ☐

5 **True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ A useful book is one that helps you to do something. T

1 Two similar things are almost the same. .....

2 You can read easily in a light room. .....

3 The style of a traditional building is modern. .....

4 An unusual event happens a lot. .....

5 Specific instructions are clear and with a lot of detail. .....

6 A useless thing will help you. .....

7 If a type of car is common, you see it a lot. .....

8 A lazy person works very hard. .....

9 In the middle of the day, it's usually dark. .....

10 If somebody is on social media, they are online. .....

6 **Complete the dialogues.**

▶ Do the two brothers look different? ~ No, they look very similar.

1 Did you talk about anything specific? ~ No, it was a very _____ conversation.

2 Did you go to class yesterday? ~ Yes, we had a very _____ lesson on prepositions.

3 Is Paco's flat dark? ~ No, it's very _____ with lovely views of the sea.

4 Is Bythesea a common name? ~ No, it's very _____. I've never heard it.

5 Do you like modern architecture? ~ No, I prefer _____ styles.

6 Mariella seems a bit lazy to me. ~ No, that's not true. She's very _____.

7 Was the weather information helpful? ~ No, it was _____, and we got very wet.

7 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to the questions in the questionnaire, or talk to another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

64 Common adverbs

A Showing that something is important

Adverb	Example	Meaning
only	*She was **only** 17 when she got married.* (It's unusual to get married at 17.) *We can walk to the station – it's **only** five minutes.* (NOT 15 or 20.)	We use **only** to say 'no more than'.
even	*It's cold here, **even** in summer.* (In most places, it's warm in the summer.) *My older brother is 1.90 m, and my younger brother is **even** taller.*	We often use **even** before a fact that is surprising or difficult to believe, or to make (a comparative) another word stronger.
still	*After 25 years, I **still** love my job.* (I continue to love my job.) *Do they live in Paris now? ~ No, they're **still** in London.*	We use **still** to say that a fact or situation continues to be true.
especially	*We liked the towns in the south, **especially** Seville.* (Seville was the best.) *It's very hot here, **especially** in July and August.* (July and August are the hottest.)	We use **especially** to say 'more than others'.

1 **Underline the correct answer.**

▶ The food is good there, ***only*** / ***especially*** the fish.

1 He was ***only*** / ***even*** 15 when he left school.
2 I've seen the film five times and I ***even*** / ***still*** enjoy it.
3 The students are very nice, ***still*** / ***especially*** Marcel.
4 There are ***even*** / ***only*** three bridges like this in the world.
5 It was cold yesterday, but it's ***even*** / ***only*** colder today.
6 I study hard, but my English is ***still*** / ***only*** terrible.

2 **Put the word in brackets in the correct place in the sentence.**

▶ It's six kilometres to the next town. (only) It's only six kilometres to the next town.

1 He's 75 and he plays tennis. (still) .....
2 It's nice there, in the morning. (especially) .....
3 There are three students in the class. (only) .....
4 He works on Sundays. (even) .....
5 She's at university. (still) .....
6 Rio is big, but Sao Paolo is bigger. (even) .....

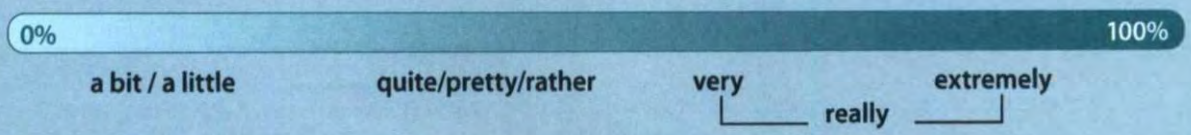
3 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ He's ninety, but he still drives a car.

1 ..... four people came to the party. It was a bit sad.
2 They have been in Singapore for ten years and they ..... like living there.
3 I love fish, ... salmon.
4 He can't drive – he's ..... 15.
5 This question isn't difficult. ..... a child could answer it.
6 She enjoyed the book, ... the first part.
7 He lives in Italy now, but he ..... speaks English most of the time.
8 The sign was difficult to read, ... with my glasses.

TEST YOURSELF

B Degree



a bit / a little	Use **a bit** or **a little** before an adjective or comparative adjective, but not before a positive adjective. (NOT ~~*a bit good*~~) *The lesson was **a bit** boring.* *It's **a little** warmer than yesterday.*
quite **pretty** *inf*	= more than *a bit*, but less than *very* *The film was **quite/pretty** interesting.* *The town is **quite/pretty** big.*
rather	= *quite* *The test was **rather** difficult.* *She was **rather** tired after the journey.* If you use **rather** with a positive adjective, you are often surprised and pleased. *The restaurant was **rather** nice.*
extremely	= a bit stronger than *very*. You can use **extremely** with adjectives, but not with verbs. *I was **extremely** tired by 6 o'clock.* *We were **extremely** busy on Saturday.*
really	= *very, extremely* You can use **really** with adjectives and verbs. *The restaurant was **really** good.* *The weather was **really** terrible.* *We were **really** tired.* *I **really** liked the film.*

4 **Circle the correct answers. Sometimes both answers are correct.**

▶ It was (*quite*) / ***a bit*** interesting.

1 She's ***pretty*** / ***quite*** untidy.
2 Her new shoes are ***really*** / ***a bit*** wonderful.
3 My sister is ***a bit*** / ***a little*** untidy.
4 I ***really*** / ***extremely*** enjoyed the meal.
5 She was ***really*** / ***extremely*** friendly.
6 Tina's flat is ***a bit*** / ***quite*** nice.
7 The restaurant was ***rather*** / ***really*** good.
8 The hotel's ***a bit*** / ***really*** comfortable.

5 **Rewrite the sentences using an adverb with a similar meaning to the underlined words.**

▶ The film was *a bit* boring. The film was **a little** boring.

1 He was *very* good. .....
2 The holiday was *quite* interesting. .....
3 She's *a little* unfriendly. .....
4 The kitchen was *extremely* clean. .....
5 The room was *a bit* small. .....
6 Her new boyfriend is *rather* unfriendly. .....
7 They're *really* nice people. .....
8 The exam results were *quite* surprising. .....

6 **Complete the sentences in a suitable way.**

▶ I went to bed because I was extremely tired .

1 The food was excellent, but the service was rather ..... .
2 I like Maria's new boyfriend. He's extremely ..... .
3 I went to see a concert last night and I really ..... .
4 Nobody talked to me at the party, so I felt pretty ..... .
5 I thought the lesson might be boring, but in fact it was rather ..... .
6 We waited thirty minutes for the bus, so we arrived a bit ..... .
7 The dog looked horrible, but in fact it was quite ..... .
8 People think he's hardworking, but I know he's really ..... .

TEST YOURSELF

65 Adverbs of manner

CLASS 9 Monday 3.30 – 5.30

- Cora always does her homework very **carefully**. ✓
- Juno is clever and answers most questions **correctly**. ✓
- Eliane speaks very **clearly**. ✓
- Rocco speaks too **fast**; he needs to speak more **slowly**. ✓
- Lucas speaks too **loudly**, but Ines speaks too **quietly**. ✓
- Jan speaks English very **well**, but he writes **badly**. ✓
- Ewa always arrives **late** but just smiles **happily**. ✓
- Mahmud tries very **hard**, but he thinks the lessons are **difficult**. ✓
- Layla passes all her exams very **easily**. ✓

SPOTLIGHT adverbs of manner

Adverbs of **manner** are used with verbs to tell you more about the way you do something, or the way that something happens. They often end in *-ly*.
sad *adj* / **sadly** *adv*; **quiet** *adj* / **quietly** *adv*; **careful** *adj* / **carefully** *adv*

- *He opened the door **quietly**.* ▪ *Shona looked at me **sadly**.*

A few adverbs are irregular.
fast *adj* / **fast** *adv*; **late** *adj* / **late** *adv*; **hard** *adj* / **hard** *adv*; **good** *adj* / **well** *adv*

Adjectives ending in *-y* have adverbs ending in *-ily*.
happy / happily; easy / easily; angry / angrily

GLOSSARY

manner	the way you do sth or the way that sth happens: *Jacques has a friendly **manner**.* = He acts in a friendly way.
clearly	in a way that is easy to hear, understand or see
fast *adv*	quickly: *He drives **fast**.* **fast** *adj*: *She has a **fast** car.*
late *adv*	after the correct time **late** *adj* OPP **early**
hard *adv*	a lot: *work/try **hard*** **hard** *adj* difficult: *The test was **hard**.*

1 Write the adverb form.

▶ careful carefully

1 slow	.....	5 clear	.....	9 easy	.....
2 bad	.....	6 happy	.....	10 quiet	.....
3 angry	.....	7 good	.....	11 correct	.....
4 late	.....	8 hard	.....	12 fast	.....

2 Rewrite the sentence using the verb in CAPITALS and an adverb.

▶ Jesse is bad at playing football. PLAY Jesse plays football badly.

1 I have very clear writing. WRITE I .....
2 My cousin is a good singer. SING My .....
3 My boss is a hard worker. WORK My .....
4 Lola is a careful driver. DRIVE Lola .....
5 Robina's answers to the questions were correct. ANSWER Robina .....
6 Julio's pronunciation of words isn't clear. PRONOUNCE Julio .....
7 The exercise was easy for Miriam. DO Miriam .....
8 Amina is very fast at doing the work. WORK Amina .....
9 My little boy is a slow reader. READ My .....
10 She was angry when she spoke to Sam. SPEAK She .....

3 Complete the questions.

ABOUT YOU

▶ Do you speak English slowly or fast ?
1 Do you arrive for work/classes at the right time or ..... ?
2 Do people in your family speak quietly or ..... ?
3 Does your teacher speak ..... so that you can understand?
4 Do you drive well or ..... ?
5 Do you think ..... about what you want to say in English?
6 Do you relax in class, or do you work ..... ?

4 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

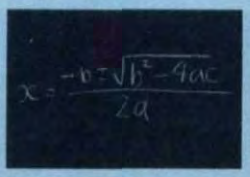
66 School subjects

SCIENCE SUBJECTS

chemistry

physics

biology


maths

computer science

ARTS SUBJECTS

geography

history

literature

languages

art

PE

design and technology

GLOSSARY

subject	*Physics, history,* etc. are school **subjects**.
maths	short for **mathematics**
PE	sport and exercise as a school subject, short for **physical education**
design	(sounds like *fine*) pictures or plans that show how to make sth
technology	the science or information about how things work

SPOTLIGHT *be good at something*

If you are **good at something**, you do it well. If you are **bad at** it, you do it very badly. SYN **terrible at sth**

- ***I'm (quite) good at*** *languages.*
- ***I'm terrible at*** *maths.*

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ art / maths D
1 design / physics .....
2 biology / science .....
3 biology / geography .....
4 history / story .....
5 chemistry / technology .....
6 computer / language .....
7 literature / picture .....

2 Write the name of a school subject or subjects.

▶ algebra, geometry maths
1 exercises in the gym .....
2 Shakespeare, Tolstoy .....
3 wars in the past .....
4 rivers in Africa .....
5 Picasso, Da Vinci .....
6 Japanese, Arabic .....
7 CO_2, H_2O .....
8 Apple and Google .....
9 parts of a flower or animal .....
10 create a new product .....
11 What is light? .....
12 History and geography are .....
13 Maths and chemistry are .....

3 ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences about yourself using the right verb form. If possible, tell another student.

1 At school, ***I'm / I was*** good at .....
2 ***I'm / I was*** also quite good at .....
3 ***I'm / I was*** terrible at .....
4 ***I don't / didn't*** study .....
5 The subject I ***like / liked*** most ***is / was*** .....
6 And the subject I ***hate / hated*** most ***is / was*** .....

TEST YOURSELF

67 The education system

A The education system

uniform

In the **education system** in England and Wales, you **start school at the age of** four or five and **continue up to** the age of 16. At 16, you can **leave school**, and then you must **either get a job** with **training**, **or** do some training in a **college** for a particular job, e.g. working in the hotel business. The other **option** is to **stay at school** for two more years. After that, you can get a job or go to university.

GLOSSARY

education	learning or teaching sb at a school or college
system	a group of things or parts that work together
uniform	special clothes that children wear at school
start school	go to a school for the first time
at (the age of) five	= when you are five (years old)
continue	not stop happening or doing sth SYN **carry on**
up to	until; as far as
leave school	stop going to school
job	the work that you do for money **get a job** find a job
training	more work or practice to get ready for a job or sport
college	a place where you can go to study after you leave school
option	a thing you can choose; a possibility
stay at school	= continue at school

SPOTLIGHT *either ... or ...*

We use **or** to show there are two things/people you can choose, and we use **either ... or ...** to make this contrast stronger.

- *After 16, you can **either** do arts subjects **or** science subjects.*
- ***Either** you go to university, **or** you get a job.*

1 **Put the story in order.**

a	He then went to a local college	☐
b	He carried on up to the age of 16,	☐
c	When Tom was five,	▶ 1
d	and finally he got a job in a local hairdresser's,	☐
e	when he decided to leave school.	☐
f	where he trained to become a hairdresser,	☐
g	he started school.	☐

2 **Complete the text with words from the glossary.**

▶ At ..... the age of 16, French students can **(1)** ..... school and **(2)** ..... a job, but around 65% **(3)** ..... at school for another two years. They then have two **(4)** .....: they can **(5)** ..... go to a *lycée général* **(6)** ..... go to a *lycée technique* or *lycée professionnel*. At the *lycée général*, many students go on to university. At the other types of school, students do some **(7)** ..... in order to prepare for a particular job.

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY **Complete the questions, but don't write answers.** ABOUT YOU

▶	At what age do children start ..... school?	.....
1	Do they usually wear a ..... ?	.....
2	At what age can they ..... school?	.....
3	At this age, do they ..... a job or do more ..... ?	.....
4	Do many students ..... at school after 16?	.....
5	What can they do when they leave school ..... 18?	.....
6	What did you do? OR What are you going to do?	.....

4 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY **Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

B Exams

When I was at school, I went to all the **lessons** and **did** my **homework**, but I didn't **work** very **hard**. So, when I **took exams** at 16, my **results** weren't fantastic. I **passed** six, which was good, but I **failed** physics. It was my **worst** result– I got a **grade** F, which was terrible. After that, I went to a college where I worked hard and **did well**. I passed all my exams at 18 and went to university. That's where I am now.

GLOSSARY

lesson	a period of time (e.g. 45 minutes) in school when you learn/teach
do homework [U]	do work the teacher has given you at home (NOT ~~homeworks~~)
work hard	work a lot
result	the grade or mark you get in an exam, e.g. A or 9/10
(the) worst	superlative of **bad** OPP **(the) best** superlative of **good**
grade	You **get a grade**, e.g. A or B, or a **mark**, e.g. 15/20, in a test or an exam.
do well	be good at sth and get better at it OPP **do badly**

SPOTLIGHT *exams*

Exam is short for **examination**. It's an important test at the end of a period of study. We say:

take/do an exam sit down and write your answers in the exam

pass an exam take an exam and do well, e.g. grade A / a mark of 85%

fail an exam take an exam and do badly, e.g. grade D / a mark of 35%

5 **Look at Rafael's exam results on the right and answer the questions.**

▶ How many exams did he take? 7

1 Did he take an exam in chemistry? .....

2 How many did he pass? .....

3 How many did he fail? .....

4 What was his best grade? .....

5 What was his worst grade? .....

6 What did he get in English? .....

EXAM	GRADE A, B, C = pass / D, E = fail
French	B
IT	C
Geography	D
Biology	A
English	C
History	B
Maths	E

6 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ Six out of ten isn't a very good mark.

1 I have to ..... an English exam tomorrow.

2 Did you ..... your homework last night?

3 Paula did very ..... in her German exam; she got a good ..... .

4 I got my exam ..... yesterday. I passed all of them.

5 Andre is very unhappy at the moment. He's doing ..... at school, and last week he ..... an important maths exam.

6 Maths is my ..... subject. I'm terrible at it.

7 ABOUT YOU **Complete the sentences about yourself using the right verb form, then write answers to the questions, or ask another student.**

1 How long ***are / were*** your lessons at school? .....

2 ***Do / Did*** you work hard at school most of the time? .....

3 At what age ***do / did*** you take important exams? .....

4 How many ***did / will*** you take? .....

5 ***Did / Will*** you pass all of them? .....

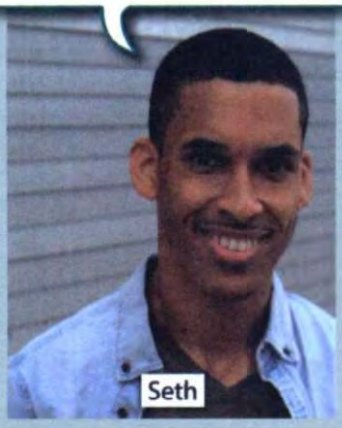
6 What's your best subject? .....

TEST YOURSELF

68 University

A A university degree

I started university two years ago when I was nineteen, and I'm **doing a degree in** Spanish and French. The **course lasts** four years, and there are three **terms** a year. I work in the **library** a lot because I have to **write** lots of **essays**. I also have to take exams, and last term I failed one and had to take it **again**. I got the result two weeks ago – **fortunately** I passed this time. When I've got my degree, I want to **do research**.


Seth

GLOSSARY

do a degree (in sth)	study a subject or subjects at university. You **do a degree in** a subject.
course	a number of classes on a subject, e.g. an English **course**
term	a period of study, usually about ten weeks
library	a place where you can read and borrow books (Be careful: a **bookshop** is a place where you buy books.)
write an essay	do a piece of writing on a subject
again	one more time
fortunately	We say **fortunately** when we start talking about sth good. OPP **unfortunately**
do research	study a subject for a long time (usually after a first degree) to learn new information about it

SPOTLIGHT *How long does it last? / How long does it take?*

Last means 'continue for a period of time'.
- *A university term **lasts** ten weeks.*
- *My French course **lasts** a year.*

We use **take** (often with *it*) to talk about how long we need to do something.
- ***It took me** three years to do my research.*
- ***He took** two days to write the essay. **It took him** two days to write the essay.*

1 Circle the correct word.

▶ She did an English *course* / *term*.
1 I want to ***do*** / ***make*** a degree in maths.
2 A ***term*** / ***degree*** lasts about ten weeks.
3 I have to ***learn*** / ***write*** essays.
4 Most lessons ***take*** / ***last*** an hour.
5 I study a lot in the ***library*** / ***bookshop***.
6 I want to ***do*** / ***make*** some research.
7 ***Fortunately*** / ***Unfortunately***, I failed the exam.
8 ***Before*** / ***After*** a degree, some people do research.
9 It ***takes*** / ***lasts*** a long time to do a degree.

2 Complete the dialogues.

▶ How long does the term last ? ~ About twelve weeks.
1 Are you doing a ..... ? ~ Yes, ... Medicine.
2 Are you planning to do ..... ? ~ Yes, when I've got my first degree.
3 Did he get his exam results? ~ Yes, ... he passed.
4 Can he take the exam ..... if he fails the first time? ~ Yes, in September.
5 Did she have to write an ..... ? ~ Yes, and it ..... her a long time.
6 How long does the course ..... ? ~ It's only one term.
7 Did you buy that new dictionary? ~ Yes, I got it in the college ..... .
8 Did Miriam pass all her exams? ~ No, ... she failed two subjects.

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 How long do you need to study for a degree in Medicine? .....
2 What percentage of young people do a degree? .....
3 Do many students go on and do research? .....
4 How long does a university term last? .....
5 If you fail your exams, can you always take them again? .....

TEST YOURSELF

B University subjects and people

	Degree Subject	Person
1	medicine	a doctor
2	architecture	an architect
3	engineering	an engineer
4	law	a lawyer
5	business studies	a businessman/woman
6	journalism	a journalist OR a reporter
7	computer science	e.g. software designer, IT manager

SPOTLIGHT *teacher, lecturer, professor*

A **teacher** is a person who teaches for a job, usually in a school (NOT ~~*a professor*~~). In the UK, a person who teaches in a university is a **lecturer**, and they give **lectures** (NOT ~~*lessons*~~). A **professor** in a university is a lecturer of the highest level.

4 **Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ design / medicine D
1 law / four .....
2 computer / doctor .....
3 business / journalist .....
4 computer / woman .....
5 lawyer / boy .....
6 science / design .....
7 teacher / architect .....

5 **Complete the sentences. Use the word on the right to help you.**

▶ He always wanted to be a teacher. TEACHING
1 She wants to be a ..... . MEDICINE
2 When did Tom become an ..... ? ENGINEERING
3 Emily is studying to become an ..... . ARCHITECTURE
4 My sister is a ..... . LAW
5 Edward now works as a ..... . LECTURE
6 After his degree he became a software ..... . DESIGN
7 Is it difficult to become a ..... ? JOURNALISM
8 I knew he'd become a ..... . BUSINESS STUDIES

6 **Complete the words in the sentences.**

▶ He wants to be a hospital doctor.
1 My uncle is a university p..... .
2 It's not easy to get a place to study l..... .
3 My friend got a job as an IT m..... .
4 He's a j..... for a national paper.
5 I don't go to all my university l..... .
6 My degree was in b..... studies.
7 I studied journalism to be a r..... .
8 I enjoyed my e..... degree.
9 She wants to do computer s..... .
10 She's a b..... now. She works for a large company.

7 ABOUT YOU **Take six jobs from this unit and put them in order from 1) a job I would like, to 6) a job I would not like. If possible, talk to another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

69 Jobs

What do you do? What's your job? I'm …

a police officer/ policeman/policewoman

a businessman/ businesswoman

a secretary in a company

a dentist

a model

a shop assistant/ sales assistant

a nurse

a fashion designer

a soldier

a pilot

a builder

a teacher

a chef

a cleaner

a lorry driver (ALSO a train/bus/taxi driver)

a hairdresser

GLOSSARY

job	the work that you do for money: *I've got a **job** as a waiter* (NOT ~~*as waiter*~~.)
work [U]	the job that you do: *I need **work**.* (NOT a ~~*work*~~ OR ~~*works*~~) **work** *v*
boss	a person who tells people what to do in their job
career	the work you do for many years: *I want a **career** in teaching. His **career** is very important to him.*

SPOTLIGHT *employ*

If you **employ somebody**, you pay somebody to work for you.
- *The factory **employs** 800 people.*

A **company** is a group of people who work together and make or sell things. A person or company who does this is the **employer**, and the person who works for somebody is the **employee**.
- *We have 800 **employees** in the company.*

If you are able to work but don't have a job, you are **unemployed**.

1 Circle the correct answer.

▶ A ***lorry driver*** / ***chef*** works in a kitchen.
1 I'm looking for a ***work*** / ***job***.
2 A ***shop assistant*** / ***bus driver*** sells things.
3 A ***model*** / ***nurse*** works in a hospital.
4 A career is work that you do for a ***short*** / ***long*** time.
5 A fashion designer designs ***clothes*** / ***furniture***.
6 An unemployed person ***has*** / ***hasn't*** got a job.
7 If you are an ***employer*** / ***employee***, you work for other people.
8 A ***boss*** / ***hairdresser*** tells people what to do.
9 A ***pilot*** / ***dentist*** looks after people's teeth.
10 ***Models*** / ***Secretaries*** are usually very tall.
11 A ***builder*** / ***cleaner*** works outside a lot.
12 You can have a career ***in the police*** / ***when you stop work***.

2 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ fashion / assistant D
1 pilot / dentist .....
2 pilot / driver .....
3 business / builder .....
4 police / model .....
5 teacher / chef .....
6 work / nurse .....
7 designer / driver .....

3 Complete the sentences with jobs from page 134.

▶ You have to walk a lot if you are a nurse, a police officer or a soldier.
1 You probably have to go to university to be .....
2 You need to work with your hands to be .....
3 You may need to be good at maths if you are .....
4 You have a lot of free time if you are .....
5 You usually have to wear a uniform if you are .....
6 You work in an office a lot of the time if you are .....

4 Complete the dialogues.

▶ Does he work in a shop? ~ Yes, he's a sales assistant.
1 Do you work for the boss? ~ Yes, I'm her .....
2 Does he work for British Airways? ~ Yes, he's .....
3 Does Lisa cut people's hair? ~ Yes, she's .....
4 Does he tell people what to do? ~ Yes, he's .....
5 Do you see her clothes in magazines? ~ Yes, she's .....
6 Is her picture in fashion magazines? ~ Yes, she's .....
7 Does your brother work in a school? ~ Yes, he's .....
8 Does Fergus work in that restaurant? ~ Yes, he's .....
9 Hashem sells computers, doesn't he? ~ Yes, he works for a very big .....

5 ABOUT YOU Think about your family and people you know. Do you know anybody who does these jobs? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

▶ a nurse My neighbour, Mrs Petrova, is a nurse.
a soldier I don't know anyone who's a soldier.
1 a secretary .....
2 a chef .....
3 a hairdresser .....
4 a teacher .....
5 a taxi driver .....
6 a dentist .....
7 a businessman or businesswoman .....
8 a boss .....

TEST YOURSELF

70 Describing jobs

A Basic information

Where does he work?

He **works in an office**[1] / **a factory**[2] / **a hospital**[3].

1

2

3

What does she do?

She's a **manager**.
She works **as** a secretary.

She **manages** a company.
She's **in advertising / in the army.**

Who does he **work for**?

He **works for** — a car **company**. (e.g. Toyota, Mercedes)
an **airline**. (e.g. Cathay Pacific, KLM)

What **hours** does she work?

She works — **from** nine **to** five.
long hours.
12 hours **a day**.

How much does he **earn**?

He **earns** a lot. His **salary** is $100,000 **a year.**

GLOSSARY	
manager	a person who controls an organization, e.g. a company or shop **manage** *v*
advertising	the business of telling people about things to buy
army	a large group of soldiers who fight on land
earn	get money for the work that you do
salary	money you get every month/year for the work that you do

1 Complete the sentences with words and phrases from the box.

an office	an American airline	a factory	she work ✓	hours a day	work for
long hours	earn much	a year	ten to six	advertising	does he earn

▶ Where does she work ?
1 She works .
2 I work in .
3 He works in .
4 Who do you ?
5 How much ?
6 I work eight .
7 She works for .
8 She doesn't .
9 He earns €50,000 .
10 I work from .

2 Complete the sentences.

▶ Who does he work for ?
1 She's a doctor in the local . Her husband works a factory.
2 I work for a computer , and my is now €60,000 year.
3 He doesn't work hours: he only works 9.00 3.00.
4 She's a nurse, so she doesn't much money.
5 My brother is a soldier the .
6 Who do you work ? ~ I'm a pilot. I work for a Spanish called Air Europa.
7 TV gets a lot of money from .
8 He a large company in France. He has worked there for 15 years and he has been the for the last five.

3 ABOUT YOU **If you have a job, write your answers. If not, ask someone with a job, or write about somebody in your family.**

1 What do you do?
2 Who do you work for?
3 Where do you work?
4 What hours do you work?
5 Do you think people in your job earn a lot of money?

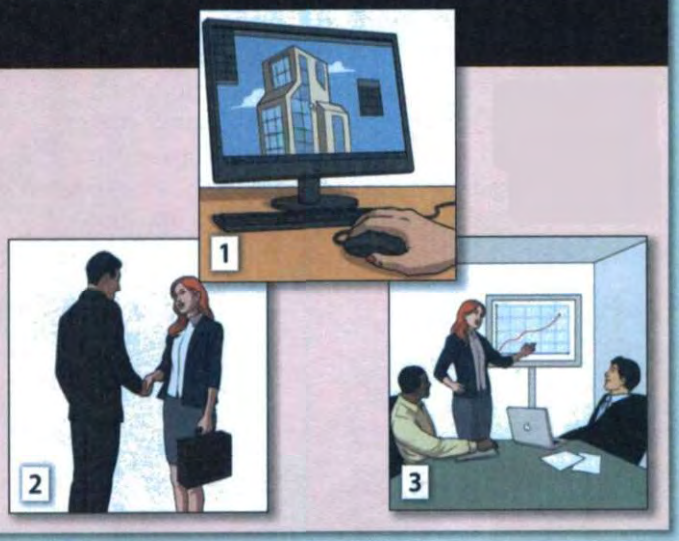
TEST YOURSELF

B What does it involve?

Daniela Alessi, architect

My job **involves** many things:

- I **design buildings**[1], mostly big **projects**.
- I **meet**[2] **clients** and **discuss** problems with them.
- I **organize meetings**[3] with **colleagues**.
- I **send** hundreds of emails.
- I write **reports**.
- I **spend a lot of time** talking to people.



GLOSSARY

involve	have sth as a part: *The job **involves** using a computer.*
project	a big plan to do sth, e.g. *a **project** to build a new airport*
client	a person who pays an architect, lawyer, etc. for their work
discuss	talk about sth seriously (NOT ~~*discuss about*~~)
organize	If you **organize** a meeting, you find a time and a place when everybody can go to it.
colleague	a person who works with you
send	You write a letter or email, then you **send** it to sb.
report	a piece of writing that gives information about your work
spend time doing sth	do sth for a period of time

SPOTLIGHT *meet* and *meeting*

Meet has different meanings:

1 see and speak to somebody for the first time: *I haven't **met** my boss's wife.*

2 come together, usually because you planned it: (*see picture 2*)

A **meeting** is a time when people come together, usually to talk about something (*see picture 3*).

4 Match 1–5 with a–f.

▶ spend time	c	**a**	problems
1 meet	.....	**b**	emails
2 organize	.....	**c**	making phone calls ✓
3 send	.....	**d**	bridges
4 discuss	.....	**e**	clients
5 design	.....	**f**	meetings

5 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

▶ I have ~~sended~~ the letters. sent

1 We discussed about our problems. .....

2 I have a meet this afternoon. .....

3 She spends a lot of time travel. .....

4 Could you organizate the meeting? .....

5 My job involves to use a computer. .....

6 I knew her for the first time last week. .....

6 Complete the text.

I work for Daniela's company as her secretary. I often ▶ meet many of her **(1)** ..... when they come to her office to **(2)** ..... work. At the moment, we have a big **(3)** .....: Daniela is **(4)** ..... a new department store for the town centre.
My job **(5)** ..... doing other things as well: I **(6)** ..... meetings with different people about the project; I receive and **(7)** ..... lots of emails, and sometimes I write **(8)** ..... about the project for Daniela. Fortunately, I am not alone. I have two other **(9)** ..... in the office with me. We work hard but we also **(10)** ..... time talking to each other.

TEST YOURSELF

71 Job interview

Two months ago, I saw an **advertisement** online for a job working with young people in the **community.** You needed a university degree, but no **experience**, so I decided to **apply.** I **filled in** the **form** and **posted** it, and two weeks later I went for an **interview.** I was very nervous and the **interviewer** asked some difficult questions, but they **offered** me the job, by email. The money is not bad and I will get a lot of **training**, so I **accepted.** I'm starting next week.

GLOSSARY	
advertisement	a notice, picture or film telling people about a job, product or service ALSO **advert/ad**
community	all the people who live in a place; the place where they live
experience	knowing about sth because you have seen it or done it
apply (for sth)	write to ask for sth
form	a piece of paper or a document with questions and spaces for you to write answers **fill in a form** write answers on the form
post	send a letter
interview	a meeting when sb asks you questions to decide if you will get a job. The person who does this is the **interviewer. interview** *v*
offer	say you will give sth to sb, e.g. a job or help, if they want it **offer** *n*
training	the activity of learning how to do a job
accept	say *yes* to sth

1 Put the story in order.

I went for an interview. ☐
I posted it. ☐
I decided to apply. ☐
I saw an advertisement for a job. 1
I accepted the job. ☐
I filled in the form. ☐
The interviewer asked me questions. ☐

2 Complete the sentences.

▶ Life in a small fishing community is different from life in a big city.
1 My boss was very busy, so I _____ to help her.
2 Don't _____ the form. You should email it instead.
3 My brother has an _____ for a job next week. I hope he gets it.
4 The company asked me to _____ in a form.
5 I have a friend who is doing a lot of _____ in his new job at the bank.
6 At the moment I'm _____ for a place at university. I want to go next year.
7 It's easy to get a job in a shop, but you need more _____ to become a manager.
8 The job they offered me wasn't very interesting, so I didn't _____ it.
9 I saw a funny _____ on TV last night for a new Italian car.
10 I was surprised at some of the questions the _____ asked me.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Have you applied for any jobs? If so, what are they? _____
2 Do you have experience of interviews? If so, what? _____
3 Have you had training for a job? If so, what? _____
4 What forms have you filled in this year? _____
5 Would you like a job working in the community with young people? Why? / Why not? _____

TEST YOURSELF

72 First day at work

My first day **at work** was **surprising**. I was nervous when I **entered** the building, but everyone was **so** friendly **that** I didn't need to **worry**. I was **part of** a small **unit** (six of us), and it was our job to **support** local **charities** in the community. Caroline, my boss, introduced me to the rest of the group, and I spent the **whole** day watching and listening. It was **such** an **amazing** day.

GLOSSARY

at work	This shows where you are. ALSO ***at school/home***, etc.
surprising	If sth is **surprising**, it is different from what is normal or usual.
enter *formal*	come or go into a place
worry	think or feel that sth bad will happen **worry** *n*
part of sth	some but not all of sth
unit	one complete thing or group that may be part of sth larger
support	If you **support** sb, you are there to help them if they need it.
charity	an organization that collects money to help people who need it
whole	all of sth
amazing	If sth is **amazing**, it is difficult to believe, and usually very good. SYN **incredible**

SPOTLIGHT *so and such*

So and **such** are used before words to make them stronger. You use **so** before an adjective without a noun, and **such** before an adjective with a noun.

- *My job is **so** interesting.*
- *I'm **so** busy **that** I can't go.*
- *I've got **such** an interesting job.*
- *I've got **such** a busy day **that** I can't go.*

1 Answer the questions. Write *Yes* or *No*.

▶ If something is surprising, is it what you think it will be? No

1 Does a charity help people? .....
2 If you worry about something, are you happy? .....
3 Does the whole day mean all of the day? .....
4 If something is amazing, is that good? .....
5 If you enter a building, are you leaving? .....
6 Is a unit a complete thing? .....
7 If something is *so good*, is that more than good? .....
8 Does *amazing* mean the opposite of *incredible*? .....

2 Rewrite the sentences using the words in CAPITALS. The meaning must stay the same.

▶ He's got such a quiet voice. SO His voice is so quiet.
1 He's in the office today. WORK He .....
2 This book is so good. SUCH This is .....
3 Stand up when she comes into the room. ENTER Stand up .....
4 It was such a long film. SO The film .....
5 She's one person in a small group. PART She's .....
6 This job is so difficult. SUCH This is .....

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ This book has 100 units.
1 She always ..... that she won't have enough money.
2 Last month I spent the ..... time working with Caroline.
3 I left the job because the money was ..... bad.
4 You can ..... the building at the front or the back.
5 It was ..... an interesting job – I loved it.
6 There are a number of ..... that help people in poor ..... of the world.
7 It's important to ..... people who are very young or new in a job.
8 It's difficult working with these children, and I think she does an ..... job with them.

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 What was your first day at work like? .....
2 Did you worry about anything before starting? .....
3 Did your colleagues support you? .....
4 Were you part of a unit? .....

TEST YOURSELF

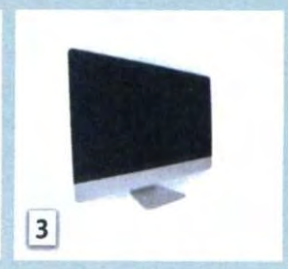
73 Computers

A Devices

1 PC (personal computer)
2 printer
3 screen
4 mouse
5 keyboard
6 laptop
7 window
8 tablet
9 program
10 menu

1

2


3

4

5

6

7

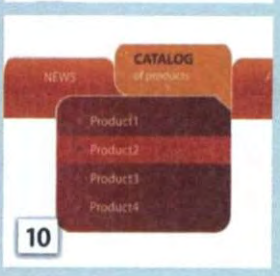
SPOTLIGHT *keep*

Keep means to put something in a place so that you know where it is.

- *I **keep** my laptop in a bag in my office.*
- *Where do you **keep** your tablet?*
- *I **keep** it in my handbag.*

8

9



10

1 **Complete the words.**

▶ k e e p

1 k___ ___b___ ___ ___d
2 w___ ___ ___ ___w
3 l___ ___ ___ ___p
4 m___ ___u
5 t___ ___ ___ ___t
6 m___ ___ ___e
7 sc___ ___ ___n
8 p___ ___ ___ ___ ___r
9 p___ ___g___ ___m

2 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ You type information using the keyboard.
1 A small computer you can carry is called a _____.
2 You read your e-mails on the _____.
3 A list on the screen that shows what you can do is a _____.
4 You can make a paper copy of something using a _____.
5 A very small computer you use where you touch the screen is a _____.
6 A set of instructions that we put into a computer is a _____.
7 On a computer, you can open or close a _____.
8 You can move things on the screen using the _____.
9 You can _____ pictures on a computer, tablet or laptop.

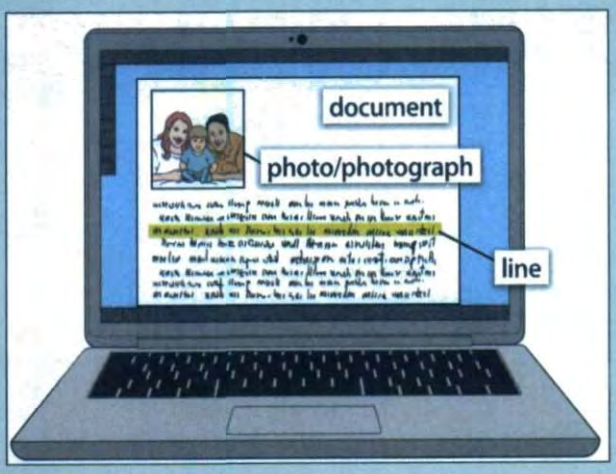
3 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 Have you got a PC? If so, what kind is it? _____
2 Have you got a printer? If so, how often do you use it? _____
3 Have you got a laptop or tablet? If so, where do you keep it? _____
4 Do you keep photos on your computer? If so, what kind of photos? _____
5 Which is better for you: a PC or a laptop? Why? _____

TEST YOURSELF

B Working on a computer

For homework, our teacher asked us to write a short **text** about our families. I **opened** a new **document** on my laptop, and **typed** ten **lines** about my husband and son. Then I **moved** a **photo** from my personal **files** into the document. It didn't look good, so I **cut** it and **replaced** it **with** a different photo. I read the text **carefully** to see if it was all correct. Then I **saved** it and **printed** a **copy** to give to my teacher.



GLOSSARY

text	a piece of writing	**replace sth (with sth)**	put a new or different thing in the place of another: *I **replaced** my old computer **with** a new laptop.*
open	start sth: ***open** a document/file* OPP **close**	**carefully**	If you do sth **carefully**, you think about what you are doing so that you don't make mistakes. **careful** *adj*
type	write sth using a keyboard	**save**	You must **save** a document before you close it, or you will lose it.
move	take sth and put it in another place	**copy**	a thing that is exactly the same as another thing: *make/print a **copy**; **copy** v*
file	information that is stored on a computer with a particular name: *I must save that **file** on my computer.*		
cut	take text or pictures away from a document		

4 **Circle the verbs.**

opencarefulsavemovephototyperemovelinereplacefileclosetextdocument

5 **Put the sentences in the correct order.**

a I saved the text. ☐
b I printed a copy. ☐
c I didn't like it, so I removed it. ☐
d I moved a photo into the document. ☐
e I typed a text. ☐
f I read the text carefully. ☐
g I closed the document. ☐
h I opened a document. 1

6 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ I opened a new document and started typing.
1 The text has about 15 _____ in it.
2 I have to be very _____ when I'm typing in English.
3 I always make two _____ of my work: one for me, and one to give to my teacher.
4 I keep my letters to the doctor in a medical _____ on my PC.
5 Can you _____ a copy of the letter for me, please?
6 Remember to _____ your work before you close a document.
7 I'm going to _____ my old laptop _____ a new one.
8 I wasn't happy with the second paragraph in the text, so I _____ it.
9 Her fingers are painful so she _____ very slowly.
10 She opened the email, started reading it and quickly _____ it when her father came in.

TEST YOURSELF

74 Email, letters and the internet

A Email and letters

Have you **checked** your **messages** today?

No, I haven't got wifi or **the internet** where I'm staying.

What's your **email address**?

It's lucy@gmail.com

Can you **email** the documents to me, please?

Oh, but I've already **sent** them **by post**.

Oh no! The post is very slow here, and **letters** often **get lost**.

Have you **received** Donna's email?

Yes, I have. I'll **reply** this evening.

GLOSSARY

email	= **electronic mail** a message that is written on one computer and sent to another **email** *v*
check	look to see if sth is there
message	words that one person sends to another
the internet	the international computer system: *I saw it* ***on the internet***.
send	make a letter or email go somewhere
post [U]	the system for sending and receiving letters, parcels, etc: *send sth* ***by post***; **post** *v*
letter	a piece of writing on paper sb sends to another person
get lost	If sth **gets lost**, you don't know where it is.
receive *formal*	get sth that sb has sent to you **get**
reply (to sb)	say or write sth as an answer to sb **reply** *n*

SPOTLIGHT saying email addresses

@ = at **. = dot**

We say jo.xi@gmail.com like this: 'jo dot xi at gmail dot com'.

1 One word is not correct. Cross it out.

▶ send a *letter* / ~~*post*~~ / *message*

1 *get* / *send* / *reply* a message

2 reply to *the internet* / *a letter* / *an email*

3 send something by *post* / *email* / *document*

4 check *your emails* / *a reply* / *your messages*

5 get *a letter* / *the internet* / *a message*

2 One word is missing. What is it, and where does it go?

▶ I got an / from Luisa this morning. email

1 Did you the email I sent you yesterday? .....

2 The letter lost in the post – it never arrived. .....

3 Have you to Juan's letter yet? .....

4 I can't email you because I'm not the internet here. .....

5 My email address is 'jamie gmail dot com'. .....

6 Could you me the information, please? .....

7 I need to my emails before I go out. .....

8 Did you give Zach the letter, or send it by? .....

9 Email me at 'sue 1 at gmail com'. .....

3 Complete the dialogues.

A A Hi, Arun. Have you ▶ checked your messages this morning?
B Yes, I have. Malu **(1)** ..... me an email with some documents from our lawyer.
A Oh? I thought the lawyer sent you a **(2)** ..... with the documents, not an email.
B I didn't get them. I think they got **(3)** ..... in the post.

B A Did you **(4)** ..... the email I sent you last night?
B Yes, I'm sorry I haven't had time to **(5)** ..... yet.

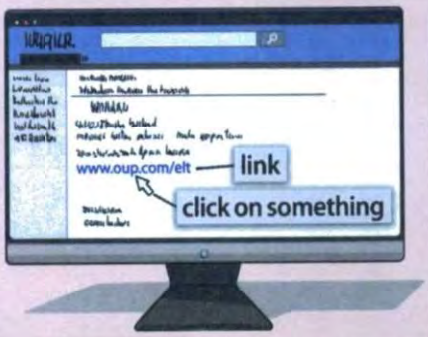
C A I emailed the information to Jesse, but I haven't had a **(6)** ..... yet.
B He's camping this week, so he probably isn't **(7)** ..... the **(8)** ..... .

TEST YOURSELF

B The internet

STAY SAFE online

- When you **shop online**, only use **websites** which you know or **recognize**.
- If you get an email with a **link**[1] in it, don't **click on**[2] it if you don't know the person who sent it. It could **contain** a **virus**.
- Make sure your children are safe online. Only let them go online and **search for** information and look at **blogs** and **videos** when you are at home with them.
- Never tell anybody your **passwords**.



GLOSSARY

online	using a computer or the internet **shop online** buy things on the internet
website	a place on the internet that you can look at to get information about sth ALSO **site**
recognize	know sb or sth because you have seen them or heard of them before
contain	have sth inside: *The website **contains** the information you need.*
virus	a program that enters your computer and stops it working correctly
search (for sth)	use a computer to look for information
blog	a personal record that sb puts on their website saying what they do or what they think about things
video	a short film made digitally that you can watch on the internet
password	a secret word that allows you to start using a computer

4 **Circle the words which contain the same vowel sound as in *buy, right, wine*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

link (like) website contain video virus recognize click online

5 **Is the meaning the same or different? Write *S* or *D*.**

▶ click on something / search for something D
1 a website / a site .....
2 search for something / look for something .....
3 a video / a blog .....
4 recognize somebody / meet somebody .....
5 contain something / click on something .....
6 password / passport .....
7 a link / a virus .....
8 online / on the internet .....

6 **Complete the questions with words from the box.**

websites passwords blog virus click
recognize online ✓ videos search contains

▶ What kinds of things do you buy online ?
1 Do you watch many ..... on YouTube?
2 Do you ever tell people your ..... ?
3 Have you ever written a ..... ?
4 Which ..... do you use a lot?
5 Has your computer or tablet ever had a ..... ?
6 Do you use Google to ..... for information on the internet?
7 Do you ..... on a link if you don't ..... the person who sent you the email?
8 What do you do if you think an email ..... a virus?

ABOUT YOU

Mostly books and things for the house.

7 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

75 Phoning

A Phone vocabulary

PHONE NUMBERS	**What's your phone number?**	~ It's 245731.
	What's your mobile number?	~ It's 07700 900154.
PHONE VERBS	**call/phone/ring** (*pt* **rang**) somebody	speak to sb by phone ALSO **make a (phone) call**
	answer the phone	pick up the phone when it rings and speak
	message somebody	send sb a **message / text (message)**
	take a message	take information during a call and give it to sb else
	leave a message	give information to sb on the phone, who then gives it to another person
PHONE PROBLEMS	The **line** is **busy.**	The person you phoned is speaking **on the phone** already.
	It's the **wrong number.**	You make a mistake with the number.

mobile phone
smartphone (= with internet)

landline

SPOTLIGHT saying phone numbers

Say each number.
- 245731 is: ***two four five, seven three one.***

Say **double** when two numbers are the same.
- 33 = ***double three.***

For '0', say **oh** or **zero.**
- 602448 is: ***six oh/zero two, double four eight.***

1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write *S* or *D*.

▶ What's your ***landline / mobile*** number? D
1 He ***phoned / rang*** his sister. .....
2 He's got ***a smartphone.*** / He's got ***a landline.*** .....
3 six two ***four four*** / six two ***double four*** .....
4 I ***messaged him.*** / I ***sent him*** a text. .....
5 She ***made a call / answered the phone.*** .....
6 Please ***call / ring*** me later. .....
7 ***four oh seven nine / four zero seven nine*** .....

2 Complete the words in the dialogues.

1 Did you ▶ ring Jo this morning? ~ Yes, but she was out, so I left a m. I r her mobile too, but she didn't a the phone.
2 What's your phone n? ~ It's 345489.
3 Did you c Sue last night? ~ Yes, but the line was b. I'll p her later.
4 Hello, can I speak to Charlie, please? ~ Sorry, you've got the w number.
5 Did you speak to Lisa? ~ I tried to call her but she was on the p, so I m her and I'm waiting for a reply.
6 Can you come to the meeting? ~ Yes, but I just need to m a call first.
7 Can I speak to Riccardo? ~ I'm sorry, he's busy. Can I take a m?
8 What's your m number? ~ It's zero d seven double oh, nine double oh, one six nine.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 What's your phone number and mobile number? (Write it in words.)
2 Who do you ring most often?
3 Do you send a lot of texts? If so, who to?
4 What do you say when you answer the phone?
5 Do you often get the wrong number?

TEST YOURSELF

B Phone conversations

A Hello?
B **Is that** Mia?
A Yes, **speaking**.
B Oh, hello. **This is** Laura, Laura Freebairn.
A Hi, Laura, how are you?
B I'm fine thanks. Is Jessica **in**, please?
A Yes, **just a moment** – I'll **get** her for you …
C Hello?
D Oh, hello, **can I speak to** Mr Ellis, please?
C I'm sorry, but he's out **at the moment**. **Who's calling?**
D **It's** Leo Jackson from Delta Electronics.
C Right. Do you want to leave a message for him?
D Yes, please. Can you tell him I'll **ring** him **back** after lunch?
C Of course, no problem.
D Thanks very much. **Goodbye**.

GLOSSARY

Is that Isabella?	(NOT ~~*Are you Isabella?*~~)	**get sb**	go and find sb and bring them to the phone
speaking	You say **speaking** when you are the person sb on the phone has asked to talk to.	**at the moment**	now
This is Laura.	OR **It's** Laura. (NOT ~~*I am. / Here is Laura.*~~)	**Who's calling?**	This is a polite way of asking 'Who are you?'.
in	at home OPP **out**	**phone/call/ring sb back**	phone sb again
just a moment	wait a minute	**goodbye**	short form: **bye** *inf*

4 **Tick (✓) the correct answers.**

▶ Can I speak to Martyn Ellis, please? ~ He's not in at the moment. ☑ / He's not in just a moment. ☐
1 Hello? ~ Speaking. ☐ / Oh, hello, is that Jackie? ☐
2 Can I speak to Lia Ponte, please? ~ Just a moment … ☐ / It's Natasha. ☐
3 Hello, is that Gosia? ~ Oh hello, this is Carla. ☐ / Speaking. ☐
4 Hello, this is Jamie Little. ~ Oh, hello, how are you? ☐ / Who's calling? ☐
5 Hello, can I speak to Alfonse, please? ~ I'm sorry, he's out. ☐ / I'm sorry, he's in. ☐
6 Mohammed's not here at the moment. ~ OK, I'll call back later. ☐ / OK, I'll get him. ☐
7 See you this evening, Dmitri. ~ Yes, bye. ☐ / Speaking. ☐

5 **Complete the conversations.**

1 A Hello?
B Hello. ▶ Is that ..... Marisa?
A Yes, **(1)** ..... .
B Oh, hello. **(2)** ..... Alice.
A Oh, hello, Alice.
B Is Mikki **(3)** ..... , **(4)** ..... ?
A I'm sorry, he's out **(5)** ..... . Can I take a message?
B Yes, please. Tell him I'll **(6)** ..... him ..... after lunch.
A OK, **(7)** ..... .

2 A Hello?
B Oh, can I **(8)** ..... Ben, please?
A Yes, **(9)** ..... moment. I'll **(10)** ..... him for you.

3 A Hello?
B Oh, hello. **(11)** ..... Joanna?
A Yes, **(12)** ..... .
B Hello, Joanna, **(13)** ..... 's Luke.
A Hi, Luke. How are you?

6 ABOUT YOU **Look at the conversations again. Think about the way people answer the phone in English, and the phrases they use. Is it very different in your language? If possible, talk to somebody who speaks your language.**

TEST YOURSELF

76 -er / -or / -r nouns

It is common in English to add *-er, -or* or *-r* to a verb to describe the person who does the action of the verb.

***Teachers** are people who **teach** as a job.*
***Visitors** are people who **visit** a place, often as tourists.*

Here are more examples.

A **driver** is a person who **drives**, often as a job: *a bus/taxi **driver**.*
Workers are people who **work**, especially in a particular kind of work: *office/farm/factory **workers**.*
The **listener** is the person who is **listening**, e.g. to the radio, the **speaker** is the person who is **speaking**, e.g.to an audience, and the **reader** is the person who is **reading**, e.g. a book.
An **owner** is a person who **owns** something:
*I'm the **owner** of that car. I bought it last week.*
An **actor** is a person who **acts** as a job: *a TV/film **actor**.*
The **winner** is the person who **wins** something, e.g. a **competition** or a **race**.
Travellers are people who are **travelling**:
*Rail **travellers** often have difficult journeys.*
An **instructor** is a person who **instructs** people.

GLOSSARY	
winner	the person who is the best or the first in a game, competition or race
competition	a game or test that people want to win: *a painting **competition***
race	In a **race**, people run, drive, ride, etc. in a competition to see who is fastest.
instructor	a person who teaches you how to do sth: *a driving **instructor***

1 Complete the sentences.

▶ A person who teaches is a teacher.
1 A person who owns something is the .....
2 A person who visits somewhere is .....
3 A person who travels is a .....
4 A person who wins something is a .....
5 A person who instructs people is an .....
6 A person who drives is a .....
7 A person who acts on television is a .....
8 A person who works in a factory is a .....

2 Make six phrases using a word from each box.

radio	film	bus	driving	travellers ✓	instructor	worker	driver
office	air ✓	English		listener	teacher	actor	

▶ air travellers ....
....

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ My cousin has been a film actor for a few years.
1 The museum gets a lot of ..... every year.
2 Mr Jacobs is the ..... of that big house on the corner of the road.
3 He was the winner of the ..... last year.
4 I have a neighbour who is a taxi .....
5 The farm employs about ten .....
6 The BBC Radio morning programme has about five million .....
7 Some ..... always want books to have a happy ending.
8 I often have to ask the ..... to repeat what they said.
9 My brother came second but I don't know who the ..... was.
10 Our English ..... explains things to our class very well.

TEST YOURSELF

77 -ing forms

In English, we often add ***-ing*** to a verb to describe an activity in these situations:
1 As the subject of a sentence: ***Reading** English is easier than **writing**.*
2 After prepositions: *I'm not very good <u>at</u> **spelling**.*
3 After certain verbs: *I <u>love</u> **driving**.*
These words with ***-ing*** are also called gerunds.

Other common ***-ing*** forms include:

1

camping[1] spending a holiday in a tent: ***Camping** is great fun when the weather's good.*

2

painting[2] *I used to <u>enjoy</u> **painting** at school.*

sightseeing[3] visiting interesting places as a tourist: *I don't <u>enjoy</u> **sightseeing**.*

3

smoking having a cigarette: ***Smoking** is bad for you.*

understanding knowing about something: ***Understanding** computers is not easy.*

shopping buying things from shops: *I don't <u>mind</u> **shopping**.*

flying travelling in a plane: *I'm frightened <u>of</u> **flying**.*

working the activity of work: ***Working** for a bad boss is terrible.*

teaching working as a teacher: ***Teaching** is a great job, but not very well paid.*

1 What activities are described here?

▶ looking at words and understanding them reading
1 travelling in a plane .....
2 buying things .....
3 spending a holiday in a tent .....
4 writing a word in the correct way .....
5 visiting interesting places as a tourist .....
6 knowing about something .....
7 helping students in a classroom .....
8 controlling a car, bus, etc. .....

2 Do you agree or disagree? If you disagree, say why.

▶ Smoking is bad for you. Agree ▶ Learning English is easy. Disagree. Learning English is really difficult.
1 Swimming is good for you. .....
2 Running is good fun. .....
3 Reading English is easier than speaking. .....
4 English spelling is easy. .....
5 Camping is good fun. .....
6 Teaching is a job I would like. .....
7 Shopping is boring. .....
8 Working is something you must enjoy. .....

3 Make phrases with the *-ing* form of a verb from the first box and a word or phrase from the second box.

write	paint	sleep	run ✓	listen to	play	learn	buy	cook
football	clothes	in a tent	English	languages	meals	music	for miles ✓	pictures

▶ Running for miles .....
.....
.....
.....
.....

4 ABOUT YOU **Write sentences that are true for you, using the phrases in Exercise 3. Compare with another student if possible.**

▶ Running for miles is not something I do.

TEST YOURSELF

78 Noun suffixes

A Nouns ending in *-ion*

Can you **predict** the result of a football match?

No, it's very hard to make a **prediction**.

Someone's **invented** a way to clean plastic from the oceans.

That's a great **invention**!

Do you always **celebrate** your birthday?

Yes, I often have a small **celebration** with friends.

I have to **organize** my son's wedding.

Well, that will need careful **organization**.

Can you **describe** the criminal?

Yes, I can give the police a good **description**.

How do we **solve** the population problem?

I've got no idea. There's no easy **solution**.

We have to **decide** where to live.

That's a very important **decision**.

GLOSSARY

predict	say what you think will happen **(make a) prediction** *n*
invent	make, design or think of sth for the first time **invention** *n*
celebrate	do sth to show that you are happy for a special reason, or because it is a special day **(have a) celebration** *n*
organize	plan or arrange sth **organization** *n*
describe	say what sb or sth is like, or what happened **(give a) description** *n*
solve	find the answer to a question or problem **solution** *n*
decide	choose sth after thinking about the possibilities **(make a) decision** *n*

SPOTLIGHT suffix *-ion*

Many verbs form nouns by adding a suffix, and *-ion/-tion/-sion/-ation* are very common.
predict/prediction **celebrate/celebration**
Sometimes the ending of the noun changes.
solve/solution **decide/decision**
Stress can also change. Use the APP to check the sounds and the stress.

1 **Underline the main stress in each word. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶	invent	▶	solution	
1	celebrate		celebration	
2	describe		description	
3	predict		prediction	
4	decide		decision	
5	organize		organization	

2 **What words are being defined here?**

▶ choosing something after thinking decision
1 something somebody has made for the first time .....
2 a time when you enjoy yourself for a special reason .....
3 words that tell what somebody or something is like .....
4 an answer to a problem .....
5 a statement about what you think will happen .....
6 planning or arranging something so that it is successful .....

3 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of a word from this unit.**

▶ Can you describe what happened when the car hit the tree?
1 It wasn't easy to make a ....., but in the end, we ..... to sell the car.
2 We have to ..... the traffic problems quickly. The ..... is probably to have better trains and buses.
3 I didn't see the man, so I couldn't give a good ..... of him.
4 After the exams, the students go out and ..... all night.
5 I think it was Tim Berners Lee who ..... the World Wide Web.
6 My boss is ..... tomorrow's meeting. He's very bad at ..... .
7 The government has ..... that business will get better next year.
8 The mobile phone is one of the most important ..... of the last fifty years.

TEST YOURSELF

B Other noun endings

Verb / Noun	Example	Meaning (verb)
discover *v* **discovery** *n*	*Herschel **discovered** the planet Uranus.* *Herschel **made an important discovery**.*	find a place or thing that nobody knew about before
succeed *v* **success** *n*	*They want the discussions to **succeed**.* *They want them to be a **success**.*	do or get what you wanted to do or get
complain *v* **complaint** *n*	*You need to **complain** to the manager.* *You should **make a complaint**.*	say you do not like sth or are unhappy about sth
choose *v* **choice** *n*	*I had to **choose** a gift for my sister.* *I **made a bad choice**.*	decide which thing or person you want
think *v* **thought(s)** *n*	*I was **thinking** about our next holiday.* *I **had a few thoughts** about our holiday.*	have an opinion or idea about sth
arrange *v* **arrangement** *n*	*I have **arranged** to see Jo tonight.* *I have **made an arrangement** with Jo.*	make a plan for the future
argue *v* **argument** *n*	*We mustn't **argue** about money.* *We mustn't **have an argument**.*	talk angrily with sb because you do not agree
move *v* **movement** *n*	*Something **moved** behind me.* *There was a **movement** behind me.*	change place or position

SPOTLIGHT suffix *-ment*

The suffix **-ment** is also common in English: **advertise** *v* / **advertisement** *n* **improve** *v* / **improvement** *n*

4 **Complete the table.**

VERB	NOUN	VERB	NOUN
move	movement	discover	.....
.....	success	.....	thought
arrange	.....	argue	.....
choose	.....	complain	.....

5 **Circle the correct answer.**

▶ When you dance, you make ***movements*** / ***complaints*** with your body.
1 She had ***an argument*** / ***a movement*** with her boyfriend last night.
2 Did you make a ***complaint*** / ***choice*** to the waiter about the cold soup?
3 I had a ***discovery*** / ***thought*** about the business: I think we should sell it.
4 They thought the plan would fail, but in fact it was a great ***success*** / ***arrangement***.
5 The ***arrangements*** / ***successes*** for the wedding were really good – it went very well.
6 They have made an important ***discovery*** / ***thought*** about the crime.

6 **Complete the questions.**

▶ Have you ever complained about bad service on buses or trains?
1 Have you ever made a c..... about noise to a neighbour?
2 In a restaurant, do you c..... what to eat quickly?
3 At school, did you have a c..... of different subjects?
4 Do you a..... a lot in your family?
5 Have you ever had an a..... with a shop assistant?
6 Would you like to s..... in business?
7 Is s..... the most important thing in life?
8 Do you often have t..... about what to do in your future?

ABOUT YOU

Yes, often!

7 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

79 Compound nouns

A What are compound nouns?

This is common in English: word + word = new word. For example:

police + officer = police officer **phone + number = phone number**
bath + room = bathroom **art + gallery = art gallery**

- We write some compound nouns as one word, e.g. **bathroom**, but many are two words, e.g. **phone number**.
- Many compound nouns are easy to understand when you know the other words, e.g. **railway station**, **address book**, **first floor**, **dining room**, **bus stop**, **dishwasher**. Sometimes they are less easy to understand, e.g. a **disc jockey** (usually called a **DJ**) is a person who plays music on the radio and in clubs.
- You will meet many compound nouns as you learn English: **past tense**; **past participle**; **phrasal verb** (*see Unit 99*); **capital letter**, e.g. ABC; **full stop** (at the end of a sentence); **question mark** = ?
- With compound nouns, the main stress is usually on the first word, e.g. phone number, but sometimes it is on the second word, e.g. full stop.

1 **Underline the main stress on these compound words. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ art gallery ▶ full stop bathroom railway station first floor address book
bus stop phone number dishwasher capital letter police officer

2 **What do we call these places or things? Use a compound noun to label each picture.**

1 .....

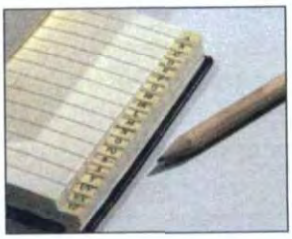
2 .....

3 .....

4 .....

5 .....

6 .....


7 .....

8 .....

3 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ I'd like to visit that art gallery.
1 My phone ..... is 07897 493321.
2 I found a police ..... and spoke to him.
3 My brother would like to be a disc ..... on the radio.
4 If it's a question, don't forget the question ..... .
5 What's the past ..... and past ..... of *forget*?
~ That's easy. *Forgot* and *forgotten*.
6 My parents live on the first ..... of the building.
7 I waited at the bus ..... for about twenty minutes.
8 *Get on* and *get off* are both ..... verbs.
9 You have to put a ..... stop at the end of the sentence.
10 A new sentence always begins with a ..... letter.

TEST YOURSELF

B In the town centre

… just after the **traffic lights**, we found a **car park**. Millie went to the **sports centre** to use the **swimming pool**, while Dan and I went to the **department store** in the new **shopping centre** to look at **washing machines**. We didn't buy one, but we had a very helpful **sales assistant**. After that, I did some shopping in the **high street**, and Dan went to the **ticket office** at the theatre. We came home after that, but Millie stayed and came back on **public transport**.

GLOSSARY	
car park	an area or a building where you can leave your car
sports centre	a large building where you can play different sports
swimming pool	a place that is built for people to swim in
shopping centre	a large building or area with a lot of shops
sales assistant	a person who serves you in a shop ALSO **shop assistant**
high street	the main street in a town or city where the shops are
ticket office	a place in a railway station, cinema, etc. where you can buy tickets

SPOTLIGHT *centre and card*

One word often forms part of several compound words, e.g. **sports centre**, **shopping centre**, **town centre**. Another example is **card**: you give people a **birthday card** when it is their birthday; an **identity card** is a card with your name, photo, etc. on it; a **credit card** is a plastic card you use to buy things and pay for them later.

4 **Find eight compound words using a word from each box.**

car ✓	department	sports
ticket	traffic	swimming
credit	public	high

office	transport	street
lights	park ✓	card
pool	store	centre

car park ....

....

....

5 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ Matt uses the gym in the sports centre.

1 I don't travel much on ..... transport these days.
2 Do you normally use your ..... card to buy expensive things?
3 Did you remember to send Tia a ..... card? She was 21 last week.
4 A police officer asked to see my ..... card yesterday. I was very surprised.
5 There are lots of cafés now in the ..... street. They're replacing shops.
6 The ..... lights were red when that car went through.
7 By 10.30 there are very few spaces in the car ..... .
8 I need to buy a new washing ..... .
9 They had to go to the ticket ..... to collect the tickets.
10 We had a terrible ..... assistant in the ..... store yesterday.

6 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ How often do you use public transport?

1 Do you have an ..... card? What information is on it?
2 Do you go to a sports ..... ? If so, what do you do there?
3 Do you have a ..... card? If so, what do you buy with it?
4 Do you use a local swimming ..... ? If so, how often?
5 How many ..... cards do you buy and send every year?
6 Do you often shop in a department ..... ? If so, what do you buy there?

ABOUT YOU

Quite a lot. I use the buses every day.

7 ABOUT YOU **Write answers to Exercise 6, or talk to another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

80 Likes and dislikes

A Love it or hate it?

1 **I love** football.

2 **I really like** it.

3 **I like** it.

4 **I quite like** it.

5 I don't **mind** it.

6 **I don't like** it **very much.**

7 **I don't like** it.

8 **I hate** it.
I don't like it at all.

SPOTLIGHT *love/like/hate + -ing*

After **love**, **like**, **hate** and **don't mind**, use a noun, a pronoun, or an *-ing* form:

- ***I love / like / hate / don't mind*** *football.* / *it.*
- ***I love / like / hate / don't mind*** ***playing*** *football.*

Like and **dislike** can also be nouns: *We all have different* ***likes*** *and* ***dislikes****.*

1 Who is more positive (+)? Who is more negative (-)? Complete the answers with *A* or *B*.

▶	**A** loves coffee.	**B** likes coffee.	A is more positive.
1	**A** likes tea.	**B** quite likes tea.	..... is more positive.
2	**A** likes chocolate.	**B** loves chocolate.	..... is more positive.
3	**A** really likes sport.	**B** doesn't mind it.	..... is more positive.
4	**A** doesn't like sport.	**B** doesn't like it at all.	..... is more negative.
5	**A** hates pop music.	**B** doesn't like pop music very much.	..... is more negative.
6	**A** doesn't like studying.	**B** doesn't mind studying.	..... is more negative.

2 Correct the mistakes.

▶	Do you like watch tennis?	Do you like watching tennis?
1	I hate it chocolate.	.....
2	They don't like to doing homework very much.	.....
3	He doesn't like very much speaking English.	.....
4	I like quite shopping.	.....
5	She doesn't like drive.	.....
6	I'm not mind working at night.	.....

3 Complete the sentences with one word.

▶ I don't like swimming very much.

1 I ..... going to the cinema – it's my favourite hobby.
2 I don't like classical music at ..... .
3 I don't ..... shopping – it's OK.
4 I ..... like driving. I find it exciting.
5 I ..... writing emails – it's so boring.
6 I don't ..... watching TV very much.
7 Most people hate housework, but I ..... like it.
8 I don't like talking on the phone ..... all.

4 ABOUT YOU **Do you agree with the sentences in Exercise 3? Write your ideas, or ask another student.**

▶ I really like swimming, and I go swimming a lot in the summer.

TEST YOURSELF

B My favourite things

meetpeopleontheweb.com

NAME	Mirko Zitec
WORK	I work for a TV company. It's a **wonderful** job – I love it.
STUDY	I'm learning to play the guitar. It's good **fun** and my teacher's **incredible**.
SPORTS	My **favourite** sport is tennis, but I also **enjoy** playing football.
TV/CINEMA	I don't watch TV – it's very **boring**, but **I'm interested in old** films from the 1960s. In fact, I **prefer** old films **to modern** ones.
MUSIC	I think **jazz** is really **interesting** – I go to a jazz club every Friday.

GLOSSARY

wonderful	very good SYNS **incredible, amazing**
fun	If sth is **fun**, it makes you happy.
favourite	Your **favourite** thing or person is the one you like most.
enjoy doing sth	If you **enjoy doing sth**, you like it a lot and it makes you happy. **enjoyable** *adj*
boring	OPP **interesting**
old	made or bought a long time ago OPP **new** OR **modern**
prefer (X **to** Y)	like sb or sth more than another person or thing
jazz	a kind of music, e.g. Louis Armstrong, Duke Ellington

SPOTLIGHT *boring/bored, interesting/interested, etc.*

*'The film was **boring**'* means the same as *'I was **bored by** the film'*.
(NOT ~~*The film was bored.*~~)
It is the same with **interesting** and **interested**: *'I think modern art is **interesting**'* has the same meaning as *'I'm **interested in** modern art'*.
(NOT ~~*I'm interesting in modern art.*~~)

He's boring. She's bored.

5 **Write eight more sentences using words from 1, 2, and 3.**

	1	2	3	
▶	It's ✓	not interested	boss.	It's a wonderful city.
1	I	the party	city. ✓	
2	I'm	favourite	watching TV.	
3	My	enjoy	film is *Star Wars*.	
4	She	amazing	enjoyable.	
5	He's an	a wonderful ✓	in politics.	
6	Was	is	programme.	
7	It's	prefers reading	good fun?	
8	Singing	a boring	to writing.	

6 ABOUT YOU **Complete the questions, using the words in the box.**

interesting	fun	interested	modern	enjoy
prefer	favourite	incredible	enjoyable ✓	

▶ Do you think flying is enjoyable ? .....
1 Is learning English good ..... ? .....
2 Do you ..... meat to fish? .....
3 What's your ..... city? .....
4 Are you ..... in jazz? .....
5 Do you think history is ..... ? .....
6 Do you ..... walking in the countryside? .....
7 Do you know a restaurant where the food is ..... ? .....
8 Do you like old houses, or do you prefer ..... houses? .....

7 ABOUT YOU **Write answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

81 Free time

A Common activities

What do you do in your free time?

I go ...	I play ...	I like ... I do (quite) a lot of ...	
tent camping	the guitar	travelling	I collect stamps, coins, etc.
fishing	golf	drawing and painting	I go out with friends.
to the gym	computer games	cooking	I watch TV and films.

1 **Can you do these things inside your home? Write *Yes* or *No*.**

▶ watch TV Yes
go fishing .....
play computer games .....
do a lot of drawing .....

▶ go to the gym No
do some travelling .....
go out with friends .....
go camping .....

collect stamps .....
play golf .....

2

▶ do e
1 go .....
2 collect .....
3 do some .....
4 go out .....
5 play .....
6 watch .....

a painting
b football magazines
c the guitar
d television
e a lot of travelling ✓
f with my brothers
g camping

3 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of *do, go, collect, watch, play* or *make*.**

▶ I often go to the gym.
1 Jojo ..... a lot of cooking.
2 My brother ..... old clocks.
3 I'd like to ..... the guitar.
4 Do you often ..... camping?
5 I don't ..... much travelling now.
6 She ..... out every night to a club.
7 Do you ..... golf?
8 He ..... too much TV.
9 They ..... fishing every weekend.
10 She ..... quite a lot of painting.

4 ABOUT YOU **Look at the table again. Make a list of the activities you do now, the activities you would like to do, and the ones you aren't interested in.**

TEST YOURSELF

B Hobbies

Favourite hobbies in Russia

Russian people have many **hobbies**. Older people enjoy **gardening**, fishing, and **repairing** cars. For younger people, there are **various clubs** in and outside school where children learn a lot of activities. **Popular** hobbies include sport, the arts, computers, listening to music, and collecting different things.

NATASHA: I like listening to **rock music**. I also like playing football with my friends, and I do a lot of drawing and reading. But my favourite hobby is **dancing**[1] (you can see me in the photo), and I'm quite **good at** it.

KOLYA: I play the guitar, and I can **sing** Russian and English **songs**. I often sing in the shower! I'm **good at** swimming and skiing. I also like travelling very much.

GLOSSARY

hobby	an activity that you like doing in your free time	**popular**	If sth is **popular**, many people like it.
gardening	working in your garden	**rock music**	music by, for example, The Rolling Stones and Bruce Springsteen
repair	make sth work when there is a problem, e.g. cars, bikes	**good at sth**	able to do sth well (NOT ~~*good in sth*~~)
various	some that are different: *There are **various** places to go.*	**sing**	make music with your voice: *Ed Sheeran is a **singer**. He sings **songs**.*
club	a group of people who do sth together, or the place where they meet		

5 **Are the underlined sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ rock / club S

1 repair / various .....
2 good at / shooting .....
3 gardening / sing .....
4 various / popular .....
5 hobby / song .....
6 rock music / club .....

6 **Look at the text again. Tick (✓) the true sentences, and correct the false sentences.**

▶ Natasha doesn't like rock music. False. She likes rock music.
1 Older people enjoy gardening. .....
2 Natasha is a good singer. .....
3 Kolya plays the piano. .....
4 There are no clubs in schools. .....
5 Kolya has various hobbies. .....
6 Natasha is very good at dancing. .....
7 Computers and collecting things are not popular hobbies. .....
8 Younger people like repairing cars. .....

7 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ Do you go to any sports clubs ..... ? If so, what kind?
1 What's your favourite h ..... ?
2 What hobbies are p ..... with younger people?
3 Do you have v ..... hobbies, or only one or two?
4 Are you a good s ..... ?
5 Write the name of one s ..... you can sing.
6 Write down something you are good ..... .
7 Are you good at r ..... things, e.g. a broken cup?

ABOUT YOU

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

8 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to the questions, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

82 Sport

A Games and sports

football/soccer

baseball

basketball

swimming

American football

tennis

table tennis

ice hockey

running

motor racing

skiing

team

player

SPOTLIGHT verbs with games and sport

We **play** a **game**:
- *I **play football** and **tennis**.*

We usually **do** a **sport**, especially when it is **a lot** or **a bit**:
- *I **do a lot of** swimming.*
- *She **does a bit of** running.*

We also use **go** with *-ing* forms:
- *I often **go swimming**.*

1 **Combine words to find five more games or sports.**

ice	base ✓	motor	tennis	▶ baseball
football	table	basket	ball ✓	
ball	American	racing	hockey	

2 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ People who play basketball are usually very tall.
1 I watched a fantastic ..... of ice hockey on TV last night.
2 Do you need a lot of snow for ..... ?
3 Do you think motor ..... is dangerous?
4 The children sometimes ..... swimming in the sea.
5 My husband and I ..... a lot of swimming in the lake near our home.
6 I want to do a ..... of running this summer.
7 You need 11 ..... for a football ..... .
8 We went to the game and watched it from behind the ..... .

3 **Which sports in the photos can you do inside a building?**

INSIDE A BUILDING	OUTSIDE A BUILDING
swimming	baseball

4 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 Which games do you play, and how often? .....
2 Which other sports do you do? .....
3 Which games and sports do you watch on TV? .....
4 Which sports do people do a lot in your country? .....

TEST YOURSELF

B Football

ITALY	Played	Won	Drawn	Lost	Goals for	Goals against	Points
Juventus	34	24	9	1	63	22	81
Inter Milan	34	24	4	6	75	27	76
AS Roma	34	22	5	7	61	26	71

On Friday, Juventus **won** their important **match against** Inter Milan. Cuadrado **scored** the only **goal** in the 70th minute. This means they are still **top** and now **lead** Inter **by** five points. On Saturday, Sampdoria was only able to **draw** their match **with** Torino. At Napoli, Roma were leading two goals to **nil** at **half-time**, but then Napoli played much better in the second half to make the **final score** 2–2. Lazio **beat** Genoa 3–1, while Fiorentina **lost** 2–1 **to** Milan.

GLOSSARY

goal	what you get in football when the ball goes into the goal
point	sth that you win in a game or sport: *The team has six **points** from three games. He needs another **point** to win the game.*
match	a game between two teams
against	One player or team plays **against** another player or team.
score	win goals, points, etc. in a game **score** *n*
top	the highest of the teams
lead	be in front of others in a game or sport
nil	the number 0, especially when it's used in games such as football
half-time	a period of rest between the first half and the second half
final score	the number of goals at the end of a game, e.g. 2–1

SPOTLIGHT irregular verbs

win *pt* **won** be the best or first:
- *We **won** 2–1.*

beat sb *pt* **beat** win against sb:
- *We **beat** Sampdoria 2–1.*

draw with/against sb *pt* **drew** end a game with the same number of goals:
- *We **drew** 3–3 **with/against** Roma.*

lose to sb *pt* **lost** not win against sb:
- *We lost 1–2 **to** Milan.*

5 **Correct the underlined mistakes.**

▶ Fiorentina draw with AS Roma. drew
1 Lazio have a play next Saturday. .....
2 Inter are playing with Parma. .....
3 Genoa lost 3–1 with Fiorentina. .....
4 Messi did two goals. .....
5 Parma won by two goals to zero. .....
6 Cagliari beated Sampdoria. .....
7 Milan win their game last week. .....
8 Did they drew the match? .....
9 Milan won 3–1 with Roma. .....

6 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ They scored in the first minute.
1 It's an important ..... next week.
2 We are playing ..... Valencia.
3 Seville ..... 1–2 to Barcelona.
4 Bilbao ..... 2–2 ..... Villareal.
5 It was 0-0 at half–..... .
6 They have 24 ..... from 13 games.
7 On Sunday, Espanyol ..... Real Betis 2–1.
8 Ronaldo ..... the goal.
9 We ..... our last match 4–1.
10 They were ..... 1–0 at half-time.
11 What was the final ..... ?

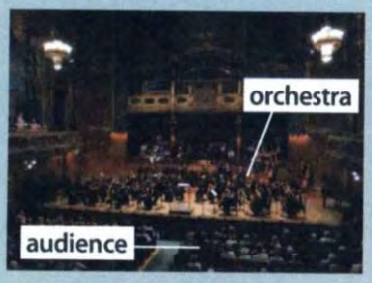
7 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY **Find the football scores this weekend. Write down the final scores in English, and the people who scored the goals.**

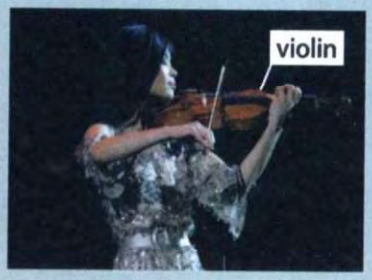
▶ Boca Juniors beat River Plate one nil. Cristian Pavón scored the only goal.

TEST YOURSELF

83 Music

A Classical music



concert
The **orchestra** is playing a **piece of music by** Haydn.

violinist Vanessa Mae
She's playing a concerto by Vivaldi.

pianist Lang Lang
He's playing music by Gershwin.

opera singer
Jonas Kaufmann is **performing.**

GLOSSARY

concert	a public performance of music
classical music	Western **classical music** includes music by Bach, Beethoven and Stravinsky. **musical** *adj*
a piece	a single thing: ***a piece of music***
(musical) instrument	A piano and a violin are **musical instruments.**
perform	do sth in front of an audience, e.g. act in a play, sing, etc. **performance** *n*

SPOTLIGHT *by*

*We say a book **by** Tolstoy, a song **by** Beyoncé, a painting **by** Picasso, a film **by** Martin Scorsese,* etc.

1 Make music words from the letters.

▶ lioniv violin
1 onctecr .....
2 choartser .....
3 tiaspni .....
4 deniacue .....
5 froeprm .....
6 rapoe grisne .....
7 refrancepom .....

2 Complete the sentences.

▶ Last night we went to a concert at the Royal Albert Hall.
1 Beethoven wrote ..... music.
2 A person who plays the piano is a ..... .
3 A person who plays the violin is a ..... .
4 A large group of people who play classical music together is called an ..... .
5 A piano and a violin are types of ..... .
6 A concert is a public ..... of music.
7 The people who listen to a concert are the ..... .
8 The orchestra ..... some music by Mozart. It was wonderful!
9 Bach wrote some wonderful ..... of music.
10 *La Bohème* is an opera ..... Puccini.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Do you go to classical music concerts? If yes, when was the last time? .....
2 Can you think any of pieces of classical music that you like? .....
3 Did you ever learn the piano or the violin as a child? If yes, do you still play? .....
4 Do you play a different musical instrument? .....
5 What is your favourite musical instrument? .....

TEST YOURSELF

B Pop and rock

In the past, **bands recorded** an **album** onto a **CD**, people bought the album, and the **performers** made money. Now, most people **are able to download music** onto their computers and phones. This is good for listeners, but not so good for **musicians**, because most of them do not get much money from music streaming websites.

So, many performers are now going back **on tour**, travelling around the country (and the world), playing **live** concerts and at music **festivals** to earn more money. And audiences seem to love this opportunity to see their favourite singers and **groups** performing all their **hit records** live.

SPOTLIGHT *record something* and *a record*

If you **record something**, you put music or film on a CD. A **record** (note the different pronunciation) is a song, or sometimes an album.

- *David Bowie made his last **record** only days before he died.*

GLOSSARY

band	(ALSO **group**), e.g. Coldplay, Guns N'Roses	**musician**	a person who plays a musical instrument
album	a number of songs, often about ten, on a CD or record	**on tour**	travelling to many different places to play live concerts
CD	(*see picture*)	**live**	(sounds like *five*) If sth is **live**, you see it or hear it at the same time as it happens.
performer	sb who performs music, or acts in the theatre	**festival**	a big event, e.g. concerts or shows, in one place
be able to	If you **are able to** do sth, you can do it; you have the knowledge you need. **ability** *n*	**hit**	a thing that a lot of people like: *The song was a **hit** in the US. **a hit record***
download music	copy music from the internet onto a computer, phone, etc.		

4 **What can you remember? Underline the correct answer.**

▶ Bands record albums onto a ***hit*** / ***CD***.

1 In the past, performers ***made*** / ***didn't make*** money from albums.
2 Downloading music is ***good*** / ***not good*** for most performers.
3 Downloading music is ***more expensive*** / ***cheaper*** than buying CDs.
4 Bands ***go*** / ***don't go*** on tour to make more money.
5 Groups ***are able to*** / ***aren't able to*** perform at music festivals.
6 People ***like*** / ***don't like*** seeing groups live.

5 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ Metallica are still a very famous band/group.

1 Coldplay are planning to go on _____ again next year.
2 I once saw Beyoncé _____ at Carnegie Hall in New York. She was amazing.
3 *Sergeant Pepper* is still the most famous _____ by the Beatles.
4 *You Belong With Me* was a big _____ for Taylor Swift.
5 I bought three _____ last week.
6 Paul McCartney is a great _____. He plays guitar and piano.
7 Adele was the first _____ that I ever saw live.
8 I saw Radiohead and the Foo Fighters at a summer _____ in 2017.
9 David Bowie _____ his last album, *Blackstar*, shortly before he died.
10 With a computer or smartphone, you have the _____ to download music.

6 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 Who's your favourite group/band? _____
2 Do you buy their CDs or download their music? _____
3 Have you ever seen them live? _____
4 What's their best album? _____
5 Do they often go on tour? _____
6 Do they have many hit records? Why? / Why not? _____

TEST YOURSELF

84 Films

A Describing films

A **thriller** is often **exciting.**

A **comedy** is **funny.**

A **war film** is often **violent.**

A **love story** is **romantic.**

An **action film** (ALSO an **adventure film**) is exciting.

A **horror film** is **scary.**

A **cartoon** is often funny.

A **science fiction film** (ALSO **sci-fi**) can be scary.

SPOTLIGHT *What kind/type/sort of . . .?*

- ***What kind of*** *film is it?* ~ *It's a thriller.*
- ***What type of*** *music do you like?* ~ *Rock music.*
- ***What sort of*** *films are exciting?* ~ *Action films.*

1 **Tick the words with the same pronunciation as the <u>underlined</u> letters in *buy, fly, like*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

describe ✓	fiction	science	film
violent	exciting	scary	crime

2 **Complete the kinds of films.**

▶ w<u>a</u>r f<u>i</u>l<u>l</u>m

1 th___ ___ ___le r

2 c___m___ ___ ___

3 ___ct___ ___n f___ ___ ___

4 sc___ ___n___ ___ f___ ___t___ ___n

5 c___ ___t___ ___n

6 l___v___ st___ ___ ___

7 h___r___ ___ ___ f___ ___ ___

3 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ Was the film a thriller?
~ Yes, and quite violent.

1 What s..... of film is it?

2 I went to see an a..... film.

3 What k..... of films do you like?

4 Do you like r..... films?

5 It was a very scary h..... film.

6 Was it a good comedy?
~ Yes, it was f.....

7 The film was a t..... of thriller.

4 **Write one adjective to describe each picture.**

▶ exciting

1 .....

2 .....

3 .....

4 .....

TEST YOURSELF

B What's on?

A **What's on** at the **cinema**?
B There's a film **on** called *Pacific Rim Uprising*.
A What kind of film is it?
B It's a sci-fi **movie**. **It's about** people from another **planet** who arrive on **Earth**. It's had **brilliant reviews**.
A OK. **Who's in it**?
B It **stars** John Boyega – he's the **hero**.
A Oh, I like John Boyega– he's a good **actor**. Who's the **director**?
B Stephen DeKnight. I've never heard of him, actually.
A And **where's it on**?
B The Odeon.
A OK. Well, **let's** go and see it.

GLOSSARY

What's on?	= What films can we see?	**star**	be one of the main actors in a film/programme. The person is a **star**.
cinema	a place where you see films	**hero**	the most important man in a book or film. A woman is a **heroine**.
movie	film	**actor**	e.g. Idris Elba or Meryl Streep. A female actor can also be called an **actress**.
It's about ...	the subject is ...	**director**	a person who makes a film, e.g. Alfred Hitchcock
planet Earth	where we live. Mars and Venus are also **planets**.	**Where's it on?**	= Where can we see the film?
brilliant	*inf* very good	**let's**	used for making a suggestion for sth to do
review	an article about a film in a newspaper or on the internet		
Who's in it?	= Which actors are in the film?		

5 **True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ A film is a movie. T
1 Antonio Banderas is an actress. .....
2 The star is the main actor in a film. .....
3 A review is a kind of article. .....
4 Mars is a planet. .....
5 The heroine is a man. .....
6 The Earth is round. .....
7 Steven Spielberg is an actor. .....

6 **Complete the conversation.**

▶ What 's on at the cinema? ~ An old film called *Dark Star*.
Oh, what sort of film is it? ~ It's a sci-fi movie, but it's also funny.
What's it **(1)** ..... ? ~ I'm not sure, but it's had **(2)** ..... reviews.
OK, and who's **(3)** ..... it? ~ It **(4)** ..... Dan O'Bannon, who plays the **(5)** .....
Oh, I like him. He's a good **(6)** ..... .
Who's the **(7)** ..... ? ~ John Carpenter. He's great.
OK. And where's it **(8)** ..... ? ~ At the ABC cinema.
OK. **(9)** ..... go and see it tonight. ~ Fine.

7 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 What kind of films do you like? .....
2 What was the last film you saw? .....
3 Where was it on? .....
4 Who are the stars of the film? .....
5 Who's the director? .....
6 What's it about? .....

TEST YOURSELF

85 The media

A Media questionnaire

1 What do you **watch on TV / the internet?**

a ☐ **the news**
b ☐ **crime drama**
c ☐ films
d ☐ nothing

2 Why do people read a **newspaper** or look at the news online?

a ☐ to **find out** what has **happened**
b ☐ because it has interesting **articles**
c ☐ for the sports results
d ☐ for the business **news**

3 What do you **listen to on the radio?**

a ☐ the news
b ☐ music **programmes**
c ☐ something else
d ☐ nothing

4 Do you **believe** what you read or hear in the news?

a ☐ yes, **all** of it
b ☐ **most** of it
c ☐ **some** of it
d ☐ no, **none** of it

GLOSSARY

the news [U]	a TV or radio programme about important things happening in the world. **News** [U] is information about things that have just happened.
crime drama	a police story on TV
newspaper	e.g. *The Times, The Washington Post* ALSO **paper**
find out	get information or facts about sth
happen	take place: *We don't know what will **happen** tomorrow.*
article	a piece of writing in a newspaper or magazine, or on the internet
on TV / on the radio	(NOT ~~*in TV / in the radio*~~) ALSO **in the (news)paper**
programme	a TV/radio show, e.g. the news, a comedy
believe	think that sth is true
all (of sth)	100%
most (of sth)	80%
some (of sth)	30-50%
none (of sth)	0%

SPOTLIGHT *watch, see, listen, hear*

We **watch TV**, but we **see** or **watch a programme, a film**, etc.
We **listen to the radio**, but we **hear a programme** or **listen to a programme**.

1 Circle the correct answer. – means that no word is needed.

▶ See ⊖/ ***to*** the film.
1 Read an article ***on*** / ***in*** the paper.
2 Let's listen to ***the*** / ***a*** news.
3 Watch a programme ***in*** / ***on*** TV.
4 Find – / ***out*** what has happened.
5 I heard it ***in*** / ***on*** the radio.
6 See the ***programme*** / ***article*** on TV.
7 Did you hear – / ***to*** the sports results?
8 I heard all – / ***of*** it.
9 I bought ***a newspaper*** / ***the news***.
10 I watched most – / ***of*** it.
11 There's a new ***crime*** / ***news*** drama.

2 Complete the dialogues.

▶ I always *read* a paper at the weekend. ~ But do you read *all* of it?
1 Did you ..... TV last night? ~ Yes, I ..... a programme about dogs.
2 I read the story but I don't ..... it's true. ~ No, ... of it is true. It's completely false.
3 Have you heard the ..... ? ~ No, what's ..... ?
4 Did you ..... to the radio this morning? ~ Yes, I ..... the 8 o'clock news.
5 What's in the ..... this morning? ~ I don't know – I never buy one.
6 What did you watch ..... TV? ~ A new crime ..... . It was good.
7 What did you listen ..... ? ~ Oh, nothing interesting.
8 Did you see anything on Saturday? ~ Yeah, a ..... about climate change.

3 ABOUT YOU **Read the questionnaire again. Tick (✓) your answers, or write a different answer. If possible, ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

B Media vocabulary

Word	Example	Meaning
media	*The **media** often write about famous people.*	TV, radio, newspapers, magazines and the internet
magazine	*Do you read women's **magazines**?*	something you can buy every week or month, e.g. *Time, National Geographic*
opinion	*What's your **opinion** of this story?*	what you think about sth
report	*Journalists **report** the news from all over the world.*	give information on the news. The person is a **reporter/journalist.**
event	*The Olympic Games is a very big **event**.*	something important that happens. It can be good or bad.
die	*Nobody **died** in the accident.*	stop living
war	*The two countries were **at war** for ten years.*	fighting between countries or groups of people. When a **war** ends, there is **peace.**
disaster	*The tsunami was a terrible **disaster.***	something very bad that happens, often when a lot of people die
celebrity (*pl* **celebrities**)	*There were a lot of **celebrities** at the first night of the film.*	a famous person, usually from TV, film or sport
advertisement (ALSO **advert/ad** *inf*)	*There are too many **adverts** on TV and in the papers.*	text, a picture or a short film which tries to sell you sth

4 **Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write *S* or *D*.**

▶ What do the media say about him? / What does the newspaper say about him? D

1 There is peace between the two groups. / There is war between the two groups. .....
2 What's your opinion of the news? / What do you think of the news? .....
3 It was a great event. / It was a great advertisement. .....
4 I read a magazine article. / I read a newspaper article. .....
5 He is reporting from Seoul. / He is a journalist working in Seoul. .....
6 I saw it in an ad. / I saw it in an advertisement. .....
7 She's a TV celebrity. / She's on TV a lot. .....
8 Where did he live? / Where did he die? .....
9 She's a good reporter. / She's a good journalist. .....

5 **Complete the text with words from the table in the correct form.**

The ▶ media is TV, radio, newspapers, **(1)** ..... and the internet. The media **(2)** ..... important **(3)** ..... from around the world, for example, **(4)** ..... like the Asian Tsunami, or **(5)** ..... between different countries. As well as reporting the news, the media give their **(6)** ..... of events round the world. And, of course, **(7)** ..... also like to write about **(8)** ..... such as Taylor Swift and Usain Bolt, and so on.

6 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 What has happened in the news this week? .....
2 What has been an important event in the last five years? .....
3 Do you usually get news from TV, radio, newspapers or the internet? .....
4 Can you think of a popular TV advert now? .....
5 Can you name a famous TV news reporter? .....

86 Books

A Fiction

J.K. Rowling is a famous British **author**. She has written a **series** of **novels** in which the **main character** is a young boy called Harry Potter, who is always **in trouble**. Rowling has also **created** a number of novels about a private **detective** called Cormoran Strike. He's also in trouble a lot because, like Harry Potter, he doesn't like **rules**. But in the end, like Harry, he **solves** the crime or the problem.

GLOSSARY	
fiction	stories that sb writes that are not about real events OPP **non-fiction**
author	a person who writes books or stories SYN **writer**
series	a number of things of the same kind that come one after another: *a TV **series***
novel	a book of fiction
main character	the most important person in a book, film, etc.
create	make sth new happen or be
detective	a person who tries to find out who did a crime; usually a police officer
rule	sth that tells you what you must or must not do: *school **rules***. If you **break a rule**, you do sth you mustn't do.
solve	find the answer to a question or problem **solution** *n*

SPOTLIGHT *trouble*

Trouble *(often singular)* means difficulty, problems or worry:

- *I **had** a lot of **trouble** find**ing** a job.*

If you **are in trouble**, you are in a situation which is dangerous or where you have problems, often with parents, the police or a boss.

1 True or false? Write *T* or *F*.

▶ A series is more than one. T

1 *Non-fiction* and *fiction* are the same thing. .....
2 An *author* is a *writer*. .....
3 A *detective* is often a policeman. .....
4 If you are *in trouble*, that's good. .....
5 The *main character* in a book is the most important person. .....
6 *Rules* are things that you must do and follow. .....
7 A *novel* is a book of real events. .....
8 If you *solve* something, you find an answer to a problem. .....
9 If you *create* something, you break it. .....
10 A *solution* to a problem is an answer. .....

2 Complete the text.

Adrian McKinty is an Irish ▶ author who has written a **(1)** ..... of crime **(2)** ..... . The main **(3)** ..... in these stories is a **(4)** ..... called Sean Duffy, but he isn't a typical policeman. McKinty has **(5)** ..... a character who often breaks **(6)** ....., and because of this, he's often in **(7)** ..... with his bosses. But in the end, of course, he always **(8)** ..... the crime.

3 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or talk to another student.

1 A famous author from your country who writes novels. .....
2 A novel that this person has written. .....
3 A popular series on TV in your country. .....
4 One of the main characters in this TV series. .....
5 The name of a famous detective in fiction. .....
6 A rule that you sometimes break or have broken. .....

TEST YOURSELF

B Fact and fiction

Mary Shelley is a famous English writer from the 19th century. **In the past**, she was **mostly** famous for the novel *Frankenstein*, but in **recent** years, people have **realized** that she **achieved** much more. **In fact**, she wrote a **variety** of books, **including** novels, short stories, travel books and biographies (stories about other people's lives). During her life, she also **tried** to **publish** work written by her husband, Percy Bysshe Shelley, who died when he was only 29.

GLOSSARY	
in the past	in the time before now
mostly	almost all: *My students are **mostly** Japanese.* SYN **mainly**
recent	that happened or began only a short time ago
realize	understand and know something: *I studied law, but I **realize** now that it was a mistake.*
achieve	do sth well after trying hard: *She **achieved** a lot in her life.*
in fact	often used for introducing more information
variety	a lot of different things
including	with: *There were 12, **including** me.* (= 11 plus me)
try	If you **try** to do sth, you work hard to do it: *I **tried** to call Clara yesterday, but she was busy all day.*
publish	prepare a book so you can sell it

4 **Circle the two words that have the same sound underlined. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ (past) / (arm) / at

1 mine / same / mainly
2 mostly / hot / home
3 fit / realize / fine
4 achieve / child / receive
5 pull / butter / publish
6 man / variety / another
7 blue / run / including
8 recent / red / see

5 **Circle the correct answer.**

▶ *In the past* is ***around*** / (***before***) now.

1 *Including you* is ***with you*** / ***without you.***
2 If you *realize* something, you ***know it*** / ***don't know it.***
3 If you *achieve* something, that's ***bad*** / ***good.***
4 A *variety* is ***one thing*** / ***lots of different things.***
5 If you *publish* a book, it ***is*** / ***isn't*** ready to sell.
6 If something is *recent*, it happened a ***long*** / ***short*** time ago.
7 I *mostly* work means the same as I ***possibly*** / ***mainly*** work.
8 You use *in fact* to give ***more information*** / ***an example of something.***

6 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ The book isn't difficult. In fact, it's a very easy book to read, and also quite short.

1 In the p_____, bookshops were closed on Sundays, but now they are m_____ open.
2 I've got ten books in English, i_____ this one.
3 I wanted to buy a dictionary, but I r_____ I didn't have enough money.
4 The company p_____ Maria's first book last year, and it is selling very well.
5 You will find a wide v_____ of books on cooking in this shop.
6 He t_____ many times to write a novel. Finally at the age of 36, he a_____ it. Now he's a famous author.

TEST YOURSELF

87 Arranging a holiday

A Things you need to do

Things you **might** do or **arrange** before you **go on holiday**:

* **book** the flight
* book the **accommodation**
* **check** your **passport** [1]
* get **foreign** money
* **pack** your **suitcase**

GLOSSARY

arrange	plan and organize sth
holiday	a period of rest from work or school
(go) on holiday	If you **go on holiday** or **are on holiday**, you are not at work and you are usually away from home.
book	arrange to do or have sth, e.g. a table at a restaurant
flight	a journey by plane **fly** *v pt* **flew** *pp* **flown**
accommodation [U]	a place to stay, e.g. a hotel
check	look at sth to see it is right, good or safe
foreign	of another country
pack	put clothes in a suitcase
suitcase	a large bag you put your clothes in when you travel

SPOTLIGHT *might* + verb

Might means 'it is possible that / perhaps'. **Might** is the same in all forms.

- *You **might** be ill on holiday.* = It's possible that you will be ill.
- *He **might** forget his passport.* ■ *He **might** be on holiday now.*

1 **Match 1–6 with a–g.**

▶	fly	e	
1	book	.....	a on holiday
2	get foreign	.....	b the accommodation
3	pack	.....	c your passport
4	arrange	.....	d money
5	go	.....	e to Rome airport ✓
6	check	.....	f your suitcase
			g a flight

2 **Complete the text.**

I'm going on ▶ holiday for two weeks this Saturday. I finally decided to go to Turkey, so I booked the **(1)** ..... with Turkish Airlines. I needed **(2)** ..... too, so I looked on the internet for hotels in Izmir. I found a nice one and **(3)** ..... to stay there for the first week. After that, we're not sure but we **(4)** ..... go and stay near the beach. I also got some **(5)** ..... money. I'm very organized, so I have already **(6)** ..... that my passport is OK, and I have also **(7)** ..... my suitcase. I'm ready to go. Unfortunately, my husband is not so organized. He never looks at his passport and won't pack his **(8)** ..... until the night before we travel.

3 ABOUT YOU **Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.**

When you go on holiday …

▶ do you arrange it yourself, or does somebody else do it? I don't do it. My wife does. She usually arranges everything.

1 do you usually book a flight a long time before you travel? Why? / Why not? .....

2 do you usually need to book accommodation? Why? / Why not? .....

3 do you usually get foreign money before you travel? .....

4 do you always pack your suitcase yourself? .....

5 do you often check your passport? .....

TEST YOURSELF

B Booking accommodation

A Hotel Metropole. How can I help you?

B Oh, good morning. I'd like to book a room for next Friday please, that's the 24th.

A OK. Yes, we have rooms **available**. **Single** or **double**?

B A double room, please.

A OK. A double room is £90 **a night**, and all our rooms are **en suite**.

B Good. And is breakfast **extra**?

A No, breakfast is **included**.

B OK, great. How about **parking**?

A **I'm afraid** we don't have parking at the hotel.

B **Oh dear!**

A But there's a car park very near.

B OK, well **it doesn't matter**. Yes, I'll take the room.

A Fine. Could I just take a few **details** then …

double room

single room

GLOSSARY

available	ready for you to use, have or see
(£90) **a night**	= (£90) for one night ALSO (£90) **a week/a month**
en suite	a bedroom with a bathroom
extra	more than is usual: *You pay an **extra** £20 for a large room.*
include	have sth or sb as part of sth else: *The meal will be about £30, but that **includes** service.*
parking	a place to leave a car
I'm afraid	= I'm sorry (NOT ~~*I'm afraid but*~~) **I'm afraid not** = I'm sorry but no.
Oh dear!	used for showing that you are surprised or unhappy about sth
it doesn't matter	= it isn't important
details	information, e.g. your name, address, phone number

4 Is this good news? Write *Yes* or *No*.

▶ There is parking. Yes
1 I'm afraid … .....
2 The room's en suite. .....
3 Breakfast is extra. .....
4 There are rooms available. .....
5 Oh dear! .....
6 Breakfast is included. .....
7 I'm afraid not. .....

5 Match 1–5 with a–f.

▶ Breakfast c
1 book .....
2 I'm afraid .....
3 It doesn't .....
4 Oh .....
5 £100 .....

a matter.
b dear!
c is included. ✓
d a room
e a week
f not.

6 Complete the dialogue. Write one word in each space.

A Regent Hotel, can I ▶ help you?
B Oh, hello. Do you have any rooms **(1)** ..... for this weekend?
A Would you like a **(2)** ..... room or a **(3)** ..... ?
B A double, please.
A OK. All our rooms are **(4)** ..... .
B Good. Is that with a bath and shower?
A Just a shower.
B Oh **(5)** ..... – I prefer baths. Oh well, it doesn't **(6)** ..... . A shower's OK.
A And a double room is €75 **(7)** ..... night.
B That's fine. And does that **(8)** ..... breakfast?
A No, I'm **(9)** ..... not. Breakfast is **(10)** ..... .
B Right. And what about **(11)** ..... ?
A Yes, there is a car park at the hotel. Is there anything else?
B No, that's great. I'd like to book the room.
A Fine. Could you just give me a few **(12)** ..... , please?

TEST YOURSELF

88 Hotels

A Describe a hotel

travel blog

Atlanta Hotel (VILNIUS Lithuania)

When we **went on a trip** to Lithuania, we **stayed** at this hotel near the Old Town. The bedrooms were good, and the **service** was **excellent**: everyone was friendly and very **helpful** with all the information that **tourists** need. There was also a café bar where we could meet and **chat** to other **guests**. I would **definitely recommend** both Vilnius and the Atlanta for a short **stay**.

GLOSSARY

trip	a journey to a place and back again: *go on a **trip***	**tourist**	sb who goes to a place on holiday **tourism** *n*
stay (at a hotel)	live for a short time (in a hotel) **stay** *n*	**chat**	talk in a friendly informal way to sb **chat** *n*
service [U]	the work that sb does for guests in a hotel, customers in a shop or restaurant, etc.	**guest**	a person staying in a hotel or your home
		definitely	for sure; 100% SYN **certainly**
excellent	very good: *an **excellent** student/musician*	**recommend**	tell sb that a thing or a person is good
helpful	wanting to help		

1 **Circle the correct answer.**

▶ We ***lived*** / ***stayed*** at a hotel for our holiday.

1 We ***went on*** / ***made*** a trip to India last month.

2 It was lovely – I ***recommend*** / ***don't recommend*** it.

3 The dinner was ***excellent*** / ***helpful***.

4 A lot of ***tourists*** / ***guests*** visit our city.

5 It was great, so I ***definitely*** / ***possibly*** want to go again.

6 We had a short ***service*** / ***stay*** in Budapest last year.

7 I think ***service*** / ***tourism*** is important to Lithuania.

8 We often ***stay*** / ***chat*** to other guests in the hotel in the evening.

2 **Complete the text.**

Last month we had a short ▶ stay in Amsterdam. We were at quite a small hotel, but all the people who worked there spoke **(1)** ..... English, and they were very **(2)** ..... . They told us about the best places for **(3)** ..... to visit such as the Van Gogh Museum, and they also introduced us to other **(4)** ..... who were **(5)** ..... at the hotel. If you are thinking of going to Amsterdam, I would **(6)** ..... this hotel, and you should **(7)** ..... go to the Van Gogh Museum while you are there.

3 ABOUT YOU **Complete the questions.**

▶ What was the last hotel you stayed at ..... ? I stayed in the Hotel Victoria in Turin.

1 How long did you ..... there? .....

2 Was the ..... good? .....

3 Did you ..... to other guests in the hotel? .....

4 Would you ..... this hotel to other people? .....

5 Was the place popular with ..... ? .....

4 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

B In a hotel

A hotel guest might ask these questions:

Could I have my **key**, please?
It's room 402.
When do you **serve** breakfast?
Could I **pay my bill**, please?
Can I **change** money here?
Can I **leave** my luggage here?
Could you **call** a taxi, please?
Do I **have to** pay now?

The hotel receptionist might say or ask:

Could you just **sign** here, please?
You can **collect** your passport later.
You **have to check out of** your room by 10 o'clock.
Breakfast is served **until** 9.30.

GLOSSARY

key	
serve	give food or drink to sb
pay	give sb money for work or services
bill	a piece of paper that shows how much money you must pay, e.g. in a hotel or restaurant
change (money)	If you give sb pounds (£), and they **change** them **into** dollars, they give you dollars for the pounds.
leave sth somewhere	let sth or sb stay in the same place ***leave*** *the door open*
call	phone sb (**make**) **a call** *n*
sign	write your name on a form or letter
collect	go and get sth from a place
check out	pay the bill and leave a hotel OPP **check in**
until	up to a certain time SYN **till**

SPOTLIGHT *have to* + verb

Have to is used for saying that somebody must do something or that something must happen.

- *You **have to** pay the hotel bill when you leave.*
- ***Do I have to** pay for breakfast? ~ No, breakfast is included.*
- *You **don't have to** work on Sunday, but you can if you want.*

5 Match 1–6 with a–g.

▶	change c	**a**	the bill
1	call	**b**	food
2	pay	**c**	money ✓
3	sign	**d**	a bag in the hotel
4	leave	**e**	a ticket from the station
5	serve	**f**	a form
6	collect	**g**	a taxi

6 Complete the sentences.

▶ If you want to get in your room, you need a key.
1 If you write your name on a form, you ..... it.
2 If your room is hot at night, you can ..... the window open.
3 If you want to get somewhere quickly, you can ..... a taxi.
4 If you're leaving a hotel or restaurant, you have to ..... the bill.
5 If you give food and drink to people, you ..... them.
6 If you have pounds (£) and want euros (€), you need to ..... some money.
7 If you go to a place to get a key, you ..... it.
8 When you arrive at the hotel, you ..... in at reception.

7 Complete the dialogues.

▶ I'm leaving now, so could I pay the bill? ~ Yes, of course.
1 Can I have my ....., please? ~ Of course. What's your room number?
2 Do the shops close at 5.30? ~ No, they're open ..... 7.30.
3 Excuse me, what time do you ..... lunch? ~ From 12.00 to 2.00.
4 Will I ..... to get a taxi to the airport? ~ No, you don't ..... to. There is a bus from the hotel that will take you to the airport.
5 When do I have to leave my room and pay? ~ You have to check ..... by 10 a.m.
6 I'd like to go to the train station. Could you ..... a taxi for me? ~ Yes, of course.

TEST YOURSELF

89 Airports

A Check-in

Some **passengers** buy a ticket online and **print** a **boarding pass** 24 hours before they fly. Some passengers print a **boarding pass** at a **ticket machine** when they **reach** the airport. Some get one at the **check-in desk**. You need to **check in** if you have a lot of **luggage** (e.g. suitcases and bags), but you can take some **hand luggage** on the plane with you. After check-in, you can go through **security**, then look for the **gate** number where your flight leaves from and wait to **board** the plane.

GLOSSARY

print	put words or pictures onto paper using a machine
boarding pass	a card that you must show when you get on a plane or ship SYN **boarding card**
reach	arrive somewhere
check-in *n*	(*see picture*) **check in** *v*: *You **check in** at the **check-in desk**.*
hand luggage	a bag you can take on the plane with you
security	the place in an airport where people check you and your hand luggage
gate	in an airport, the place near your plane where you wait to get on
board	walk onto a plane, ship or bus

SPOTLIGHT *airports*

An **airport** is a place where people get on and off **planes/aeroplanes**. An **airline** is a company that takes people by plane to different places.

1 Complete the words.

▶ p a s s enger
1 b___ ___rd
2 ch___ ___ ___-i___
3 b___ ___ ___d___ ___g c___ ___d
4 ae___ ___pl___ ___ ___
5 a___ ___p___ ___t
6 h___nd l___gg___ge
7 a___ ___l___ ___e
8 s___c___ ___it___

2 Make five more phrases from the words in the box.

airline ✓	boarding	desk	board	check-in	pass
ticket	company ✓	luggage	machine	the plane	hand

▶ airline company ....
....

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ We flew in a large aeroplane .....
1 There were a lot of ..... waiting at the ..... desk.
2 If we hurry, we'll ..... the airport by 3.30.
3 I printed my ..... card at home, and I only had hand ....., so I didn't need to ..... in when I got to the airport.
4 I went to ..... 7, but I sat there for half an hour before we could ..... the plane.
5 Heathrow and Charles de Gaulle are very busy ..... .
6 If you don't have a boarding pass, you can ..... one at the ticket ..... .
7 I had a lot of ..... : a large suitcase and a heavy bag as well.

4 ABOUT YOU Are these sentences true for you?

▶ I travel by plane a lot. No, I don't travel by plane very much.
1 I usually use the same airline when I fly. .....
2 I usually print my boarding pass at home. .....
3 When I reach the airport, the first thing I do is have a coffee. .....
4 I want to go through security very quickly. .....
5 I like to be one of the first people to board the plane. .....
6 I like to sit at the front of the plane. .....

TEST YOURSELF

B Departure and arrival

You **get on / board** the plane.

You **fasten your seat belt.**

The plane **takes off.**

Flight attendants provide food and drinks.

The plane **lands** and passengers get off.

Somebody **checks** your passport.

You **collect** your luggage and **leave** the airport.

GLOSSARY	
departure	leaving a place
arrival	coming to a place: *There's always someone to meet me* ***on arrival.*** **arrive** *v*
provide	give sth to sb who needs it
check	look at sth to see if it is correct or good: ***check*** *your ticket* (NOT ~~*control your ticket*~~)
collect	go and take sth from a place

5 **Cover the pictures and put the phrases in order. Write numbers in the boxes.**

You collect your luggage. ☐
You get on the plane. 1
You get off the plane. ☐
You fasten your seat belt. ☐
Someone checks your passport. ☐
The plane lands. ☐
You leave the airport. ☐
The plane takes off. ☐
Flight attendants provide drinks. ☐

6 **Complete the text.**

I don't like sitting in airports, and now you often have to ▶ arrive at the airport two hours before **(1)** ..... , which is terrible. When I **(2)** ..... the plane, the first thing I do is **(3)** ..... my seat belt. I then sit nervously until the plane **(4)** ..... . Fortunately, the **(5)** ..... attendants are usually very kind, and always **(6)** ..... food and drinks, but I'm so nervous I can't eat anything. I only feel safe when the plane has **(7)** ..... . On **(8)** ..... , I'm very happy when someone has **(9)** ..... my passport, so that I can **(10)** ..... my luggage and **(11)** ..... the airport with my brother, who usually meets me.

7 ABOUT YOU **Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.**

▶ What's the first thing you do when you get on a plane? I fasten my seatbelt.
1 How do you feel when the plane takes off? .....
2 Do you always eat the food the airlines provide? .....
3 How do you feel when the plane lands? .....
4 Do you usually need to collect luggage, or do you travel with hand luggage? .....

TEST YOURSELF

90 Types of holiday

A A beach holiday

For many years, we **used to** go to Hyères – a **typical** little town by the sea in the south of France. We used to **fly** to Nice, then get a bus to Hyères, where we stayed in an apartment. In the mornings, I was happy to sit on the **beach**[1] near the **rocks**[2] and read and write **postcards**, **while** my husband used to go out on a **boat**[3] or go swimming - the **sea**[4] was lovely and warm. We usually had lunch in the apartment, then **relaxed** for **a couple of** hours. In the evening, there were nice restaurants near the beach where we could have dinner.

GLOSSARY

typical	Something that is **typical** is a good example of its kind.
fly *pt* **flew** *pp* **flown**	travel by plane
postcard	a card with a picture on one side. You write on the other side and then send it by post.
while	at the same time as: *Max watched TV **while** I cooked dinner.*
relax	do nothing and enjoy yourself
a couple of (hours/days, etc.)	two or maybe three (hours/days, etc.)

SPOTLIGHT *used to* + verb

We use **used to** + **verb** to talk about something that happened often or was true in the past, but not now.

- *I **used to live** in New York, but now I live in London.*
- *My father **used to be** a police officer; now he works in a bank.*

1 Write five more things that the wife, the husband, or both of them used to do on their holiday.

▶ They used to fly to Nice.
1 .....
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....

2 Complete the sentences.

▶ Bournemouth is a typical place for a beach holiday in England.
1 We stayed there for a ..... of weeks.
2 We just sat on the ..... and looked at the sea.
3 I would like to go on a ..... on the river.
4 We sat on the ..... at the back of the beach. You could see more from there.
5 My idea of a perfect holiday is to ..... and do nothing.
6 We ..... from London to Rome, then took a train for the rest of the journey.
7 My cousin didn't like beach holidays. He ..... to go to the mountains every year.

3 One word is missing in each line of the text. What is it and where does it go?

▶ We had lovely / in France when — holidays
I was a child. We to stay in Cassis — 1 .....
usually for a couple weeks. Every — 2 .....
morning I to swim a lot, but I also — 3 .....
played with my dad, my mum — 4 .....
wrote lots of to family and friends. — 5 .....
That was a day. — 6 .....

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

▶ Where did you go for holidays as a child? We used to have beach holidays in England or Spain.
1 Did you go to several places or the same place? .....
2 How long did you usually go for? .....
3 Did you ever go on a boat? .....
4 Do you enjoy relaxing on holiday, or do you do many things? .....

TEST YOURSELF

B A sightseeing holiday

Tourist questionnaire

When you **go sightseeing** on holiday do you:

* buy a **map**[1] of the town? Yes / No
* buy a **guidebook**? Yes / No
* **go on a guided tour** with a **guide**? Yes / No
* **prefer to** go sightseeing on your own? Yes / No
* **visit** museums and art galleries? Yes / No
* like to **look round?** Yes / No
* **take** lots of **photos**[2]? Yes / No
* often **get lost?** Yes / No

What is your **ideal** place for a sightseeing holiday? .....

GLOSSARY

go sightseeing	go as a tourist to look at interesting buildings and places	**prefer to do sth**	like to do one thing more than another
guidebook	a book that describes a place for tourists	**visit**	go to see a person or place for a short time **visit** *n*
tour	a short visit around a town or building; **go on a guided tour** visit a place with a person who tells you about it	**look round**	visit a place
		get lost	If you **get lost** or **are lost**, you don't know where you are.
guide	a person who gives a guided tour and tells tourists about places	**ideal**	the best or exactly right SYN **perfect**

5 **Circle the correct word.**

▶ prefer *to go* / *go*

1 *go* / *have* sightseeing
2 a *guide map* / *guidebook*
3 *go on* / *make* a tour
4 *visit* / *go* a museum
5 *guide* / *guided* tour
6 *make* / *take* photos
7 look *round* / *about* a place
8 *a guide* / *an ideal* holiday

6 **Complete the sentences with one word.**

▶ We went on a guided tour.

1 She took a lot of ..... of old buildings in the town centre.
2 We ..... on a tour of the town, and the ..... was interesting and very funny.
3 I ..... lost because I didn't have a ..... .
4 We went ..... the day after we arrived. It was quite tiring.
5 I don't like ..... tours of places – I ..... to visit places on my own.
6 You get a lot of useful information in a ..... .
7 Do you want to go on on a guided ..... ?
8 I want to ..... the Science Museum when I'm in London.
9 My sister can never find her way – she often ..... lost.
10 I like to look ..... a place and ..... lots of photos.
11 A beach holiday is ..... for families with young children.
12 When you're on holiday, do you prefer to ..... round on your own?

7 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to the tourist questionnaire, or ask another student.**

TEST YOURSELF

91 Meet and greet

A Introductions

Liam and Sienna meet for the first time …

… and two hours later …

GLOSSARY

greet	say hello when you meet a new person or a friend **greeting** *n*
introduce sb (to sb)	bring people together for the first time and say their names **introduction** *n*
This is …	When we introduce people, we say **this is** Liam, etc. (NOT ~~*he/she is*~~ OR ~~*here is*~~)
hi	*inf* hello
welcome	If sb is **welcome**, you are happy to see them: ***Welcome to** our home!* **welcome** *v, n: He **welcomed** us. They gave us a warm **welcome**.*
bye	a short form of *goodbye*
hope to (see you again)	used for saying that you want sth to happen

SPOTLIGHT introductions

You often use **Nice to meet you** or **Good to meet you** when you meet people for the first time, and when you say goodbye after the first time you meet them.

How do you do? was common in the past, but is now very formal and not used very much.

1 **Make correct sentences from the words.**

▶ do / how / do / you — How do you do ?
1 meet / nice / hello / you / to — .
2 this / Max / Emma / is — .
3 again / hope / you / bye / to / see — .
4 you / goodbye / to / nice / meet — .

2 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ Bye is just a short form of goodbye.
1 When we ..... somebody to another person, we say: 'This is (Sophy)'.
2 We often ..... hands when we meet people for the first time.
3 When we ..... friends, we usually say *hello* or *hi*.
4 ..... and greetings are often different in other countries and languages.
5 When we visit my aunt and uncle, they always give us a warm ..... .
6 *Hello* and *Hi* are common ..... in English.

3 **Complete the dialogues.**

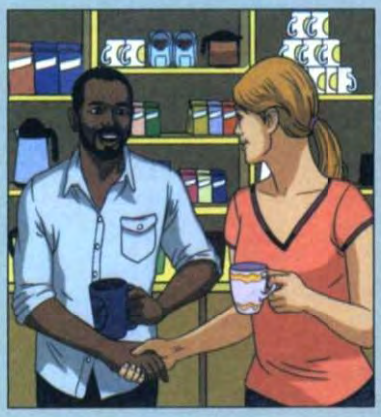
1 LUCY Emma, ▶ this is Alex.
EMMA ..... .
ALEX Hi. ..... to ..... you.

2 EMMA Goodbye, Alex. Hope to see you ..... .
ALEX Yes. .....

3 MAX Lucy, ... is Dan.
LUCY Hi, Dan. Good to ..... . And ..... to Cambridge.
DAN Thank you.

4 LUCY Bye, Dan. ..... to see you again. Have a good journey.
DAN Thanks. ..... .

B Meeting a friend



Matt meets his friend Tess in a café.

Matt Hi, Tess. **How are you?**
Tess **Fine, thanks.** And you?
Matt Yeah, **very well.**
Tess Good. And how's Sarah?
Matt She's in bed, actually.
Tess **Oh! What's the matter?**
Matt Flu, I think.
Tess **Oh dear!**

An hour later they say 'goodbye'.

Tess **Anyway,** Matt, **I've got to** go now. **See you later.**
Matt Yeah. About 7.00?
Tess Yes, that's fine.
Matt Good. **See you then.**
Tess Sure. And **give my love to** Sarah. Hope she gets better soon.
Matt Yes, I **will.**

GLOSSARY

How are you?	You say this to a friend when you meet. ALSO **How are things?**
fine	OR **very well** OR **good** OR **not bad** are common replies to *'How are you?'*. (NOT ~~very fine~~)
oh!	used for showing a strong feeling, e.g. when you're surprised or afraid
What's the matter?	= What's the problem?
Oh dear!	sth you say if you are surprised or sad
anyway	a word you can use when you start to talk about sth different
have got to do sth	have to do/must do **Have got to** is more informal than **have to**. It is usually contracted, e.g. ***I've got to** go.*
give my love to sb	say a big, warm hello to sb
will	You use **will** when you agree or promise to do sth.

SPOTLIGHT *see you ...*

We say this when we know we will meet someone again.

See you later is usually the same day. Other common expressions are: **see you soon**, **see you** (next Saturday, etc.), **see you then**, etc.

4 **Complete the phrases.**

▶ H o w a r e y o u ?
1 S___ ___ you tomorrow.
2 He's v___ ___y w___ ___l.
3 Wh___ ___'___ the m___ ___ ___ ___ ___?
4 S___ ___ you l___t___ ___.
5 S___ ___ you s___ ___ ___.
6 H___w ___r___ th___ ___ ___s?
7 G___ ___ ___ my l___ ___ ___ to Suki.
8 I'v___ g___t t___ go n___w.
9 Th___ ___'s f___n___.

5 **Replace the <u>underlined</u> words with another word or words that have the same meaning.**

ROB <u>Hello</u>. ▶ Hi ..... How are <u>you</u>? .....
FINN <u>Good</u>. And you? .....
ROB Hmm, not great.
FINN What's the <u>problem</u>? .....
ROB I <u>have to</u> work all weekend. .....
FINN Oh <u>no</u>. .....
ROB Yes, so I can't come on Sunday. But <u>say hello</u> to Elle. .....
FINN Yes, I <u>promise</u>. .....

6 **Cover the conversations above and complete the dialogues. Don't use the same word more than once.**

1 JIM Hi, How ▶ are you ?
SAM I'm very ..... . And you?
JIM Yeah, ...
And ..... your wife?
SAM She's ..... .

2 JIM ....., Sam, I .....
..... go now.
SAM OK. See you ..... .
JIM Sure. What time?
SAM 6.30.
JIM Yeah, ... fine. See you ..... .

TEST YOURSELF

92 Ask for information

A About people

Who do you live with, Tracey? ~ My parents, and my younger brother.
And **what's** your brother **like**? ~ He's OK – he's quite funny.
And your boyfriend – **what does** he **do**? ~ He works for an airline company.
How long have you known him? ~ About two years.
And you're learning Spanish. **How often** do you study? ~ **Twice** a week.
And **why** Spanish? ~ Because we want to live in Spain.
Whose idea was it to live in Spain? ~ My boyfriend's.
OK. But what do you think? ~ **Yeah**, I think it's a good idea.
What kind of work can you do in Spain? ~ I can probably get a job in a restaurant.

GLOSSARY

twice (a week/ month, etc.)	two times every week/month, etc.
idea	a plan or a new thought: *It was a good **idea** to arrive early.*
yeah *inf*	yes
kind (of sth)	a group of things or people that are the same in some way SYNS **sort/ type**: *What **kind/sort/type of** books do you read?*

SPOTLIGHT *whose* and *belong to someone*

***Whose** money **is that**?*	*~ It's **mine**.* = It's my money.
***Who does** that money **belong to**?*	*~ It **belongs to** my brother.*
***Whose** is this bag?*	*~ It's Ben's.* = The bag **belongs to** Ben.
***Who does** this bag **belong to**?*	*~ It's Ben's.*

1 Make correct questions from the words.

▶ for / do / work / who / you — Who do you work for ?
1 you / often / there / go / how / do — ?
2 like / what / music / do / sort of / you — ?
3 he / does / what / do — ?
4 have / lived / how long / there / you — ?
5 type of / do / watch / what / films / you — ?
6 this / to / belong / does / who — ?
7 his / like / what's / flat — ?
8 like / you / why / her / do — ?

2 Find the right question in Exercise 1 for these answers.

▶ Because she's very kind. 8
a Ten years. .....
b I like romantic movies. .....
c It's small but very nice. .....
d Twice a year. .....
e It's mine. .....
f He's a doctor. .....
g Rock and pop. .....

3 Complete the dialogues with one word in each space.

▶ Why did you leave your job? ~ Because I didn't like it.
1 How do you go to Italy? ~ a year.
2 jacket is this? ~ It's . I bought it yesterday.
3 's Alicia like? ~ She's very nice.
4 Do you speak German? ~ , a bit.
5 Who does this to? ~ I think it's Mark's.
6 What of animal is it? ~ I think it's a horse.
7 Do you want to go out this evening? ~ Yeah, that's a good .
8 How have you worked there? ~ Six months.

TEST YOURSELF

B About places

How long is it open? (= how many hours?)

What do you **recommend**? (= What do you think is good?)

What time / When does the palace **close/shut**? (OPP **open**)

How far is it to the river? (= how many metres?)

Where's the nearest bank? (= Where's the first bank from here?)

How many places can we visit with this ticket? (= what number?)

Is the castle **worth seeing**? (= Do you recommend the castle?)

How much are the tickets? (= How much money?)

Which restaurant do you recommend?

SPOTLIGHT *which or what?*

Use **which** when there is a small number of possibilities.

- *We have a double room or a single.* ***Which*** *would you like?* (There are only two possibilities.)

In other situations with more possibilities, use **what**.

- ***What's*** *the address of the hotel?* (NOT ~~*Which is the address?*~~)

4 Circle the correct answer.

▶ *When time* / *What time* does it close?

1 ***Which*** / ***What*** is your address?
2 How ***long*** / ***long time*** do you need?
3 What ***hour*** / ***time*** does it open?
4 How ***many*** / ***much*** places did you visit?
5 Where's the ***next*** / ***nearest*** café?
6 Is the museum worth ***to see*** / ***seeing***?
7 There are two films. ***What*** / ***Which*** do you prefer?
8 How ***far*** / ***long*** is it to the museum?

5 Complete the questions.

▶ When does the post office open?

1 How _____ is it to the station?
2 It opens at 8.00, but when does it _____ ?
3 How _____ places did you go to?
4 Is it _____ going to see Angkor Wat?
5 We've got two or three types of pen. _____ one do you want?
6 Where's the _____ underground station?
7 _____'s the phone number of the bank?
8 There's a lot to see. What do you _____ ?

6 ABOUT YOUR TOWN **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 Where do you live? _____
2 How long have you lived there? _____
3 Which places are worth visiting? _____
4 How far are they from your home? _____
5 Can you recommend any restaurants? _____
6 Where's the nearest restaurant? _____

TEST YOURSELF

93 Requests and permission

A Requests and responses

Requests (in the classroom)	Responses
Can you bring[1] the dictionaries here, **please?**	✓ Yes, **of course.** **Sure.** Yeah, **no problem.**
Could you finish this exercise for homework, **please?**	
Yuri, **could you take**[2] these books to the library?	
Elena, can you **change places** with Gabi, **please?**	✗ (No), **I'm afraid I can't.**
Could you **lend** me a pen, Oleg?	
Please make sure you **put** the books **back.**	

SPOTLIGHT being polite

In English, it is **polite** to say **please** when you ask a person for something, and to say **thank you** if the person says *yes*.

I'm afraid is a polite way to say *no*, and to say you are sorry about something.

- ***I'm afraid*** *I can't come this evening.*
- *Can you come this evening?* ~ ***I'm afraid not.***

Can and **could** are both used for requests. **Could** is a bit more polite.

GLOSSARY

1 **bring** 2 **take**

request	asking for sth in a polite way
response	an answer to sb or sth **respond** *v*
finish	do/complete the last part of sth
change places	e.g. Elena sits in Gabi's seat, and Gabi sits in Elena's seat
lend	give sth to sb to use for a short time
make sure (you do sth)	be certain (that you do sth)
put sth back	return sth to its place
I'm afraid I can't	= I'm sorry, but I can't. (NOT ~~*I'm afraid but I can't.*~~)

1 Complete the dialogues with one word in each space.

▶ Can you clean the board, please ?

1 Can lend a pen, please? ~ Yes, of .
2 Could you the books here, ? ~ Yeah, no .
3 you lend me some money? ~ No, I'm not. I don't have any.
4 Is it to say ***please*** and ***thank you*** in English? ~ Yes, it is.
5 Do you often use ***sure*** and ***no problem***? ~ Yes, they're common to requests in English.
6 Can I this book home tonight? ~ Yes, but please it back tomorrow.
7 I must sure I remember Katya's book next week.
8 Do you use ***can*** and ***could*** for in English? ~ Yes. ***Could*** is a bit more .
9 We have to all the books back on the shelf when we finish the lesson.

2 Write requests and responses using *can* and *could*, and different responses.

▶ put / books / over there
A Could you put these books over there, please?
B Yes, sure.

1 finish / exercise / homework
A
B

2 Luca / change places / Maria
A
B

3 bring / notebook / tomorrow
A
B

4 lend / pencil
A
B

5 take / books / library
A
B

6 finish / essay / Monday
A
B

TEST YOURSELF

B Asking for and giving permission

SPOTLIGHT *lend* and *borrow*

If you **borrow** a pen **from** someone, you use their pen, then give it back.

If you **lend** someone a pen, or **lend** a pen **to** someone, you give them your pen to use for a short time.

- ***Could I borrow your pen?* = *Could you lend me your pen?***

GLOSSARY

permission	allowing sb to do sth; telling them it is OK to do sth: *She gave me **permission** to leave class early.*
go ahead / that's fine	You say **go ahead** or **that's fine** when you give sb permission to do sth. ALSO **of course / no problem**
all right	OK
Do you mind if ...?	= Is it a problem for you if ...? (The answer **No, go ahead** means 'It's not a problem'.)

3 **Write new sentences. Change only the bold words. The meaning must stay the same.**

▶ **Can** we sit down? Is it OK if we ..... sit down?

1 Is it **OK** if I use this dictionary? .....

2 **Is it OK** if I make a coffee? .....

3 **Can** I stay for another ten minutes? .....

4 Is it OK **to** close the window? .....

5 Can **you lend me** your book? .....

6 Can I sit here? ~ Yes, **of course**. .....

7 Can I use the computer? ~ I'm **sorry but** I need it. .....

8 Is it OK if I have my coffee here? ~ Yes, **sure**. .....

4 **Ask for permission in these situations. Use the word in CAPITALS.**

▶	You want to sit near the window	CAN	Can I sit near the window?
1	You want to go at one o'clock today.	MIND	..... ?
2	You want to borrow a piece of paper.	COULD	..... ?
3	You want to go to the toilet.	OK	..... ?
4	You want to sit in a different seat.	ALL RIGHT	..... ?
5	You want somebody to lend you a pen.	CAN	..... ?

5 **Find five more responses in the box to the question below.**

no	ahead	fine	afraid	problem	of	I	it
need	sure ✓	that's	yes ✓	go	I'm	course	

Could I possibly borrow your car tomorrow?

▶ Yes, ... sure. .....

1 ....

2 ....

3 ....

4 ....

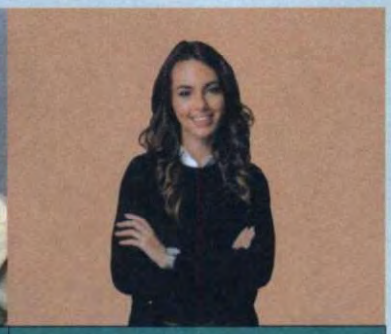
5 ....

....

TEST YOURSELF

94 Invitations and suggestions

A Inviting people



Inviting	Saying yes
Would you like to …	**Yes, great!**
Do you want to …	**Yeah, I'd love to!**
go out for a meal / a drink?	**That sounds** lovely/fun/good.
come round for a coffee?	**That would be** lovely/nice.
come to a **party**?	**Saying no**
	I'd love to, but I'm going to the cinema.
	I'm sorry, but I'm **busy**.
	I'm afraid I can't.

GLOSSARY

invite	ask sb to come to a party, your house, etc. **invitation** *n*
Would you like to …?	= **Do you want to …?** (**Would you like to** is a bit more polite.)
go out for (a meal/drink)	go to a restaurant or a café/ bar
come round	visit a person at their house, often near your house
party	a time when friends meet to eat, drink, dance, etc.
great	very good SYNS **lovely/wonderful**
I'd love to	= I want to very much; **I'd** = I would ALSO **That would be lovely. / That sounds lovely.**
busy	If you're **busy**, you have a lot of things to do.
I'm afraid I can't	= I'm sorry, (but) I can't (NOT ~~*I'm afraid but I can't.*~~)

1 **Are the <u>underlined</u> sounds the same or different? Write *S* or *D*. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ m<u>ea</u>l / gr<u>ea</u>t D

1 l<u>o</u>ve / w<u>o</u>nderful .....
2 w<u>ou</u>ld / s<u>ou</u>nd .....
3 s<u>o</u>rry / c<u>o</u>me .....
4 afr<u>ai</u>d / gr<u>ea</u>t .....
5 y<u>ea</u>h / th<u>e</u>re .....
6 b<u>u</u>sy / b<u>u</u>t .....

2 **One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?**

▶ Do you / to go out later? want

1 Would you to come round later? .....
2 Yes, I'd love. .....
3 Do you want to out for dinner? .....
4 That lovely. .....
5 I've just got an to a party. .....
6 I'm afraid can't. .....
7 That be nice. .....
8 Do you want come to a party? .....
9 I'm, but I'm busy tonight. .....
10 Ben me to lunch on Saturday. .....

3 **Complete the questions and answers.**

▶ Invite someone for a drink in a bar.
Say yes.
Do you want to go out for a drink?
That would be lovely.

1 Invite a friend for a meal in a restaurant.
Say yes.
Would .....?
Yes, g.....!

2 Invite a friend to your home for a coffee.
Say no politely.
Do .....?
I'm a.....

3 Invite someone to a party tomorrow.
Say yes.
Would .....?
Yes, that s.....

4 Invite someone for a coffee in a café.
Say no politely.
Do .....?
I'd ....., but ..... gym.

TEST YOURSELF

B Making suggestions

ask for a suggestion	What **shall we** do Where **shall we** go } this weekend?		
make a suggestion	**Shall we** go to the beach? **Maybe we could** go out for a meal.	**What about going** to an art gallery? **Let's** go out for a drink.	
say 'yes'	Yes, **(that's a) good/great idea!** Yeah, **let's do that.** **OK, fine.**	**say 'no', or make another suggestion**	**I'm not sure** (about that). I think **I'd prefer to** stay at home. Yeah, or **perhaps we could** go to the mountains.

GLOSSARY	
suggestion	an idea that sb gives you to think about **suggest** *v*
maybe	possibly SYN **perhaps**
that's a great idea	= that's a very good plan
prefer to do sth	like to do one thing more than another

4 **Put the dialogues in order. Write the numbers in the boxes.**

dialogue 1

- ☐ I'd prefer to get them at the station.
- ☐ The weather's nice, so
- ☐ Yes, that's a good idea.
- ☐ 1 What shall we do this weekend?
- ☐ And maybe we could take the train.
- ☐ Fine. Shall we get the tickets online?
- ☐ what about going to the beach?

dialogue 2

- ☐ But it's going to rain.
- ☐ I think I'd prefer to go out.
- ☐ OK, fine.
- ☐ What about a nice meal at home?
- ☐ OK, then let's order a pizza.
- ☐ Where shall we go tomorrow?

5 **Correct the mistakes.**

▶ We could to have a party this weekend. We could have a party this weekend

1 What do we do this evening? .....

2 Do you have a suggest? .....

3 What about go to see a film? .....

4 I'd prefer go by train. .....

5 Yes, is a good idea. .....

6 Where we shall go tomorrow? .....

6 **Write in a word where there is a /.**

1 ▶ A What / we do / evening? What shall we do this evening?

B What / going / the theatre? .....

A I'm / sure / that. .....

2 A What / we / on Saturday? .....

B Perhaps we / go out for a meal. .....

A OK, let's / that. .....

3 A Where / we go / afternoon? .....

B / go to a museum. .....

A Yeah, / 's a good / . .....

TEST YOURSELF

95 Offers and saying sorry

A Offers

Offering food/drink

Would you like a drink?
Do you want something to eat?

Accept	Refuse
Yes, please.	**No, thanks.**
Thanks.	
Thanks. Could I have ...?	

Offering help

Do you **need** some **help**?
Let me help you.

Accept	Refuse
Yes, please.	**No, I'm fine, thanks.**
Thanks a lot.	**No, don't worry.**
Thank you (very much).	

GLOSSARY

offer	say or show that you will give sth if another person wants it **offer** *n*	**accept**	say 'yes' OPP **refuse**
need	If you **need** sth, you must have it.	**thanks a lot** *inf*	= thanks very much
help	the act of doing sth good for sb **help** *v*	**don't worry**	used to tell sb that sth is not important **worry** *n*
let me ...	used for asking permission to help another person		

1 Correct the mistakes.

▶ ~~Could~~ you like a drink? Would .....
1 You want something to eat? .....
2 Thanks, no. .....
3 I fine, thanks. .....
4 Do you like something to eat? .....
5 Let me to help you. .....
6 I thank you very much. .....
7 Thanks. Could I take a coffee? .....

2 Complete the sentences with one word.

▶ Would you like something to eat? ~ Oh, thank you very much .
1 Do you need some ..... with your luggage? ~ Oh, yes, ...
2 Did you ..... her a drink when she arrived? ~ Yes, of course.
3 Do you ..... some help with those books? ~ Yes I do. ..... a lot.
4 Here, ... me help you. ~ No, don't ..... . I'm OK, thanks.
5 I offered to help but she ..... . She said she didn't need help.
6 When people offer me a drink, I usually say 'yes'. I think it's polite to ..... .

3 Complete the questions and answers.

▶ Offer someone food.
Do you want something to eat?
1 Offer someone a drink.
Accept, and ask for some water.
A Would ..... drink?
B Yes, ... water?
2 Offer someone help.
Say no politely.
A Do ..... help?
B No, ... , thanks.
3 Offer someone food.
Accept, and ask for an apple.
A Would ..... eat?
B .... an apple?
4 Offer someone help.
Say no politely.
A Let ..... .
B No, ... worry.

TEST YOURSELF

B Saying sorry

Saying sorry	Responses
Sorry, I don't speak English very well.	**That's all right.** I'll speak slowly.
Oh no! I've broken a cup. I'm **so sorry.**	That's OK. **Don't worry.**
I'm very sorry – I've lost your pen.	**It doesn't matter.** I've got lots of pens.
I forgot to post your letter – **I'm really sorry.**	**Never mind.** I can post it later.
Sorry I'm late – the traffic was terrible.	Oh, don't worry about it.

SPOTLIGHT *(I'm) sorry*

You use **(very/really/so) sorry** when you:

1 feel bad about something you've done: ***I'm sorry,*** *I've broken your cup.*
2 feel sad about something: ***I'm sorry*** *you can't come to the party.*
3 want somebody to repeat something: ***Sorry,*** *could you repeat that, please?*

GLOSSARY

rude	not speaking or behaving in a way that is correct for the social situation OPP **polite**	**break** *pt* **broke** *pp* **broken**	make sth go into smaller pieces, e.g. by dropping it
that's all right / don't worry / it doesn't matter / never mind	These phrases all mean 'it's not important'/ 'it's OK'.	**lose** *pt/pp* **lost**	If you **lose** sth, you can't find it.
		forget *pt* **forgot** *pp* **forgotten**	= not remember
		(I'm) sorry I'm late	(NOT ~~*Sorry for be late.*~~)

4 Match 1–8 with a–i.

▶	That's c	**a**	bring your book.
1	It doesn't	**b**	my car keys.
2	I forgot to	**c**	all right. ✓
3	Never	**d**	I'm late.
4	Don't	**e**	sorry.
5	Sorry	**f**	matter.
6	I'm really	**g**	your pencil.
7	I've broken	**h**	worry.
8	I've lost	**i**	mind.

5 Complete the dialogues with a word or a contraction (e.g. *don't*).

▶ I'm very sorry. ~ That's OK.
1 I'm really sorry. ~ _____ all right.
2 I'm sorry _____ late. The traffic was terrible. ~ That's OK.
3 I'm afraid I've _____ my homework. ~ That's all _____. Bring it tomorrow.
4 I'm _____ sorry. ~ It doesn't _____.
5 Sorry I'm late. ~ Oh, never _____. It's not important.
6 Did he say _____ to you? ~ Yes, he did. He's always very _____.
7 I think I've _____ your chair. I'm very sorry. ~ Don't _____. It's very old.
8 Did he say sorry? ~ No, he's very _____.

6 Write down:

1 three words you can use before sorry ▶ very _____ _____ _____
2 four phrases you can use to say 'it's OK' or 'it's not important':
_____ _____ _____ _____
3 three different meanings of 'sorry':
_____ _____ _____

TEST YOURSELF

95 Offers and saying sorry

Noah and Ava are getting married. Sonja is an old girlfriend of Noah's, and Noah has invited her to the **wedding**. Ava doesn't like Sonja very much. Do you think Sonja will **attend** the wedding?

100%		
	CERTAIN	Yes, She'll **definitely** go.
	PROBABLE	Yeah, **I think so.** Yeah, she's **likely to** go. Yeah, she'**ll probably** go. I think there's **a (good) chance** that she'll go.
	POSSIBLE	I think she { **may** / **might** } go. Yeah, **maybe/perhaps.**
	UNLIKELY	No, **I don't think so.** No, I don't think she'll go.
0%	**IMPOSSIBLE**	No, she definitely won't go.

GLOSSARY

wedding	a time when a man and woman get married
attend *formal*	go to or be present at a place where sth is happening
certain	sure about sth **certainly** *adv* SYN **definitely**
probably	If sth will **probably** happen, you think it will happen but you are not sure. **probable** *adj*
likely (to)	If sth is **likely to** happen, it will probably happen.
chance	a possibility that sth may happen. A **good chance** means it is more probable.
possible	If sth is **possible**, it can happen. OPP **impossible**; **possibility** *n*
maybe	a word that shows that sth is possible SYN **perhaps**
may	a word that shows that sth is possible, and will perhaps happen. SYN **might**: *He **may/might** come with us.* (NOT ~~*He may/might to come with us.*~~)

SPOTLIGHT *I think so / I hope so*

You can use these expressions if you think or hope something is going to happen. Notice the difference in the negative.

- *Are you going? ~ Yes, **I think so.*** (= it is likely that this will happen)
- *Is the exam difficult? ~ No, **I don't think so.***
- *Will you get more money? ~ **I hope so.*** (= I would like this to happen)
- *Is it going to rain? ~ **I hope not.***

1 **Underline the main stress in these words. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ possible
1 certainly
2 impossible
3 possibility
4 definitely
5 likely
6 probably
7 perhaps

2 **Are the sentences similar in meaning or different? Write *S* or *D*.**

▶ It's certainly true. / It's definitely true. S
1 The team will probably win. / The team will definitely win. .....
2 I may stay in tonight. / I might stay in tonight. .....
3 John and Shar are likely to come. / John and Shar will definitely come. .....
4 Will Jo come? ~ Maybe. / Will Jo come? ~ Perhaps. .....
5 Is it sunny outside? ~ I think so. / ~ I hope so. .....
6 I'm probably going to change jobs. / I'm likely to change jobs. .....
7 I think it's likely. / I think it's impossible. .....
8 There's a chance it will happen. / There's a possibility it will happen. .....

3 **One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?**

▶ Is Marta coming with you? ~ It's not / but I think she will. certain

1 I probably work this evening. .....

2 My parents are not likely come this afternoon. .....

3 Are you going tonight? ~ Yes, I think. .....

4 Have you lost your money? ~ No, I hope. .....

5 I think there's chance that he'll be here. .....

6 Are you seeing Jacob this evening? ~ I'm not sure. I see him. .....

4 **Complete the conversations.**

▶ A Are you going tonight?
B I don't know yet. Perhaps .

1 A What are you doing this evening?
B I'll p..... stay at home, and I m..... finish reading my book.

2 A Who's coming to the cinema this evening?
B Well, Elle will d..... come, and Briony will p..... come with her. And I think three or four more are l..... to come. So, about seven or eight, including us.

3 A What are you doing this weekend?
B I'm going to a w..... . My cousin is getting married.
A Well, enjoy yourself.
B Thanks. It will c..... be interesting – I don't think the two families like each other very much.

4 A Is the team going to win this weekend?
B Yes, there's a good c..... we will – we're playing quite well.

5 A What are you doing next week?
B I have to a..... an important meeting for my company in Manchester.
A Are you going to drive?
B I don't think that's l..... : it's a long way. I m..... take the train. Then I can work.

6 A Will everyone come to the meeting this afternoon?
B There's a p..... they will all be here, but I don't think s..... .

7 A Are you leaving at the end of the year?
B Well, m..... , but nothing's c..... yet. I'll p..... decide at the end of this month.

8 A Will you finish the exercise by the end of the lesson?
B No, that's i..... . It's really difficult.

5 ABOUT YOU **Answer the questions using words and phrases from page 184.**

▶ Are you going to do anything this evening? I might do some work. I'm not sure.

1 Are you going to have a good weekend? .....

2 Are you going to go out with friends? .....

3 Are you going to stay at home on Sunday? .....

4 Are you going to do any work? .....

5 Are you going to watch much TV? .....

6 Are you going to spend a lot of money? .....

7 Are you going to visit other members of your family? .....

8 Are you going to go shopping? .....

TEST YOURSELF

97 Link words (1)

A Giving more information

These words give more information.

Word	Example	Meaning
and	*The city centre is dirty **and** very expensive.*	links two ideas in one sentence, sometimes with a comma (,)
also	*The centre is dirty.* { *It's **also** very expensive.* / *It **also** costs a lot to live there.*	goes after auxiliary verbs, e.g. *be*, *can*, but before the main verb
too and **as well**	*The centre is dirty.* { *It's very expensive* / *It costs a lot to live there* } ***too.*** / ***as well.***	go at the end of the sentence **Too** and **as well** are used more in spoken English.

1 **Are *also*, *too* and *as well* in the correct position? Put a tick (✓) or a cross (✗). Then correct the mistakes.**

▶ You need a dictionary, and as well a grammar book is useful. ✗ and a grammar book is useful as well.

1 The house is beautiful, and it's near the park also. .....

2 He speaks German, and he understands too Greek. .....

3 We went out for dinner and Lucy came as well. .....

4 I cleaned the house and washed also the car. .....

5 She worked in Rome, and I think she worked in Ravenna too. .....

6 We've got a big garden, and there's as well a park near the house. .....

2 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

▶ too / and it's good / the weather's / in autumn / nice / in winter
The weather's nice in autumn and it's good in winter too.

1 I often eat / ice cream / cake / also / like / and I
I often eat .....

2 I enjoy / and I go / too / watching tv / to the cinema a lot
I enjoy .....

3 I can speak / German / as well / understand / English / I can / and
I can speak .....

4 I read a lot / also / and I / music / of books / listen to
I read a lot .....

5 and / on TV / I play / I watch it / as well / football
I play .....

6 I drive / too / a lot / and / I / walk
I drive .....

3 ABOUT YOU **Are the sentences in Exercise 2 true for you or your country? Write your answers, or talk to another student.**

The weather's nice in autumn and it's good in winter too.
That's not true. The weather in winter is very cold and it rains a lot as well.

1 .....

2 .....

3 .....

4 .....

5 .....

6 .....

TEST YOURSELF

B Introducing a surprising idea

These words link two ideas when the second idea is surprising after the first idea.

Word	Example	Meaning
but	*We had sunny weather, **but** it was quite cold.* *He worked hard, **but** he didn't pass the exam.*	links two ideas, usually in one sentence. Sometimes there is a comma (,) with a longer sentence.
however	*We had sunny weather. **However**, it was quite cold.* *He worked hard. **However**, he didn't pass the exam.*	links two ideas, usually in two different sentences. There is a comma after **however**. **However** is more formal than **but**.
although/ though	***Although** we had sunny weather, it was quite cold, especially in the morning.* *He worked hard, **although** he didn't pass the exam.* *I went to the party. I was quite tired, **though**.*	(the second part sounds like *go*) links two ideas in one sentence. **Although** often goes at the beginning of the sentence, but can go in the middle, after a comma. In spoken English, you often use **though**.

SPOTLIGHT *still*

You can use **still** to make the second idea a bigger surprise:

- *We had sunny weather, **but** it was **still** quite cold in the evenings.*
- *He worked hard. **However**, he **still** didn't pass the exam.*

4 Rewrite the sentences using the link word in CAPITALS.

▶ The exam was easy. I didn't pass. HOWEVER The exam was easy. However, I didn't pass.

1 He went to bed late. He couldn't sleep. BUT .....

2 People don't like her very much. She's very kind. HOWEVER .....

3 The food was terrible. The service was good. ALTHOUGH .....

4 It was snowing. We decided to go out. BUT/STILL .....

5 We lost our dog. We found it after an hour. HOWEVER .....

6 I wore a coat. I was cold. ALTHOUGH/STILL .....

7 I watched the whole programme. I didn't enjoy it. THOUGH .....

8 We had a big lunch. Jason was hungry. HOWEVER/STILL .....

5 Make six sentences or pairs of sentences from the table using *but* or *however*.

▶ I didn't feel well. ✓		I only had to wait five minutes.
I was really hungry,		I stayed at work to finish the job.
I was last in the queue.		someone lent me a jacket.
I was very cold.	**but**	I had to wait until 10.00 for dinner.
I was very frightened,	~~**However,**~~	someone held my hand.
I was late for the party.		I was fine the next day. ✓
I was really tired.		everybody was still there.

▶ I didn't feel well. However, I was fine the next day.

6 Complete the sentences in a way that makes sense.

▶ I took my umbrella but it didn't rain.

1 Everyone says it's a great film, though .....

2 Although it was raining, ...

3 The dog looked dangerous but .....

4 Although she was ill, ...

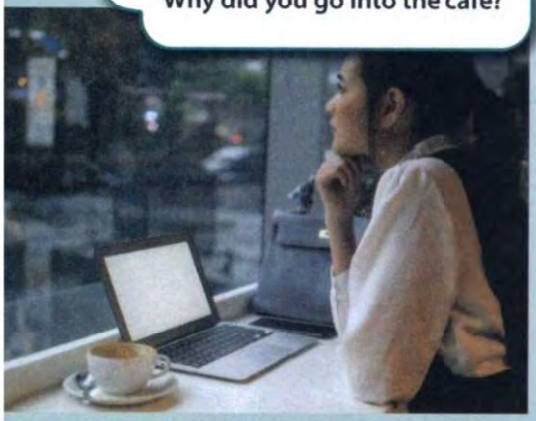
5 She's very intelligent. However, ...

6 I thought the shop was open. However, ...

TEST YOURSELF

98 Link words (2)

A Reason and result



Link word before the **reason**:

because + clause **because of** + noun	*I went into the café **because** it was raining.* *I went into the café **because of** the rain.*
(in order) to + verb **In order to** is more formal than **to**.	*I went into the café **(in order) to** get out of the rain.*

Link word before the **result**:

so + clause = because of this	*It was raining, **so** I went into the café.* = 'I went in the café' is the result of the rain.
as a result + clause = because of this **As a result** can also start a new sentence.	*I went to bed very late, and **as a result** I was tired the next morning.* *The others had a map but I didn't. **As a result**, I was the last person to arrive.*

GLOSSARY

reason	an explanation for why you do sth
result	sth that happens because of sth else

1 Circle the correct word(s).

▶ I took my umbrella *because* / *so* it was raining.

1 I stayed at home ***because*** / ***because of*** the weather.
2 We went to Paris ***so*** / ***to*** see a friend.
3 I couldn't go out ***because*** / ***because of*** I had to study.
4 I got lost and ***in order to*** / ***as a result*** I was late for the meeting.
5 It was my birthday, ***so*** / ***because*** we had a party.
6 She went to the market ***in order to*** / ***as a result*** get some meat.
7 She lost her passport, ***so*** / ***because*** she couldn't go to China.

2 Write *because, because of, so, (in order) to* or *as a result*.

▶ They were late *because of* the traffic.

1 I'm going to the chemist's ..... get some medicine.
2 It was a nice day, ... we went out.
3 I bought the house ..... the beautiful view.
4 I didn't take a coat. ....., I was cold most of the time.
5 I don't go to the theatre very often ..... it's too expensive.
6 I'm going out now, ... I will phone you later.
7 She went to the town centre ..... meet her friend.
8 Our two best players were ill, and ..... we lost the game.

3 Complete the sentences with your own reasons and results.

I stayed at home last night …

▶ because *I had to do some work.*
1 because of .....
2 in order to .....

I had to wait half an hour for a train, …

3 so .....
4 and as a result .....

I went to bed very late …

5 because .....
6 so .....

TEST YOURSELF

B A series of actions or events

Luke is a waiter now. **Before that,** he worked in a factory.

First of all, you fry the meat. **Secondly,** you fry some onions and add them to the meat. **After that,** you add the red wine and water and cook it slowly for three hours. **Finally,** you add the mushrooms and cook it for another fifteen minutes.

... and we had a really nice time. **Firstly,** we spent a couple of days in Budapest. **After that,** we went to Vienna, where we spent the rest of the week. It was very easy to ...

GLOSSARY	
before that	earlier than sth
firstly	You say **firstly** when you are talking about the first thing in a list. ALSO **first / first of all**
after that	You say **after that** when you are talking about the next thing in a list. ALSO **(and) then**
secondly	You say **secondly** to talk about the second thing in a list.
finally	You use **finally** when you are talking about the last thing in a list, usually a long list of four or more things.

4 **Complete the link words in the texts.**

For this job, ▶ firstly, you have to fill in a form. **(1)** S....., you have to go and talk to the boss. **(2)** A....., you meet other people who work in the company. **(3)** F....., you have to do a written test.

(4) F....., I checked the train times on the internet, and **(5)** t..... I looked at flights to see if they were cheaper.

James got his first job last year. **(6)** B....., he was a student.

5 **Put the sentences in the correct order. Then add link words.**

▶ I checked the answers. / I did the grammar exercises.
First of all, I did the grammar exercises. Then I checked the answers.

1 You make the pasta sauce. / You boil the pasta. / You add the sauce to the pasta.

2 I trained to be a teacher. / I did a degree in History. / I got a teaching job in Liverpool.

3 We flew back to Rome. / We stayed in Munich for a week. / We spent the second week in Heidelberg. / We left our home in Rome.

4 I came home and had a cup of tea. / I cooked the dinner. / I went to the market. / I made a shopping list.

5 I rang for a taxi and left home. / I had a shower. / I got dressed. / I had breakfast.

6 ABOUT YOU **Write three or four things you did last weekend. Use link words.**

▶ First of all, I ...

TEST YOURSELF

99 Phrasal verbs

A Meaning

Most phrasal verbs are very common in spoken English. They have a verb (***sit, stand, get,*** etc.) and a particle (***up, on, off,*** etc.). Sometimes, the meaning of the two parts is easy to understand.

sit down

stand up

lie down

fall over

Sometimes the two parts form a new meaning.

Phrasal verb	Example	Meaning
give sth **up**	*He had to **give up** football.*	stop doing something
look sth **up**	*I had to **look up** the meaning.*	try to find information in a book or on the internet
take off	*The plane couldn't **take off**.*	leave the ground and start flying
grow up	*When Ben **grows up**, he wants to be a doctor.*	slowly change from a child to an adult
find sth **out**	*I must **find out** the times of the trains to Southampton.*	find a fact or piece of information you need or want
go out	*Let's **go out** this evening.*	leave your home to do a social activity, e.g. go to a cinema, a club, etc.

1 Underline the correct particle.

▶ I'd like to lie ***up*** / ***down*** for a minute.
1 Can we find ***out*** / ***over*** how much it costs?
2 Where did she grow ***out*** / ***up***?
3 He fell ***over*** / ***off*** when he left the house.
4 Do you want to go ***out*** / ***off*** tonight?
5 Pepe wants to give ***on*** / ***up*** his job.
6 Look it ***out*** / ***up*** in your dictionary.
7 The plane couldn't take ***off*** / ***up***.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct particle.

▶ Paola doesn't want to go out this evening. She's tired.
1 I don't know the name of the hotel, but I can find ..... .
2 Everyone stood ..... when he came into the room.
3 Susana lives in England now, but she grew ..... in Spain.
4 She sat ..... at the table and started eating.
5 The doctor told me to lie ..... on the bed.
6 I told my brother to give ..... smoking.
7 The plane took ..... half an hour late because of the bad weather.
8 She fell ..... in the street, but several people helped her.
9 I asked James to look ..... the meaning of a word for me.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.

▶ Do you often look up English words in a dictionary? Yes, quite often.
1 Is there anything you would like to give up? .....
2 Where did you grow up? .....
3 When you fly, how do you feel when the plane takes off? .....
4 How often do you go out in the evenings? What do you do? .....

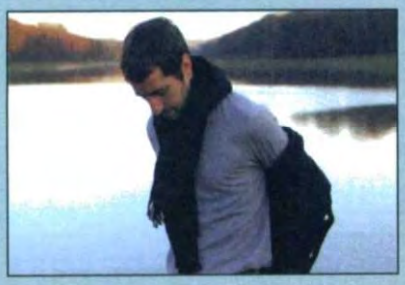
TEST YOURSELF

B Grammar

Some phrasal verbs never have an object.

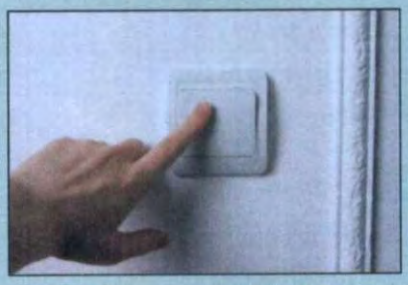
Phrasal verb	Example	Meaning
go up	*The price of petrol will **go up** soon.*	⬆ increase, become more OPP **go down** ⬇
carry on (with sth)	*Can we **carry on** with the exercise?*	continue with something
go back	*She wants to **go back** to London.*	return to a place
wake up	*I always **wake up** at 7.00 a.m.*	stop sleeping
go away	***Go away**! I'm working.*	leave a person or a place

Other phrasal verbs need an object. In the following verbs, the object can go before or after the particle.



***Take off** your jacket.*

Take** your jacket **off.



*Could you **turn on** the light?*

*Could you **turn** the light **on**?*

***Put on** your shoes.*

Put** your shoes **on.

When the object is a pronoun (*it, them*, etc.) it must go before the particle.

Take** it **off. (NOT ~~*Take off it.*~~) ***Put** them **on.*** (NOT ~~*Put on them.*~~)

4 **Change the underlined noun to *it* or *them*, and put it in the correct place.**

▶ Look up the word. Look it up.
▶ Look up both words. Look them up.
1 Take off your jacket. .....
2 Put on this tie. .....
3 Turn on the TV. .....
4 Put those socks on. .....
5 Take off your shoes. .....
6 Give up chocolate. .....
7 Turn on the lights. .....
8 Put your coat on. .....

5 **Are the sentences correct, or do they need the pronoun *it*? Where? Look at the examples.**

▶ Look up in the dictionary. Look it up in the dictionary.
▶ Please sit down. Correct
1 The price will soon go down. .....
2 Do you want to go back? .....
3 Could you turn on, please? .....
4 You can take off if you're hot. .....
5 His salary will go up soon. .....
6 Do they want to stop or carry on? .....
7 Did you put on? .....
8 What time do you usually wake up? .....

6 **Replace the underlined word(s) with a phrasal verb that has the same meaning.**

▶ The price will decrease soon. go down
1 I loved Tokyo, and I want to return next year. .....
2 When we finish Exercise 1, we can continue with Exercise 2. .....
3 I was busy so I told them to leave me on my own. .....
4 Can I remove my coat? .....
5 I think my salary will increase next year. .....
6 I was so tired, I didn't stop sleeping until 9 o'clock this morning. .....

TEST YOURSELF

100 Common expressions

A Expressions with *get*

Expression	Example	Meaning
get ready	*We need to **get ready** now – the film starts at 6.30.*	be prepared and able to do sth
get dressed	*I **got dressed**, had breakfast, then went to work.*	put on clothes
get to know sb	*I **got to know** Charlie when we were at university.*	meet sb and become friends
get changed (into sth different)	*I've been for a long walk, so I'm going to **get changed**.*	take your clothes off and put on different clothes
get in	*What time does our train **get in**?*	arrive at a place
get to sleep	*Do you have problems **getting to sleep**?*	start to sleep
go and get sth	*Could you **go and get** a clean towel from the bathroom?*	go to a place and return with sth SYN **fetch**
get back	*I want to **get back** by 7.00, if possible.*	return from a place
get better	*I feel my English is **getting better** now.*	reach a higher level, improve
get out of sth	*Be careful when you **get out of** the car.*	leave a vehicle such as a car or taxi
we/you get	***We get** a lot of tourists where I live.*	= there are / you can see

1 **Match 1–6 with a–g.**

▶ get better ...g...
1 get in .....
2 get back .....
3 get to know somebody .....
4 go and get .....
5 get dressed .....
6 get changed .....

a put on clothes
b meet and become friends
c return
d arrive
e put on different clothes
f fetch
g reach a higher level ✓

2 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ I started learning the guitar last year, and I'm definitely getting better now.
1 Ed, could you ..... and get my laptop from the bedroom?
2 We all got ..... of the car and pushed it to the side of the road.
3 I'm meeting Sophia at the station. Her bus gets ..... at 3.15.
4 I left Amelia's flat at 10.00, but I didn't get ..... until 11.30.
5 We're going out in ten minutes, so we need to get ..... .
6 You ..... a lot of people sleeping on the streets in big cities.

3 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ Do you get to know people easily?
1 Do you usually get ..... before or after you have breakfast?
2 When you go out, does it take you a long time to get ..... ?
3 When you get home from school/college/work, do you usually get ..... into different clothes?
4 Do you ever have problems getting to ..... at night?
5 Do you think your English is getting ..... ?
6 Do you ..... a lot of tourists in your town?

4 ABOUT YOU **Write your own answers to Exercise 3, or talk to another student.**

▶ Do you get to know people easily? Yes, I think so.

TEST YOURSELF

B In conversation

These expressions are common in informal spoken English.

SPOTLIGHT *else*

You can use **else** to mean 'different' after words like **everyone**, **somewhere** and **nothing**.

- *I didn't like it, but **everyone else** did.* (= all the other people)
- *The restaurant was full so we went **somewhere else**.* (= to another place)
- *We had bread because there was **nothing else** to eat.* (= no other thing)

GLOSSARY

Guess what!	used for introducing surprising news
Wow!	a word that shows you are surprised and happy
Well done!	You say this to sb when you are happy because they have done sth well. SYN **Congratulations!**
the rest	the part that is left or remains: ***the rest of the** day/time*
feel like (doing) sth	want (to do) sth: *I **feel like** a nice cold drink.*
take care of sth/sb	do everything to make sth/sb safe: *I can **take care of** the children while you go shopping.* SYN **look after sth/sb**
I guess so	= I think so SYN **I suppose so**
let sb know	tell sb
Come on!	used for telling sb to hurry, be quick SYN **hurry up!**
right now	at this minute; immediately SYN **right away**

5 **Find eight more expressions using words from each box.**

somewhere ✓	let	come	hurry	on!	up	so	done
the rest	I guess	well	right	me know	now	of the time	else ✓

▶ somewhere else

6 **Complete the dialogues.**

▶ We need to go right away or we'll be late. ~ Yes, let's go.

1 You had all the biscuits. ~ Sorry, there was _____ else to eat.
2 Do you feel _____ a drink? ~ Yes, let's go out.
3 Do we need to get ready now? ~ Yes, right _____, so _____ up!
4 _____ what? I came first in the English exam. ~ _____! Well _____!
5 Are you staying? ~ Yes, I'm going to look _____ the two girls.
6 Are you staying at Jon's? ~ Yes, I _____ so. I'll _____ you know at the weekend.
7 Why are you going back to the flat? ~ Because there's nowhere _____ to go.

7 **Rewrite the sentences using the word in CAPITALS. The meaning must stay the same.**

▶ We need to go right now. AWAY We need to go right away.

1 The bar was busy, so we went to another place. ELSE _____
2 Could you tell me later? LET _____
3 Who is going to look after the children? TAKE _____
4 Come on, Sacha! HURRY _____
5 Do you want to go out? FEEL _____
6 Penny is here. All the others went out. EVERYONE _____

TEST YOURSELF

Vocabulary building

The words in **bold** are all in the units in the Elementary level.

The words in blue are people.

cover one column, and say the word or words in the other column.

1 Verbs and nouns

Verb	Noun(s)
act	**actor, actress**
advertise	**advert/advertisement, advertising**
agree	agreement
appear	**appearance**
argue	**argument**
arrange	**arrangement**
arrive	**arrival**
begin	beginning
build	**building, builder**
choose	**choice**
clean	**cleaner**
climb	climbing
collect	collection
complain	**complaint**
cook	**cooker**
dance	**dance, dancing,** dancer
decide	**decision**
depart	**departure**
describe	**description**
design	**designer**
disagree	disagreement
discover	**discovery**
discuss	**discussion**
draw	**drawing**
drive	**driving, driver**
educate	**education**
employ	**employer, employee**
enter	**entrance**
examine	**exam/examination**
explain	**explanation**
fail	failure
farm	**farming, farmer**
feel	**feeling**
fly	**flight, flying**
greet	**greeting**
grow	growth
hear	hearing
improve	**improvement**
instruct	**instruction, instructor**
invent	**invention**
invite	**invitation**
listen	listening, **listener**
manage	**manager**

mean	**meaning**
meet	**meeting**
move	**movement**
organize	**organization**
own	**owner**
park	**parking**
pay	payment
perform	**performance, performer**
play	**player**
prefer	preference
print	**printer**
pronounce	**pronunciation**
read	**reading, reader**
recommend	recommendation
record	**record, recording**
report	**report, reporter**
reserve	reservation
respond	**response**
ride	riding, rider
run	**run, running,** runner
serve	**service**
sign	signature
sing	**song, singer**
smoke	smoke, **smoking**
solve	**solution**
speak	**speaking, speaker**
spell	**spelling**
study	**study,** student
succeed	**success**
suggest	**suggestion**
swim	**swim, swimming**
teach	**teaching, teacher**
think	thinking, **thought**
travel	**travelling**, travel, **traveller**
visit	visiting, **visitor**
walk	walk, walking
wash	**wash, washing**
weigh	**weight**
win	**winner**
work	**working, worker**

2 Adjectives and nouns

Adjective	Noun(s)
attractive	attraction
beautiful	beauty
cloudy	**cloud**
cold	**cold**
crowded	**crowd**
dangerous	**danger**
different	**difference**
direct	**direction**
electric, electrical	**electricity**

excited, exciting	excitement
friendly, unfriendly	**friend**
happy, unhappy	happiness
healthy, unhealthy	**health**
icy	**ice**
ill	**illness**
industrial	**industry**
intelligent	intelligence
long	length
lucky, unlucky	luck
medical	**medicine**
musical	**music**
national	**nationality**
natural	**nature**
noisy	**noise**
painful	**pain**
peaceful	**peace**
personal	**person**
possible, impossible	**possibility**
scientific	**science**, scientist
strong	strength
sunny	**sun**
surprised, surprising	**surprise**
true	truth
various	**variety**
wide	width
windy	**wind**
wooden	**wood**
young	youth

3 Verbs and nouns with the same form

The words in **bold** are all in the units in the Elementary level in both noun and verb form.

answer	guide	**record**	use
brush	**help**	repair	visit
call	hope	**reply**	wash
cause	**increase**	request	work
change	**interview**	research	worry
chat	jump	**rest**	
circle	**land**	ride	
comment	laugh	ring	
control	**look**	**score**	
cook	**love**	**search**	
copy	**matter**	share	
cost	**name**	shave	
cough	need	**smell**	
cut	**offer**	**smile**	
dance	**phone**	**snow**	
download	**plan**	**star**	
dream	**plant**	**start**	
drink	**post**	**stay**	
email	**promise**	taste	
fall	queue	**text**	
guess	**rain**	tour	

4 Nouns, verbs and adjectives

Noun	Verb	Adjective(s)
death	**die**	**dead**
employment	**employ**	employed, **unemployed**
enjoyment	**enjoy**	**enjoyable**
excitement	excite	**exciting, excited**
help	**help**	**helpful**
interest	interest	**interested, interesting**
marriage	marry/**get married**	**married**
organization	**organize**	organized
pollution	pollute	polluted
sleep	**sleep**	asleep
speaking, **speaker**	**speak**	spoken
surprise	**surprise**	**surprised, surprising**
writing, writer	**write**	written
worry	**worry**	**worried**, worrying
reading, reader	**read**	reading

5 Verbs and adjectives

Verb	Adjective(s)
boil	**boiled,** boiling
bore	**bored, boring**
break	**broken**
clean	**clean**
close	**closed**
complete	complete
correct	**correct**
empty	**empty**
include	**included, including**
lose	**lost**
open	open
relax	**relaxed,** relaxing
shut	**shut**
sleep	**asleep**
speak	spoken
tidy	**tidy**
tire	**tired,** tiring
wake up	**awake**

Common irregular verbs

be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
burn	burnt/burned	burnt/burned
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
dream	dreamt/dreamed	dreamt/dreamed
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone/been
grow	grew	grown
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
leave	left	left

lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read	read
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
shake	shook	shaken
shine	shone	shone
show	showed	shown
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spell	spelt/spelled	spelt/spelled
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake (up)	woke (up)	woken (up)
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

Answer key

Unit 1

1 You can put these things in a bag: pencil, notice, CD player, coursebook, dictionary, piece of paper. You can't put these in a bag: desk, table, chair, noticeboard.

2
1 board pen
2 coursebook
3 noticeboard
4 exercise book
5 piece of paper
6 CD player

3
1 a whiteboard/board
2 a dictionary
3 a desk/table
4 a notebook / an exercise book
5 a noticeboard
6 a CD
7 a bag
8 a coursebook

4 *possible answers:*
I've got a dictionary, a CD player, a desk and a pen. I haven't got a noticeboard, a board, a board pen or a notice.

Unit 2

1
1 indefinite
2 noun
3 preposition
4 an irregular
5 pronouns
6 verbs
7 adverbs
8 past participle

2
1 I
2 an
3 lesson
4 young
5 from/in
6 a
7 quietly
8 spoke
9 asked
10 This morning
11 class
12 think/'s
13 wrong
14 I/he
15 I think he's in the wrong class.

3
1 preposition
2 definite article
3 noun
4 verb (past tense)
5 preposition
6 indefinite article
7 adjective
8 noun
9 pronoun
10 verb (past tense)

Unit 3

1
1 third
2 Circle
3 ~~sentence~~
4 small/little
5 *possible answers:* wonderful/marvellous/great
6 mistake
7 thanks
8 false
9 is
10 yes
11 wrong
12 do

2 1 d 2 a 3 e 4 b

3
1 for example
2 yes/correct/right
3 informal
4 synonym
5 equals / is the same as
6 etcetera / and so on

4
1 etc.
2 missing
3 order
4 wrong
5 symbol; the same as
6 mistakes; corrects
7 test; cover
8 short form
9 match
10 informal
11 false
12 error
13 columns
14 underline
15 circle

Unit 4

1
1 helped
2 loud
3 record
4 down
5 pronounce
6 situation
7 use
8 things

2
1 out loud
2 notebook; keep
3 meaning
4 use
5 situations

3
1 To practise the pronunciation. / To practise how to pronounce them.
2 In a notebook.
3 To keep a record.
4 In English or your own language.
5 To help you to understand how to use the word.
6 Think of situations where you can use the word.

4 1 f 2 g 3 a 4 d 5 b 6 e

5
1 called
2 like
3 How do
4 between
5 wrong/not right
6 opposite
7 does
8 explain

6 *possible answers:*
1 What does this word mean?
2 How do you spell this word?
3 How do you say this in English?
4 Could you explain this word?
5 What's the opposite of this word?
6 What's this called in English?

Unit 5

1

1	e	3	b	5	a	7	d
2	i	4	h	6	f	8	g

2 explanation; description; guess; instruction; invention; practice; education

3

1	repeat	5	compared
2	homework	6	do; forgot
3	guess	7	made; up
4	practise	8	described

4

1	text	5	an essay
2	paragraph	6	context
3	dialogue	7	discussion
4	activities	8	simple

5

1	revise	5	dialogue
2	looked; up	6	activity
3	conversation	7	simple
4	exercises	8	essay

6 *possible answers, from Hungary*:

1 Twice a day. I usually read the news in the morning and in the evening, or sometimes I read something for my English class.
2 Yes, because looking up words in a dictionary would take a long time.
3 Not very often – only when I am preparing for an exam.
4 Only before tests. I know I should do it more regularly but I don't have time for that.
5 Discussing things in groups in class, and watching videos or my favourite series outside class.
6 I like listening to dialogues several times. It helps me with pronunciation and understanding conversation in English. I think they help if I know a word already and hear it again.

Unit 6

1

1	eight	6	six
2	twenty	7	thirteen
3	sixty-seven	8	seventy-two
4	fifty	9	twenty-four
5	thirty-five	10	eighty-nine

2

1 about/around a hundred euros
2 about/around ten lessons
3 about/around thirty years
4 about/around forty students
5 about/around fifty dollars
6 about/around eighty people
7 about/around seventy pounds
8 about/around twenty chairs

3

1	twenty-nine	4	thirty-one
2	seventy-seven	5	twenty-four
3	sixty-three	6	forty-five

5

1 two hundred
2 three hundred and forty
3 one thousand five hundred
4 two thousand six hundred and fifty
5 seven thousand
6 42,500

6

1 a/one thousand
2 five thousand and fifty-six
3 eleven thousand three hundred and one
4 a/one million
5 two thousand five hundred
6 three hundred and twenty-five thousand
7 a/one billion
8 two thousand

7

1 They said it was thousands of dollars.
2 It's about/around fifty minutes.
3 There are thousands (of them).
4 I bought about/around twenty books.
5 We want to grow hundreds of trees.
6 There are millions of people with this problem.

Unit 7

1

1	nine fifteen	5	five fifty
2	ten twenty-five	6	seven twenty
3	three thirty-five	7	two thirty
4	six forty-five	8	four forty

2

1 (a) quarter past seven
2 half past nine
3 twenty-five to twelve
4 ten to four
5 five to nine
6 three minutes past one
7 (a) quarter to three
8 seventeen minutes past four

3

1 At five past eight.
2 At eight forty-five/(a) quarter to nine.
3 At two minutes past nine.
4 At nine thirty-five/twenty-five to ten.
5 At ten past ten.

4 *possible answers for England*:

1 They usually open at 9.00 and they close at 5.00.
2 Supermarkets usually open at 8.00, and other shops usually open at 9.00 or 9.30. They usually close between 5.30 and 7.00.
3 Restaurants in England are often open all day from 12.00 p.m. to 10.00 p.m.
4 Most schools start at half past eight or nine o'clock and finish at three o'clock. Most people start work at 9 a.m. and finish at 5 p.m.
5 I have lunch at about 12.30.
6 I have dinner at around 7.00 p.m.

5

1	S	4	S	7	S	10	S
2	D	5	S	8	D	11	D
3	S	6	D	9	S	12	S

6 1 just
2 almost/nearly
3 at
4 midday/noon
5 in
6 at
7 all
8 almost/nearly
9 just
10 all

7 1 at midday
2 in the morning
3 all day
4 in the evening
5 all evening
6 at midnight
7 at night
8 almost/nearly 8.00
9 just before

Unit 8

1 1 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday
2 spring, summer, autumn, winter
3 January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December

3 1 Tuesday
2 September
3 summer
4 December
5 Saturday
6 April
7 February
8 winter
9 Thursday
10 July

4 *possible answers*:
1 September.
2 I like spring because it's light and the trees and plants start to grow.
3 Friday, because it's nearly the weekend.
4 I go and see my family, and we have a big lunch together.
5 New Year's Day is a holiday. My family and I go for a long walk.
6 May 1st is a public holiday for people who work, and in March or April we have Easter Sunday.

5 1 third
2 twentieth
3 fifth
4 first
5 eighth
6 sixteenth
7 fourteenth
8 thirteenth
9 second

6 1 April the tenth/the tenth of April
2 March the fourth/the fourth of March
3 April the seventeenth/the seventeenth of April
4 March the twenty-first/the twenty-first of March
5 April the eleventh/the eleventh of April
6 April the sixth/the sixth of April
7 March the thirty-first/the thirty-first of March
8 April the twenty-third/the twenty-third of April

7 1 February the third/the third of February
2 July the fourth/the fourth of July
3 December the tenth/the tenth of December
4 August the twelfth/the twelfth of August
5 January the fifteenth/the fifteenth of January
6 twenty twenty-two/two thousand and twenty-two
7 May the twenty-first/the twenty-first of May
8 November the thirtieth/the thirtieth of November
9 April the twenty-second/the twenty-second of April
10 twenty fifteen/two thousand and fifteen
11 *your answer*
12 *your answer*

Unit 9

1 1 F – I got back six days ago.
2 T
3 F – I paid it **two** days ago.
4 T
5 F – I was in **Moscow**.
6 F – I'm going to the cinema **this evening**.
7 T
8 F – I'm seeing Scott in **five** days.
9 T
10 T

2 1 ago
2 diary
3 night
4 this
5 appointment
6 next

3 1 I went to the cinema
2 I had a meeting/I went to Wheeler's café
3 I stayed at Will's/I went to Will's
4 I've got a doctor's appointment
5 It's Callum's birthday
6 I'm seeing my parents/Mum and Dad for lunch

4 1 since
2 for
3 for
4 for
5 since
6 since

5 1 just
2 while
3 ever
4 since
5 recently
6 yet
7 ever
8 recently; for

6 1 yet
2 already
3 just
4 recently
5 ever
6 yet
7 while
8 since

Unit 10

1 **Two:** feet, ears, knees, shoulders, legs, hands, ankles, arms

2 1 shoulder
2 stomach
3 neck
4 bottom
5 blood
6 teeth
7 finger

3 1 skin
2 nose
3 back
4 chin
5 face
6 head/hand
7 teeth
8 chest
9 blood
10 brain
11 bottom
12 stomach

4 1 S
2 S
3 D
4 S
5 S
6 D
7 S
8 D
9 D
10 S

5 1 arm
2 bottom
3 foot
4 neck
5 eyes/ears
6 leg/knee

6 1 eye
2 toes
3 finger
4 bottom
5 hair
6 tooth/teeth
7 waist
8 skin
9 leg
10 blood
11 heart
12 brain
13 bone
14 body

Unit 11

1 1 F – 'average height' means not tall and not short.
2 F – 'quite thin' means not very thin, but thinner than average.
3 T
4 T
5 F – the answer to 'How much does he weigh' is 60kg (for example).
6 T
7 F – 'average weight' means not heavy and not slim.
8 F – 'slim' is more positive than 'thin'.
9 T
10 F – 'height' describes how tall somebody is, 'weight' describes how heavy somebody is.

2 1 height
2 slim
3 fat
4 quite
5 put on
6 weighs
7 short
8 lost
9 much
10 quite

3 1 T
2 F – she's got blonde hair.
3 F – it's long.
4 F – the young man is handsome/good-looking.
5 T
6 F – The woman's got fair hair.
7 T
8 T
9 F – he's middle aged.
10 F – it's grey.

4 1 pretty
2 dark
3 smile
4 features
5 teenager
6 good-looking
7 straight
8 beard
9 middle-aged
10 handsome
11 grey
12 blonde
13 beautiful
14 attractive
15 teenage
16 fair
17 curly
18 good-looking

5 *possible answers:*
I'm a middle aged woman with short dark curly hair. I'm quite attractive.
I think all of the young people are attractive, but I don't like beards. The middle-aged man has a nice smile, but I think he's put on weight.

Unit 12

1 1 lie down
2 fall over
3 ride
4 stand up
5 sit down
6 get on
7 run

2 1 dance
2 sit down/lie down
3 fall over
4 ride
5 get on

3 1 stand up
2 walk
3 climb
4 dance
5 lie down/sit down
6 jumped
7 rode
8 ran; fell
9 got off; on

4 1 a door
2 a ball
3 a book
4 a person
5 a dictionary
6 a pencil
7 a bicycle

5 1 pick up a cup 1; drop a cup 1
2 pick up a TV 2; turn on a TV 1
3 break a bottle 1; open a bottle 2
4 pull a person 2; carry a person 2
5 throw a ball 1; catch a ball 1 or 2
6 drop a ruler 1; break a ruler 2
7 carry a door 2; close a door 1
8 pick up a baby 2; hold a baby 2

6 1 closed/shut
2 picked up; put it down
3 dropped
4 pulled; carried/pushed
5 gave; held
6 threw
7 carry

Unit 13

1 1 I need some personal information.
2 Where do you come from?
3 What do you do?
4 What is your postcode?
5 How old are you?
6 Where is the receptionist from?

2 1 Where do you come from?
2 Where in Poland exactly?
3 What do you do?
4 What's your address?
5 How old are you?

3 1 first
2 from
3 Whereabouts
4 What's
5 postcode
6 do
7 married
8 old

4 *possible answers:*

ABOUT YOU
Gomez.
Alicia.
I'm from Spain.
From Sevilla.
Yes, it's Gaspar Perez 27 Sta Clara, Sevilla.
41007.
I'm a history teacher.
Yes, I am.
I'm 34.

5 1 F – 'perfect' means so good it cannot be better.
2 T
3 F – 'improve' means become better.
4 T
5 F – a language course is a number of lessons. Your language level is how good you are at the language.
6 T
7 F – 'how long?' means 'how much time?'
8 T

6 1 improving
2 level
3 can communicate very well
4 abroad
5 planning
6 great/wonderful
7 progress
8 help (people)

7 *possible answers:*
1 I'm elementary level.
2 It's difficult, and I can only understand a little.
3 Yes, I want to improve for my job, and my girlfriend is English.
4 Yes, slowly.
5 Yes, to England to visit my girlfriend's family.
6 Yes, I'd like a job in London to improve my English.

Unit 14

1 1 daughter
2 nephew
3 niece
4 sister-in-law
5 cousin
6 grandparents
7 husband
8 grandmother
9 uncle
10 aunt
11 relatives

2

MALE	FEMALE	MALE	FEMALE
father		brother-in-law	sister-in-law
brother	sister	grandfather	grandmother
husband	wife	grandson	granddaughter
nephew	niece	cousin	cousin
relative	relative	parent	parent
son	daughter	uncle	aunt

3 *your own answers*

4 1 F – they are married.
2 T
3 F – he's older than Karen.
4 T
5 T
6 F – Luke is Amy's boyfriend.
7 F – there are 5 in Damon's family.
8 T
9 T
10 F – Luke is Damon's brother.

5 1 I was born in 2001.
2 We spend a lot of time together.
3 My girlfriend is older than me.
4 There are six of us in my family.
5 I am the youngest in my family.
6 I've got an older brother and a younger sister. OR an older sister and a younger brother.

6 *possible answers:*
1 There are five of us.
2 1999.
3 I've got two sisters: one is three years older than me, and the other is two years younger than me.
4 I spend a lot of time with my younger sister because she goes out with my best friend, Ben.
5 No, my older sister is married and lives with her husband.

Unit 15

1 1 nice
2 funny
3 clever
4 strange
5 friendly
6 patient
8 laugh
9 relaxed

2 1 unfriendly
2 intelligent
3 stupid
4 clever/intelligent
5 funny
6 patient
7 relaxed

3 1 laugh
2 like; fun; strange
3 What; kind; clever/intelligent

4 *possible answers*:
My mother is very kind.
My cousin Lucia is very friendly.
My teacher Mrs Amato is very patient with me.
Dino, my boyfriend, is good fun.
My friend Alicia is very intelligent.
Mr Fideo, my neighbour upstairs, is quite strange.

5 1 D 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 S

6 1 T
2 F – they're completely different.
3 T
4 T
5 F – Sophie's quite lazy.
6 T
7 F – she's tidy.
8 F – it didn't matter.

7 1 own
2 life
3 share
4 matter
5 competely/really
6 other

8 *possible answers*:
1 I'm very tidy, but my wife is really untidy.
2 I'm hard-working some of the time!
3 Yes, I'm really quiet. I don't like a lot of noise.
4 No, I'm not very serious.
5 Yes, I've got a lot of friends and I go out quite often.
6 No, I don't.

Unit 16

1 get to know somebody, ex-boyfriend, get married, go out with somebody, have a baby, romantic relationship

2 1 They had a baby last year.
2 They separated in January.
3 We have a very good relationship.
4 How did you get to know your boyfriend?/ How did your boyfriend get to know you?
5 They were together for three years.
6 I went out with him for six months.

3 1 got; wife
2 got; together
3 couple
4 out; separated
5 ex-
6 divorced; partner/girlfriend; get

4 1 D 2 S 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S

5 1 advice
2 each
3 old; known
4 get
5 met
6 known; see
7 meeting
8 flatmate; best, personalities

6 *possible answers*:
1 A man called Noah.
2 About 20 years.
3 At work.
4 About once a week, because we don't work together now.
5 He's good fun and we laugh at the same things.
6 Yes, he gives me good advice if I have a problem. I'm not as good at giving advice as he is.

Unit 17

1 1 angry 4 scared 7 afraid
2 worried 5 embarrassed 8 surprised
3 bored 6 unhappy 9 excited

2 1 emotions 4 scared
2 bored 5 in love
3 sad 6 embarrassed

3 1 worried
2 surprised
3 excited
4 felt; embarrassed
5 happy
6 bored
7 afraid/scared
8 love
9 emotions/feelings

4 1 upset
2 nervous
3 thirsty
4 hungry
5 in pain
6 pleased
7 sorry

5 1 nervous 5 argument; argue
2 tired 6 sorry
3 pleased 7 thirsty
4 pain 8 upset; crying

6 *possible answers*:
1 I felt tired when I got up this morning.
2 I felt nervous before my exam last week.
3 I felt hungry an hour ago.
4 I felt thirsty during the night.
5 I argued with my boyfriend on Saturday.
6 I was in pain last week when I fell over.
7 I cried a couple of weeks ago when I saw a very sad film.
8 I felt pleased when I finished work on Friday afternoon.

Unit 18

1
1 ~~2020~~
2 ~~Friday~~
3 ~~April~~
4 ~~the morning~~
5 ~~4.00~~
6 ~~midnight~~
7 ~~the autumn~~
8 ~~winter~~
9 ~~lunchtime~~
10 ~~the evening~~

2
1 at
2 at
3 in
4 in
5 On
6 in
7 in
8 at
9 At
10 on

3 *possible answers*:
I get up **at** seven o'clock.
I study English **on** Tuesday and Thursday evenings.
I go swimming **in** the summer.
I usually go out with friends **at** the weekend.
I watch TV **in** the evenings.
I go to bed **at** about eleven o'clock.
My birthday is **on** 6th June.
I was born **in** 1997.
We have public holidays **on** Christmas Day, **on** New Year's Day, **on** May Day (in early May), and several other days.

Unit 19

1
1 trees
2 motorway
3 river
4 shop
5 church
6 gate
7 mountain
8 field
9 building

2
1 under
2 into
3 up
4 towards
5 past
6 through
7 out of
8 down
9 across

3
1 across/over/under
2 across/over
3 through
4 along
5 past

4 *your own answers*

Unit 20

1
1 in
2 on
3 at
4 in
5 in
6 on
7 in
8 on
9 on
10 in
11 on
12 at
13 on
14 at

2
1 in
2 in
3 on
4 on
5 on
6 in
7 at
8 at; at; in

3 *possible answers*:
1 I live in a town.
2 I live in a house.
3 Yes, it's the River Ebro.
4 My bedroom is on the first floor.
5 I've got lots of pictures and lights on the wall.
6 Yes, I do.
7 Yes, but not often.
8 At school.

4
1 T
2 T
3 T
4 F – the people are in front of the garage.
5 T
6 F – the gate is between the house and the garage.
7 F – the children are in front of Mum and Dad.
8 T
9 T
10 T

5
1 next to
2 in front of
3 in front of
4 between
5 near
6 in front of
7 next to
8 behind

6 *possible answers*:
1 There's another house.
2 There's a garden and a hill.
3 Another house.
4 No, there aren't.
5 My parents' bedroom.
6 The dining room.
7 A bathroom.
8 Yes, a tree.

Unit 21

1
1 ~~night~~
2 ~~pencil~~
3 ~~book~~
4 ~~apple~~
5 ~~milk~~
6 ~~sky~~
7 ~~mountain~~

2
1 at the top
2 at the back
3 at the bottom
4 At first
5 at the front
6 at the end
7 in the middle
8 in the end
9 on the other side
10 At the start/beginning
11 At first; In the end

3 **AT:** least, the same time, the time, the moment
ON: holiday, time, the phone
IN: fact, prison, hospital

4 1 at the same time
2 on holiday
3 at the moment
4 in hospital
5 At least
6 on time
7 at school/university

5 1 at the time
2 in hospital
3 at least
4 by the end of
5 in prison
6 in fact/actually
7 at university
8 on his phone

Unit 22

1 1 good at
2 I agree.
3 depends on
4 bored with
5 Do you ask your parents for money?
6 care about
7 live with
8 interested in speaking

2 1 thank; present/gift
2 cares
3 depends
4 spent
5 interested
6 ask

3 1 with
2 for
3 in
4 for
5 on
6 about
7 at
8 with
9 with

4 *possible answers*:
I live with my wife.
I sometimes ask my parents for advice, but I don't think I depend on them.
No, I never ask them for money.
Yes, I usually agree with them.
No, I don't spend much on clothes.
I don't really care about making money, but I would quite like a bit more.
I almost always thank people for presents.
I'm interested in sailing, photography and going to the theatre.
I'm quite good at photography, and I'm good at my job.
I get bored with things like housework.

5 1 f 2 a 3 e 4 b 5 g 6 d

6 1 at
2 for
3 for
4 about
5 on
6 for
7 about
8 of
9 of

7 1 based
2 heard
3 pay
4 noticed
5 applied
6 think

8 *possible answers*:
Yes, I listen to the radio when I have my breakfast.
No, that's not true. I don't like social media.
No, that's not true. I usually notice what people are wearing.
Yes, I like films based on true stories.
I like furniture made of wood very much.
I don't like waiting for buses. I don't take taxis, so I don't pay for them.
I applied for a job in the summer and I got it.
I think about the future a lot, more than the past.

Unit 23

1 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 D

2 1 get **up**
2 have a **shower**
3 get **dressed**
4 I **arrive** at
5 I **finish/leave** work
6 I **have/eat** dinner
7 go **to** bed
8 usually **sleep**
9 daily **routine** is

3 1 get
2 have
3 have/eat
4 leave
5 arrive at/get to
6 dinner
7 go
8 sleep

4 *possible answers*:
1 I get dressed before I have breakfast.
2 Yes, before breakfast.
3 In the kitchen.
4 I leave home at about 7.15.
5 I get to work at 8.00.
6 I have dinner with my husband.
7 I go to bed at about 11.30.
8 I sleep for about six or seven hours a night.

5 1 Do you often do the shopping?
2 He is never late for school.
3 We sometimes get up early and play tennis.
4 Do you always go shopping at the weekend?
5 Martha often goes out during the week.
6 I see my sister once or twice a week.

6 1 stay
2 go
3 play
4 go
5 do
6 at
7 during
8 once
9 twice

7 *possible answers*:
1 F – I **sometimes** play tennis in the summer, but in the winter too.
2 F – In my family, I **often** do the shopping, or my sister does.
3 F – I **never** go for a long walk during the week.
4 F – I **often** play video games at the weekend.
5 F – I **often** have dinner with my family.
6 F – **At the weekend**, I go out a lot.
7 T
8 F – I **sometimes** go shopping with a friend.

Unit 24

1
1 jacket
2 trousers
3 jumper
4 button
5 coat
6 T-shirt
7 dress
8 pocket
9 jeans
10 tie
11 shirt
12 skirt
13 shorts
14 sweater

2
1 Megan
2 Enzo
3 Osman
4 Milla
5 Megan
6 Enzo
7 Milla
8 Osman
9 Milla, Enzo and Megan
10 Kim
11 Enzo and Osman
12 Milla, Osman, Kim, Megan
13 Enzo and Megan
14 no

3 **WHOLE BODY**: suit, dress, coat, uniform
ABOVE THE WAIST: top, tie, T-shirt, shirt, jumper
BELOW THE WAIST: trousers, skirt, shorts, jeans

4
1 skirts; dresses
2 put your coat on
3 trousers; jeans
4 hot
5 a uniform
6 an item of clothing

5
1 D
2 S
3 D
4 S
5 D
6 S
7 D
8 D
9 D

6 *possible answers*:
1 I'm wearing a blue T-shirt, a pair of jeans and a jacket.
2 It was Sunday, so I wore a dress. I also put my coat on when I went out.
3 I wear jeans and sweaters a lot at the weekends, but if I'm going out, I often wear a skirt and top, or a dress.
4 I don't go to parties very often, but I usually wear a dress.
5 Yes. I worked in a restaurant when I was younger and I wore a uniform. I didn't like it!

Unit 25

1
1 T
2 F – glasses are made of glass, plastic or metal.
3 T
4 F – you can carry an umbrella.
5 T
6 T
7 T
8 F – people usually wear one scarf.

2
1 socks
2 hat
3 ring
4 boots/socks
5 tights/socks
6 glasses
7 scarf
8 watch
9 umbrella
10 handbag

3
1 S
2 D
3 S
4 D
5 S
6 S
7 D
8 S

4
1 Give me the sock.
2 not possible
3 I've got one pair of trainers.
4 Where's my glove?
5 She's got my scarf.
6 Where is my shoe?
7 not possible
8 not possible

5 a gold necklace; a watch; a pair of leather boots; a pair of trainers; a pair of gloves; a leather belt; a pair of tights; a plastic ring

6 *possible answers*:
1 I always wear a watch, a ring and a necklace.
2 I never wear socks or a hat.
3 Yes, I wear them a lot.
4 I wear glasses for reading and I often wear sunglasses when I'm driving.
5 I wear jewellery every day and I always wear a watch, but I take it off when I go to bed. I never wear a hat. I sometimes wear a scarf in the winter.

Unit 26

1 red, green, pink, purple, orange, grey, dark blue, cream, brown, light blue, black, yellow, white

2
1 purple
2 light blue
3 green
4 pink
5 grey
6 dark blue
7 brown
8 cream
9 colours

3
1 uncomfortable
2 expensive
3 small
4 long
5 cheap
6 comfortable

4
1 a short blue skirt
2 comfortable brown shoes
3 a large orange handbag
4 a long red skirt
5 uncomfortable red shoes
6 an expensive purple tie
7 a small green handbag

5
1 S
2 S
3 D
4 D
5 S
6 S
7 D
8 S

6
1 take/am/'m
2 style
3 wrong
4 take
5 fit; too
6 look/are
7 size; too
8 great/lovely/nice; great/lovely/nice
9 fit; too
10 right
11 appearance

Unit 27

1
1 T
2 F – the total is £60.
3 F – you have got enough.
4 T
5 F – they cost the same.
6 T
7 T

2
1 cash
2 purse
3 credit card
4 coins
5 cost
6 -dollar
7 dollars
8 total
9 enough
10 each

3 *possible answers*:
1 Yes, I usually have about €80. I need it because I often buy food when I'm out.
2 I keep it in my purse. Sometimes I just have money in my pocket.
3 Yes, I have enough for a coffee and a book, but not jewellery.
4 If I'm not buying many things, I pay in cash, but if I buy a lot, I pay by debit card.

4
1 price
2 spend
3 saved
4 won
5 price
6 online
7 earn
8 sold
9 bill
10 off

5
1 bought
2 spent
3 sold
4 earned
5 won
6 paid

6
1 online
2 bills
3 free
4 price
5 sale
6 earn/spend
7 products
8 prize

7 *possible answers*:
1 Yes, I sometimes buy books online.
2 No, I don't. I usually use my debit card.
3 It's usually free, yes.
4 It's about £1.
5 No, I don't like sales very much.
6 No, in general they earn less than men.
7 They buy DVDs and books, I think.
8 Yes, I won a prize at school – it was an art book.

Unit 28

1
1 chemist's
2 pharmacy
3 department store
4 shopping centre
5 medicine
6 clothes shop
7 present
8 electrical store

2 bookshop, department store, clothes shop, pharmacy, supermarket, electrical store, furniture shop, everything, medicine, except

3
1 ~~toyshop~~
2 ~~gift shop~~
3 ~~furniture shop~~
4 ~~fruit and vegetable shop~~
5 ~~music shop~~
6 ~~chemist's~~

4
1 baker's/supermarket
2 toy shop/department store/shopping centre/gift shop
3 gift shop/department store/shopping centre/music shop
4 music shop/shopping centre
5 chemist's/pharmacy/supermarket
6 shoe shop/department store
7 furniture shop/department store
8 clothes shop/department store
9 electrical store/shopping centre/department store

5
1 two things
2 to
3 the shoes on
4 of two things
5 personal
6 online
7 DVD
8 the price
9 somebody's face

6
1 d
2 a
3 h
4 g
5 e
6 b
7 c

7
1 prefer
2 choose
3 service
4 particular
5 try; on
6 online
7 sales
8 touch

8 *possible answers*:
1 I like both of them, but I prefer small shops for meat and fish.
2 No, it's difficult to choose. I often make mistakes.
3 Yes, it is.
4 I prefer comfortable shoes.
5 No, sometimes I buy clothes online and try them on at home. I can always send them back.
6 I prefer to go to the shops, but sometimes it's easier and cheaper online.
7 The sales are usually in January, and also in the summer.
8 Yes, I like to touch clothes.

Unit 29

1
1 recipe
2 memory
3 diary
4 camera
5 possession

2
1 camera
2 recipes
3 possessions
4 gun
5 voice
6 diary
7 recordings
8 memory

3
1 any more
2 tool
3 recipe
4 memories
5 gun
6 voice
7 belongs
8 possessions

4 *possible answers*:
1 I've got some very old books that belonged to my grandfather, and my father's watch.
2 Yes, I really enjoyed school. I had a lot of friends, and the teachers were very good.
3 I use the camera on my mobile phone because I always have it with me.
4 I've got a recording of my mother and sister on my phone. They're singing and laughing.

5 1 F – Clothes are made of material.
2 T
3 T
4 F – an alarm clock is usually made of plastic or metal.
5 T
6 T
7 F – if something is unusual, you don't see it often, or it doesn't happen often.
8 F – an electric fan is useful if it's very hot.
9 T

6 1 I use my mobile as an **alarm** clock in the mornings.
2 My desk is made of **wood** and is very old.
3 What **shape** is the table? ~ I think it's round.
4 He's got a very **unusual** alarm clock – it's made of wood.
5 The garden chairs are made of white **plastic** and they're very hard.
6 A computer is made of **metal** and plastic.
7 What do you call the **device** that turns the TV on and off?

7 *possible answers*:
1 My dining room table is round.
2 No, I use a real alarm clock.
3 My desk is made of wood, and the computer, keyboard and printer are plastic and metal. There are some pencils made of wood too. And the lamp is made of plastic, I think.
4 Yes, I've got a digital TV.
5 I use an electric fan in the summer.

Unit 30

1 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 D

2 1 No 2 Yes 3 Yes 4 Yes 5 No 6 Yes 7 No 8 No

3 1 found/discovered 2 area/part 3 named 4 attacked 5 killed 6 crimes 7 series/number 8 alive

4 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 D 6 S 7 D 8 S

5 1 find 2 team/group 3 important 4 think 5 people 6 happens

6 1 late 2 statement 3 danger 4 searching 5 major 6 believe 7 happen 8 public

Unit 31

1 1 What's 2 's got 3 feel 4 've got 5 a headache 6 Has 7 healthy 8 feel 9 feel 10 a common 11 's 12 flu 13 haven't got 14 Has he got

2 1 cough; unhealthy
2 temperature
3 matter; well; toothache
4 stomach ache
5 sick
6 flu
7 health
8 illness; common
9 cold

3 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 D

4 1 F – If you get better, you feel less ill.
2 F – A couple of weeks is about 2 weeks.
3 T
4 F – If you don't sleep for a week, you feel weak.
5 T
6 T
7 F – You should keep warm if you have flu.
8 F – If you stay in bed, you don't get up.
9 T
10 T

5 1 stayed
2 couple
3 get better/improve
4 advice
5 tablets/pills
6 should
7 chemist's/pharmacy
8 rest
9 keep
10 getting
11 weak

Unit 32

1 1 hurts/hurt *(present or past both possible)*
2 cut
3 accident
4 broken
5 drugs
6 injury
7 pain
8 cut
9 serious

2 1 She had a pain in her arm.
2 He had a serious injury.
3 I hit my head on the door.
4 I knocked my head on the wall.
5 I burnt my mouth on the hot soup.
6 She cut her foot on the broken glass.
7 My arm hurts a lot.
8 The doctor gave me some drugs for the pain.
9 I broke / have broken a bone in my ankle.

3 1 broken
2 drugs
3 pain(s)
4 your
5 burnt/cut

4 *possible answers*:
1 I broke my arm when I was 10. I fell over at the swimming pool.
2 No, I haven't.
3 Sometimes, if I work at the computer for too long.
4 Last week. I cut my finger when I was cutting vegetables.
5 Yes, I often burn my hands and fingers in the kitchen, but nothing serious.

Unit 33

1 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 D 7 S 8 D

2 1 Yes 2 No 3 Yes 4 No 5 No 6 Yes 7 No 8 No

3 1 anywhere
2 nowhere
3 somewhere
4 everywhere
5 nowhere
6 somewhere
7 anywhere
8 somewhere

4 1 2,000
2 the Sahara Desert
3 two billion years old
4 the Pacific Ocean
5 Siberia, in Russia
6 Yes, a few places.

Unit 34

1 1 government
2 disaster
3 environment
4 disappear
5 destroy

2 1 increasing
2 disappearing
3 government
4 build
5 destroying
6 land

3 1 increases
2 government
3 disaster
4 land
5 environment
6 disappears
7 destroy
8 extreme

4 1 recycle
2 energy
3 gas
4 coal
5 petrol
6 electricity
7 develop
8 cause

5 1 F – Pollution is a bad thing.
2 T
3 T
4 T
5 F – You can't see gas.
6 T
7 F – If you develop something, you make it.
8 T
9 F – Pollution is bad for fish and animals.
10 T

6 1 f 2 d 3 g 4 a 5 c 6 b

7 *possible answers*:
1 We use gas and electricity.
2 Electricity is more expensive – about double the cost of gas. I think coal is cheap, but people don't use it a lot now.
3 Yes, it's very bad in the centre of the city.
4 It's the buses, cars and lorries, and some industry too.
5 Yes, I recycle bottles, paper, cardboard and plastic every week.

Unit 35

1 1 Chinese
2 Hungarian
3 German
4 Italian
5 Japanese
6 Canadian
7 Korean
8 Egyptian

2 1 T
2 T
3 F – They speak Thai.
4 T
5 F – They speak English.
6 T
7 T
8 F – They speak French, Italian or German.

3 1 Britain
2 Europe
3 Central/Latin
4 continent
5 South/Latin
6 Africa/Asia
7 the Middle East
8 Asia
9 continent

4 1 Italy, C
2 Hungary, C
3 Mexico, C
4 Swiss, N
5 China, C
6 Czech, N
7 Egypt, C
8 Spanish, N
9 Brazil, C
10 Turkey, C
11 Greek, N
12 French, N
13 Germany, C
14 Russia C
15 Argentinian, N
16 Portugal, C

5

1	Poland	7	Korean
2	Brazilian	8	Turkish
3	Russia	9	Italian
4	Russian	10	Chinese
5	Polish	11	Spain
6	Japanese	12	Australian

6 **-ian**: Argentinian, Australian, Brazilian, Canadian, Egyptian, Hungarian, Indian, Russian
- ish: British, Polish, Spanish, Turkish
-an: American, German, Korean, Mexican
-ese: Chinese, Japanese, Portuguese

7 *your own answers*

Unit 36

1

1	river	7	Ocean, east
2	mountain	8	major
3	coast	9	north
4	high	10	enormous
5	long	11	popular
6	border		

2

1	famous	5	ocean
2	huge	6	long; long
3	west	7	beach
4	north	8	popular

3 *possible answers about Britain (England, Scotland and Wales)*:
1 London, in the south of England/Britain.
2 Manchester, Liverpool, Birmingham, Edinburgh, Glasgow and Cardiff.
3 No.
4 The River Severn, in south-west England (290 kilometres).
5 Ben Nevis, in Scotland.
6 Trafalgar Square, Buckingham Palace, The Tower of London, Edinburgh Castle, The Lake District, Stonehenge, etc.

4 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S

5 **SIZE**: a small village, a large city, a small town
LOCATION: on the coast, south-west of the capital, on the River Duero
POPULATION: over two million, just under 50,000, about 3,000
INTERESTING FACTS: famous for its modern buildings, mobile phone industry, a warm climate, city full of culture

6

1	of	5	population
2	in	6	industry
3	of	7	ancient
4	on	8	climate

7 *possible answer*:
Bath is a medium-sized town, 170 km west of London, in the south-west of England. It's on the River Avon. It has a population of just under 100,000. It is a famous tourist city in England, with lots of ancient buildings, including the Roman Baths and many museums. It is cool and wet in winter and quite warm in summer.

Unit 37

1

1	c	4	j	7	a
2	i	5	b	8	f
3	h	6	e	9	g

2

1	raining	5	weather
2	sunny/bright	6	cloudy
3	snows	7	icy
4	windy	8	blowing

3

1	a bit	5	a bit
2	a lot of	6	a lot
3	a lot	7	a bit
4	a bit of	8	a lot of

4

1	showers	4	minutes
2	Suddenly	5	strong
3	clear	6	changes

5
1 There was heavy rain last night.
2 The weather in Spain is better than here.
3 There was a shower in the afternoon.
4 The weather changes every day.
5 It's dry today.
6 We had a storm.
7 There are clear skies.
8 It snows all the time in winter.

6 *possible answers, from India*:
1 Not, really! We get some rain occasionally in spring.
2 We get snowfall only in a few parts of the country, up in the hill stations.
3 We have horrible hot and dusty summers!
4 Yes, most parts of my country have dry winters, however it rains in the southern parts!
5 No, we don't have heavy rains in spring unless they are hail storms.
6 Yes, some parts of the country get strong winds and in fact dust storms in summers. Some parts get strong winds during monsoons!

Unit 38

1 whale, elephant, bear, lion, sheep, monkey, cat, mouse, fly

2 **PETS**: dog, cat
FARM ANIMALS: horse, pig, cow
INSECTS: bee, fly
WILD ANIMALS: elephant, tiger, lion, bear

3

1	most	5	hair
2	lion	6	tiger
3	whale	7	wild
4	son		

4 (*Other answers may be possible.*)

1	people	6	mice
2	horses/elephants	7	farms
3	sea	8	zoo
4	insects	9	wings
5	fly		

5 1 pets
2 farmer; farm
3 wild
4 both
5 insect
6 zoo
7 wings
8 both

6 1 **four legs**: lion, tiger, elephant, horse, sheep, cow, pig, cat, dog, mouse, bear (but some people say 2)
2 **two legs**: bird, monkey, bear (but some people say 4)
3 **six legs**: bee, fly
4 **no legs**: snake, whale

7 *possible answers, from the Czech Republic*:
1 Yes, I have a cat.
2 Yes, in the zoo, and also in a forest.
3 I'm afraid of spiders.
4 Cows, pigs, sheep, hens and goats.
5 Probably. I like going to zoos.
6 No.

Unit 39

1 1 taught
2 put
3 let
4 brought
5 bought
6 sang
7 spent
8 drove
9 spoke
10 held
11 spelt/spelled
12 rang
13 sat
14 burnt

2 1 swam; began
2 wrote; drove
3 bought; thought
4 sent; built
5 put; cut
6 got; fell

3 *possible answers*:
1 I swam a kilometre.
2 He forgot my homework.
3 She sent the letter to the lawyer.
4 He lent me his bike.
5 She put them in the cupboard.
6 He fell on the stairs.
7 She lost 100 euros.
8 They ran three kilometres.

4 1 swam
2 caught
3 rode; rode
4 cut/broke/burnt; hurt
5 drove
6 wrote/sent
7 cost
8 came/got
9 rang
10 bought
11 began
12 woke (up)

5 1 driven
2 ridden
3 cut
4 won/lost/spent
5 spoken
6 hit/hurt
7 broken
8 fallen

possible answers:
1 Yes, I drove my brother's car last summer. I was quite scared.
2 No, I haven't.
3 Yes, I cut my hair very badly when I was a child.
4 Yes, I have. I spent a large sum of money to buy a house.
5 No, I haven't.
6 No, I haven't.
7 Yes, I have. I broke my arm last year.
8 Yes, I have. I fell from a tree when I was six years old.

Unit 40

1 1 She's got blue eyes.
2 They've got a small dog.
3 I haven't got a smartphone.
4 He hasn't got any money.
5 Have you got any sisters?
6 Has she got a flat in town?
7 They haven't got a shop now.
8 Have they got a big office?

2 1 Has she got any children?
2 They've got a lovely garden.
3 Has she got long hair?
4 My sister hasn't got/doesn't have a boyfriend.
5 Have you got a computer?/Do you have a computer?
6 We haven't got any friends here./We don't have any friends here.

3 1 got
2 Do
3 Have
4 Do
5 Have
6 Do

4 *possible answers*:
1 Yes, I have. I use it to go to college.
2 Yes, I do. It's an Apple.
3 Yes, they have. His name's Barney.
4 No, they don't.
5 Yes, I've got the *Oxford Essential Dictionary*.
6 Yes, I do. I've got an American friend, and a German friend who speaks excellent English.

5

GROUP 1	GROUP 2	GROUP 3	GROUP 4	GROUP 5
rest	breakfast	bath	swim	holiday
break	lunch	shower	run	weekend
	dinner	wash	walk	journey

6 1 walk/look
2 drink
3 dinner
4 swim
5 rest
6 journey

7 1 eat
2 walk/run
3 break
4 look/walk
5 time/day
6 weekend
7 holiday/time
8 bath

Unit 41

1 1 What does his wife do?
2 His company makes software programs./ His software company makes programs.
3 Why does English make you tired?
4 I want to do Spanish at school next year./ Next year I want to do Spanish at school.
5 Is this jumper made of wool?
6 What did you do last night?

2 1 made
2 do
3 do
4 makes
5 made
6 made
7 do
8 make

3 *possible answers*:
1 Cars and pianos are made in the UK.
2 I make little bags for friends.
3 Music makes me cry, and sometimes films as well.
4 I did maths, English, French, German, History, Geography, Chemistry, Physics, Biology and PE.
5 I'll probably watch TV after dinner.
6 I went shopping, saw an exhibition at an art gallery, and had dinner in a restaurant with friends.

4 *your own answers*

5 1 done
2 do
3 make
4 made
5 did
6 made
7 make
8 make

6 1 e 2 f 3 b 4 a 5 c

7 1 make
2 make
3 make
4 do
5 do
6 make
7 do

8 *possible answers*:
1 Yes, always.
2 Yes, usually when I'm speaking.
3 No, they're very quiet.
4 Not a lot.
5 Yes, very often.
6 No, not really, but I don't want to be poor.
7 No, not always. It depends how important something is.

Unit 42

1 1 Did you get my message?
2 He gets angry if you're late.
3 We got home late last night.
4 It's getting cold.
5 I got three letters today.
6 Where did you get that bag?
7 He needs to get a job.
8 Do you want to get a/the train?

2 1 receive
2 become
3 arrive
4 become
5 receive
6 buy
7 be given
8 travel

3 *possible answers*:
1 getting cold
2 get here/home/back
3 get them
4 get a/the bus
5 get one
6 get it.
7 getting late.
8 get a bus/taxi
9 got a good mark/grade
10 get every day/week

4 *possible answers*:
1 I get the bus every day.
2 It doesn't get very cold in my country.
3 I get around/about 10 texts every day.
4 I got a new skirt.
5 You can get information about my town from the internet.

Unit 43

1 1 1 3 4 5 5 7 4
2 2 4 3 6 1 8 5

2 1 see
2 watch
3 see/watch
4 see
5 watch
6 see
7 saw
8 saw/watched

3 1 see
2 watch
3 see/watch
4 saw/watched
5 see
6 see
7 see

4 *possible answers*:
1 No, I can't see very well without glasses because my eyes are bad. When I'm driving, I have to wear them.
2 Yes, I watch him often – it's lovely to watch him.
3 I always watch the news and sports.
4 I saw a programme yesterday about Iran – it was very interesting.
5 I see her every week.
6 I see them every day.
7 Yes, it's difficult because it has a lot of meanings.

Unit 44

1 1 control
2 promise
3 over
4 cause
5 copy

2 1 H 2 M 3 H 4 H and M 5 H 6 M

3 1 cost
2 fighting
3 control
4 promised
5 chat
6 surprise
7 smell
8 dreaming
9 caused
10 sleep

4 1 I had a dream about you.
2 Did he make a comment on the report?
3 She made a promise to help me.
4 Does this soap have a nice smell?
5 They gave him a surprise.
6 I must send/write a reply to Jilly's letter. / I must send/write Jilly a reply.
7 Did you give Mo a call?
8 I had a look at her newspaper.
9 Could you make a copy of this?
10 He gave me a smile this morning.

5 *possible answers*:
1 I sometimes dream about people in my family who I don't see very often. It's strange.
2 Travelling by train costs a lot of money in the UK.
3 Some cheese has a very strong smell. And my dog has a strong smell too, but I don't mind it!
4 The fact that people are extremely rich or extremely poor causes a lot of problems.
5 It surprises me that people have such different ideas about politics.
6 The world can't control the internet. It's very good in some ways, but dangerous in others.

Unit 45

1 1 ✓
2 ✓
3 butter/some butter
4 ✓
5 bread/some bread
6 ✓
7 olive oil/some olive oil
8 rice/some rice
9 jam/some jam
10 ✓
11 cheese/some cheese/a piece of cheese

2 1 pasta
2 cheese
3 cake
4 rice
5 pasta
6 chocolates
7 Butter
8 biscuits

3 *your own answers*

4 1 a
2 g
3 b
4 c
5 e
6 f

5 1 Could I have twelve eggs, please?
2 Do you need a bag?
3 Have you got any French cheese?
4 How much pasta do you need?
5 That's just over half a kilo.
6 How many oranges do you need?

6 1 got; many
2 have; much; grams; all
3 Could/Can; just; That's;
4 ready; need

Unit 46

1 grapes, lemon, nuts, strawberries, pineapple, pear, orange, peach, apple

2 1 oranges
2 lemons
3 peaches
4 pineapples
5 bananas
6 nuts

3 1 Bananas
2 Oranges
3 Pineapples
4 Nuts
5 Sweet
6 Grapes
7 Strawberries
8 Peaches
9 Fruit

4 *your own answers*

5 1 peas
2 onion
3 pepper
4 potato
5 cabbage
6 lettuce
7 beans
8 cucumber
9 mushroom
10 tomato
11 garlic
12 carrot

6 1 T
2 T
3 F
4 T
5 F
6 T
7 T
8 F
9 F
10 T

7 *possible answers (for Britain)*:
cabbage: Yes, but not much.
mushrooms: Yes, a lot.
red peppers: Yes, but not much.
fresh tomatoes: Yes, a lot.
frozen peas: Yes, a lot.
cooked onions: Yes, a lot.
fresh cucumber: Yes, a lot.
lettuce: Yes, a lot.
frozen carrots: Yes, but not much.
beans: Yes, a lot.
cold potatoes: Yes, but not much.
garlic: Yes, but not much.

Unit 47

1 1 F – They don't eat meat or fish.
2 T
3 F – It's a type of bird.
4 F – You get bacon from pigs.
5 T
6 T
7 F – Squid is a type of seafood.
8 F – Pig is an animal.
9 T
10 F – You get ham from pigs.

2 1 beef
2 ham
3 tuna
4 duck
5 crab
6 squid
7 bacon
8 sausages
9 pork
10 prawns

3 1 Pork, because it's a type of meat, not an animal.
2 Lamb, because it isn't from a pig.
3 Tuna, because it's a fish, not a type of meat.
4 Vegetarian, because it's not a type of meat, fish or seafood.
5 Cow, because it's an animal, not a type of meat.
6 Salmon, because it's a fish.

4 *possible answers*:
1 I like beef but it's expensive so I don't eat it very often.
2 I don't eat squid. It's very difficult to buy where I live.
3 I eat a lot of salmon.
4 I don't like crab so I don't eat it.
5 I like tuna.
6 I eat prawns, often with pasta.
7 I don't like duck – I prefer to see ducks swimming.
8 I like lamb.

Unit 48

1 1 3 3 6 5 3 7 1
2 3 4 6 6 2 8 3

2 1 fork
2 spoon
3 plate
4 bowl
5 bottle
6 fizzy water
7 glasses
8 wine
9 red
10 white
11 bottle
12 beer
13 salt
14 black pepper
15 bottles
16 oil
17 vinegar

3 *possible answers, from China*:
On restaurant tables in my country we usually have chopsticks, bowls, spoons, cups or glasses, and a pot of tea or a bottle of water. We have dishes for food. We sometimes have plates, napkins, and pepper, too.

We don't usually have knives, forks, salt, vinegar, white wine, red wine, beer, or fizzy water.

We never have oil on the table.

Unit 49

1 1 It's boiled rice.
2 The potatoes are fried.
3 A cheese sauce.
4 The first course was salad.
5 Did you have ice cream?
6 There was fruit for dessert.
7 I had tomato soup.
8 How was the apple pie?

2 1 F – You eat ice cream with a spoon.
2 T
3 T
4 F – You eat soup in chips in different bowls.
5 T
6 T
7 F – People don't have cream on pizza.
8 T
9 T
10 F – Apple pie is a dessert.

3 1 sauce
2 pie
3 fried
4 soup
5 course
6 cream
7 boiled

4 *possible answer*:
I'd like the soup for the starter, and then duck with orange sauce and boiled potatoes for the main course. Then for the dessert, I'd like apple pie with cream.

5 1 some more
2 to order
3 another
4 meal
5 all right
6 tuna instead
7 of course
8 the
9 I'll
10 certainly
11 waiter
12 without

6 1 have
2 without
3 course
4 or still
5 some
6 Certainly/Sure/Of course
7 'll
8 bill
9 sure/certainly/of course

Unit 50

1 crisps / snack / cheese sandwich / cake / toasted sandwich
tea with lemon / drink / black coffee / a fizzy drink / orange juice

2 1 F – Ice is frozen water.
2 T
3 T
4 F – Hot chocolate is a drink.
5 T
6 T
7 F – You can have a drink or a snack in a café.
8 T
9 F – Crisps are not sweet.
10 T

3 1 bread
2 sandwich
3 chocolate
4 ice
5 coffee/tea
6 drink(s)
7 fizzy/alcoholic/hot
8 pub
9 white
10 black
11 juice
12 tea/coffee

4 *your own answers*

5

1	S	3	D	5	S	7	S	9	D
2	S	4	S	6	D	8	D	10	S

6 B I'd like two toasted ham sandwiches, please.
A Is that to have here or take away?
B To have here, please.
A Is that everything?
B Can I get two teas, please?
A It will be a couple of minutes. Please take a seat.

7
1 Can I **have/get** a tea with lemon, please?
2 To drink here or **take** away?
3 To **drink/have** here.
4 Would you **like** brown bread?
5 Yes, **please**.
6 OK, anything **else**?
7 **No**, thanks.
8 Fine. It will be a couple of minutes.
9 **Take/Have** a seat, please.

Unit 51

1

1	to	5	ride
2	car	6	both are correct
3	both are correct	7	both are correct
4	on	8	coach

2

1	rides	5	motorbike
2	coach	6	foot
3	lorries/trucks	7	vehicles
4	underground/car/ train	8	vans/a van

3 *possible answers*:
1 Yes, I can. I learnt to drive when I was 17.
2 When I was about 7 or 8, I think.
3 I usually go by bus, but I can also get a train. I can't walk – it's too far.
4 No, I can't and I wouldn't like to.
5 Yes, it's excellent. It's not expensive and it's very clean and safe.
6 Yes, I sometimes go by coach, for example if I'm going to a football match.

4

1	traffic	5	speed limit
2	rush hour	6	a quiet road
3	main road	7	motorway
4	miles per hour		

5
1 busy; hour
2 main
3 far
4 get; unfortunately
5 journey

7 *possible answers for a driver in Britain*:
1 Yes. Sometimes there's too much traffic, but often there are accidents or bad weather.
2 70 miles an hour.
3 Not very often. I prefer smaller, slower roads.
4 Yes, we do.
5 7.30 a.m – 9.30 a.m. and again between 4.30 p.m. and 6.30 p.m.
6 I went to Brighton by car a few weeks ago. It's about 130 miles. Unfortunately, there was a lot of traffic and the roads were very busy, so it took about four hours.

Unit 52

1 get off the bus; How long does it take?; the next stop; It doesn't take long; Excuse me.

2
1 Does the 24 stop outside the post office?
2 Where do I get off for the cinema?
3 Does the 24 go to the park?
4 How often does the 24 run?
5 Which is the last stop for the 16?
6 How many stops is it to the railway station?
7 Excuse me, which bus do I get to the school?
8 How long does it take to the railway station?

3

1	Yes, it does.	5	The railway station.
2	At the next stop.	6	Five.
3	No, it doesn't.	7	The 16 or the 24.
4	Every ten minutes.	8	Fifteen minutes.

4

1	routes	7	timetable
2	stop	8	run
3	next	9	every
4	last	10	takes
5	get off	11	outside
6	goes	12	long

5 *possible answers*:
1 Yes, at the end of the road.
2 The 9 and the 15.
3 The town centre or the airport.
4 One runs every 15 minutes, the other every half hour.
5 Sometimes to the town centre, but I don't get the bus very often.
6 About six.
7 About twenty minutes.

Unit 53

1
1 a fast train
2 get off the train
3 the (train) fare
4 the 7 o'clock train
5 a seat
6 at a railway station/train station
7 the timetable
8 a carriage

2 1 fare
2 coach/carriage
3 missed
4 get/take
5 last
6 get on
7 waited
8 timetable
9 for
10 slow
11 journey

3 1 seat
2 change
3 return
4 direct
5 passengers
6 London
7 office
8 train
9 there

4 1 change
2 leaves
3 platform
4 gets
5 take/get
6 to
7 single
8 return
9 book/reserve

5 *possible answers*:
1 Last Thursday.
2 A return.
3 I went to Oxford for a meeting.
4 It was £10.50.
5 No, I didn't have time.
6 I had to change at Didcot.

Unit 54

1 1 The bookshop is opposite ~~of~~ the hotel.
2 Go straight on and keep ~~to~~ going.
3 Is there a cinema near ~~from~~ here?
4 It's on your left ~~side~~.
5 Turn ~~to~~ left and go straight on.
6 It's the third ~~road~~ turning on the right. (*also possible*: It's the third road ~~turning~~ on the right.)
7 Where's the ~~most~~ nearest post office?

2 1 D 2 S 3 S 4 S 5 D 6 D

3 1 Excuse me. How do I get to the museum?
2 Go along here and turn left.
3 Excuse me. Is there a post office near here?
4 It's the third turning on the right.
5 Excuse me. Do you know the way to the station?
6 Cross the road at the traffic lights.

4 1 turning
2 much
3 left/right/corner
4 me
5 road/river
6 going
7 on
8 here
9 way
10 lights

5 Conversation 1
1 get
2 straight
3 turning
4 left
5 much
6 problem

Conversation 2
1 Excuse
2 near
3 along
4 take
5 turning
6 right
7 opposite
8 thanks
9 That's

6 *possible answers*:
1 Go straight on, then turn left into Frith Street, and the hotel is on the next corner on your right.
2 Go straight on, then turn left into Frith Street. Take the first turning on the right and keep going. The museum is on your left.
3 Yes, go straight on, and take first turning on your right/turn right. The post office is on the corner.

Unit 55

1 1 f
2 h
3 j
4 b
5 i
6 e
7 d
8 a
9 c

2 1 in a road
2 in a restaurant
3 in a school
4 in a shop window
5 on a drinks machine
6 in a hotel window
7 near the sea
8 in a bank

3 1 signs/notices
2 notice/sign
3 sale
4 allowed
5 let
6 gap
7 closed/shut; open
8 feed
9 Mind
10 toilets

4 1 no parking
2 entrance/no exit
3 no smoking
4 keep off the grass
5 out of order
6 please do not feed the animals
7 allowed
8 queue here
9 danger
10 keep right

5 NO exit
PLEASE queue here
MIND the gap, your head
KEEP right/left

Unit 56

1 1 S
2 D
3 D
4 D
5 S
6 D
7 S
8 D
9 S

2 1 art gallery, museum, palace, church and a castle
2 market
3 library
4 museum, palace, castle, art gallery and church
5 park
6 tower
7 post office
8 bridge
9 church (or castle or palace)
10 buildings
11 places

3 *possible answers*:
1 False. No, there are three or four.
2 Yes, there is. I go there about once a month.
3 Yes, we have both.
4 Yes, there are two big parks and several small ones.
5 Most of them are.
6 False. No, there's a market every Saturday.
7 Yes, there is.
8 False. No, it's a lovely place to live.

4
1 noisy
2 lots
3 view
4 opinion
5 safe
6 dirty
7 There's
8 pollution

5 **Yes**: 2, 3, 6, 7
No: 1, 4, 5, 8

6
1 opinion
2 dangerous
3 do
4 busy/crowded
5 crowds
6 clean
7 pollution
8 quiet

Unit 57

1 own, produce, grow

2
1 F – There are cows in the field.
2 T
3 T
4 T
5 T
6 T
7 T
8 F – There aren't a lot of trees near the farmer.
9 F – The farmer grows fruit and keeps cows.
10 F – The lake isn't in the valley.

3
1 valley; hill
2 lake
3 grass
4 gate
5 fields
6 own
7 farming
8 grow; produce

4 *possible answers*:
1 I live on a hill.
2 No, there isn't, but there's a river near my home.
3 Yes, in my garden.
4 Yes, I can, at the end of the garden.
5 Yes, there are some on the hill.
6 I own two dogs.
7 Yes, it is.
8 Farmers produce a lot of milk and cheese. They also grow vegetables and wheat.

5 1 a 2 f 3 g 4 b 5 c 6 d

6
1 water
2 Fresh
3 area
4 earth
5 natural
6 creative
7 pick
8 nature

7 *possible answers*:
1 Yes, I often do in the summer.
2 Yes. I grow strawberries and raspberries, and I pick them from June to September.
3 Yes, I grow a lot of plants outside, but nothing inside.
4 Fresh air is really important. I like to see wild flowers in the countryside. The beauty of nature makes me feel happier. I like to see areas with plants in town; it brings more colour to the streets.

Unit 58

1
1 Anna and Rob
2 on the top floor
3 Lucy
4 on the top floor
5 the roof
6 8
7 front door
8 the second floor
9 on the first floor
10 the lift; the stairs
11 You put the key in the lock to open the door.

2
1 lift
2 apartment
3 ground floor
4 front door
5 steps
6 neighbour
7 roof
8 stairs
9 top floor

3
1 floor
2 ground
3 neighbours
4 lift; stairs
5 steps
6 key

4 *possible answers*:
1 I live in an apartment on the second floor.
2 There's another flat and the person who looks after the building lives there.
3 An older lady called Dona Angeles is my neighbour, and a married couple live on the top floor.
4 It's got stairs, no lift.
5 No, there are no steps to the front door.
6 Yes, you have to open the door with a key.

5 view / modern / living room / hall / kitchen / home / dining room / upstairs / bedroom / parking / bathroom

6
1 living
2 bathroom
3 view
4 park
5 outside
6 views
7 hall
8 kitchen
9 study
10 Upstairs
11 bedrooms
12 bathrooms
13 parking
14 outside
15 inside

7 *possible answers*:
1 Most houses have two or three floors, but there are some very tall, old houses which have five floors.
2 Yes, they've got the same rooms, but in some houses there's an extra room for the washing machine.
3 A lot of houses in the modern part of the town have parking, but in the old part, parking is a big problem.

4 There are a lot of houses in the countryside, and just outside the centre of cities there are houses too.
5 Sometimes a very good garden makes a house a bit more expensive. A view of the sea will often make a house more expensive too.

Unit 59

1 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S 7 S

2
1 washing machine
2 dishwasher; sink
3 cupboard
4 bin
5 oven
6 fridge
7 full
8 turn the oven; on/off
9 rubbish
10 empty
11 tap
12 equipment
13 cooker

3 *possible answers*:
We've got lots of cupboards, a sink and taps, an oven, a fridge, a washing machine, a bin, and a lot of kitchen equipment.
We haven't got a dishwasher.

4
1 prepare
2 homework
3 do
4 clean
5 look after
6 have to

5
1 feed
2 do the washing
3 task
4 washing up
5 do the housework
6 did my homework
7 look after
8 have to

6 *possible answers*:
In my home, my husband and I both do some housework.
He does the washing up.
I do the washing.
He cooks the dinner.
I clean the kitchen.
I do the ironing.
We probably both do the same number of everyday tasks because we both have full-time jobs – and also, he's better at cooking than I am.

Unit 60

1 **GROUP A**: table, seat, suitcase, sheet
GROUP B: match, picture, furniture, nature, Portuguese
GROUP C: international, dictionary

2 1 f 2 i 3 h 4 a 5 g 6 b 7 c 8 e

3
1 wardrobe
2 sheets
3 wall
4 suitcase
5 lamp
6 space
7 pieces of furniture
8 wooden
9 table
10 national
11 international
12 a few

4 *possible answer*:
I'm Lucy, and I live at home with my family. There's a bed with sheets, a table and a lamp on it. I've got a wardrobe in a corner of the room and a comfortable chair to sit on. I've got lots of pictures of my family and friends on the wall. I've got a suitcase on top of the wardrobe. The furniture is all wooden and it's a really nice room.

5
1 do; a brush
2 have
3 puts on
4 shave
5 washbasin
6 towel; have
7 bath
8 brush; mirror

6
1 bath
2 towel
3 mirror
4 hair
5 clean/brush
6 mirror/washbasin
7 put on
8 teeth
9 wash
10 brush
11 shave
12 razor

7
1 teeth
2 hair
3 mirror
4 brush
5 make-up; put …on
6 have; razor; electric razor

8 *possible answers*:
1 I brush them after breakfast.
2 Twice a day.
3 Lots of times!
4 Yes, I do.
5 I only wear it sometimes.
6 My husband shaves every morning with a razor.

Unit 61

1
1 armchair
2 carpet
3 floor
4 light
5 window
6 fire
7 sofa
8 shelf
9 television
10 curtain
11 clock
12 telephone

2
1 F – There are two windows.
2 T
3 T
4 T
5 T
6 T
7 T
8 F – There are two corners.
9 T
10 F – There are four curtains.
11 T
12 T
13 F – There are two shelves.
14 T

3
1 phone/telephone
2 sofa; armchair
3 curtains
4 clock
5 fan
6 fire
7 light
8 shelf
9 carpet
10 corner
11 window

4 *possible answers*:
1 I've got a sofa, an armchair and a small table in my living room.
2 I've got a TV.
3 I've got a carpet on the floor and a telephone on a shelf.

Unit 62

1
1 uncertain
2 unlucky
3 irregular
4 correct
5 unnecessary
6 unhealthy
7 correct
8 impolite

2
1 polite
2 informal
3 regular
4 lucky
5 unnecessary
6 impolite
7 uncertain
8 unhealthy

3
1 polite
2 Irregular
3 informal
4 unlucky
5 uncertain/unsure
6 unhealthy
7 rude
8 unnecessary

4 *possible answers*:
1 Yes, my neighbours are all lovely.
2 That's true.
3 Yes, most of them are interesting.
4 No, I'm usually lucky – the weather is good.
5 That's true.
6 That's true.
7 That's true, but I sometimes text people when I'm having a meal.
8 That's probably true, but I like to have a shower every day.

Unit 63

1
1 No
2 Yes
3 No
4 Yes
5 Yes
6 No
7 Yes
8 Yes
9 No
10 No

2
1 strong
2 awake
3 poor
4 low
5 wide
6 alive
7 light

3
1 hard
2 weak
3 rich
4 dead
5 high
6 light
7 narrow
8 asleep
9 poor
10 soft

4 Words that are ticked: useless, common, different, general, media, useful, similar
Other words: specific, unusual, tradition

5
1 T
2 T
3 F – A traditional building is not modern in style.
4 F – An unusual event doesn't happen a lot.
5 T
6 F – A useless thing won't help you.
7 T
8 F – A lazy person doesn't work hard.
9 F – It's usually light in the middle of the day.
10 T

6
1 general
2 useful
3 light
4 unusual
5 traditional
6 hardworking
7 useless

7 *possible answers*:
It's unusual for me to get colds and flu.
I prefer modern houses.
I prefer a dark room.
We enjoy similar things.
I think social media is both positive and negative.
I don't like specific holiday plans.
Sometimes it's useful to know about history.
They think I'm quite hardworking.

Unit 64

1
1 only
2 still
3 especially
4 only
5 even
6 still

2
1 He's 75 and he **still** plays tennis.
2 It's nice there, **especially** in the morning.
3 There are **only** three students in the class.
4 He **even** works on Sundays./He works, **even** on Sundays.
5 She's **still** at university.
6 Rio is big, but Sao Paolo is even bigger.

3
1 Only
2 still
3 especially
4 only
5 Even
6 especially
7 still
8 even

4
1 both answers are correct
2 really
3 both answers are correct
4 really
5 both answers are correct
6 quite
7 both answers are correct
8 really

5
1 extremely/really
2 rather/pretty
3 a bit
4 very/really
5 a little
6 quite/pretty
7 very/extremely
8 rather/pretty

6 *possible answers*:
1 slow/unfriendly
2 handsome/attractive/friendly/nice
3 enjoyed it/hated it
4 lonely/bored/unhappy
5 interesting/good
6 late
7 friendly/nice
8 lazy

Unit 65

1
1 slowly
2 badly
3 angrily
4 late
5 clearly
6 happily
7 well
8 hard
9 easily
10 quietly
11 correctly
12 fast

2
1 I write very clearly.
2 My cousin sings well.
3 My boss works hard.
4 Lola drives carefully.
5 Robina answered the questions correctly.
6 Julio doesn't pronounce words clearly.
7 Miriam did the exercise easily.
8 Amina works very fast.
9 My little boy reads slowly.
10 She spoke to Sam angrily.

3
1 late
2 loudly
3 clearly/slowly
4 badly
5 carefully
6 hard

4 *possible answers*:
1 I never arrive late; I always arrive at the right time.
2 My father speaks very loudly.
3 Yes, she does.
4 I think I drive well.
5 Yes, I have to think carefully.
6 Sometimes I relax a little, but usually I work hard.

Unit 66

1
1 D
2 S
3 S
4 D
5 S
6 D
7 S

2
1 PE/physical education
2 literature
3 history
4 geography
5 art
6 languages
7 chemistry
8 computer science
9 biology
10 design and technology
11 physics
12 arts subjects
13 science subjects

3 *possible answers*:
1 I was good at English literature.
2 I was quite good at geography.
3 I was bad/terrible at maths.
4 I didn't study biology, physics or chemistry after the age of 15.
5 The subject I liked most was English literature.
6 The subject I hated most was physics.

Unit 67

1
2 g
3 b
4 e
5 a
6 f
7 d

2
1 leave
2 get/find
3 carry on/continue/stay
4 options
5 either
6 or
7 training

3
1 uniform
2 leave
3 get; training
4 carry on/continue/stay
5 at

4 *possible answers, from Kenya*:
0 Children in Kenya start school when they are between 5 and 7.
1 Yes, the children usually wear a uniform.
2 They can leave school at the age of 18.
3 At this age, they do more training at university or at a college.
4 Yes, they stay in school since they will not have completed high school education until they complete Form Four at the age of 18.
5 They can go to university or a college to get training for their future career or a particular job, for example working as a doctor.

5
1 no
2 five
3 two
4 A (for biology)
5 E (for maths)
6 Grade C (a pass)

6
1 take/do
2 do
3 well; grade/mark
4 results
5 badly; failed
6 worst

7 *possible answers*:
1 Most of my lessons were 50 minutes.
2 Yes, quite hard.
3 I took important exams at 16 and 18.
4 I took nine exams when I was 16, and four exams when I was 18.
5 Yes, fortunately I did.
6 Biology is my best subject.

Unit 68

1
1 do
2 term
3 write
4 last
5 library
6 do
7 Unfortunately
8 After
9 takes

2
1 degree; in
2 research
3 fortunately
4 again
5 essay; took
6 last
7 bookshop
8 unfortunately

3 *possible answers, from Mexico*:
1 Here in Mexico, the course lasts five years.
2 Unfortunately, only 16%.
3 Unfortunately, most students don't do that.
4 Between four or five months.
5 It is not always possible.

4
1 S
2 D
3 S
4 D
5 S
6 S
7 D

5
1 doctor
2 engineer
3 architect
4 lawyer
5 lecturer
6 designer
7 journalist
8 businessman

6 1 professor
2 law
3 manager
4 journalist
5 lectures
6 business
7 reporter
8 engineering
9 science
10 businesswoman

7 *your own answers*

Unit 69

1 1 job
2 shop assistant
3 nurse
4 long
5 clothes
6 hasn't
7 employee
8 boss
9 dentist
10 Models
11 builder
12 in the police

2 1 D 3 S 5 D 7 S
2 S 4 D 6 S

3 1 a pilot, a dentist, a teacher
2 a dentist, a nurse, a fashion designer, a hairdresser, a builder, a chef, a soldier
3 a pilot, a teacher (a maths teacher), a businessman/woman, a builder
4 unemployed
5 a nurse, a soldier, a police officer/policeman/policewoman, a pilot, a chef, a dentist
6 a secretary, a cleaner, a businessman/businesswoman

4 1 secretary
2 a pilot
3 a hairdresser
4 the boss
5 a fashion designer
6 a model
7 a teacher
8 a chef

5 *possible answers*:
1 My friend Lucia is a secretary.
2 Carlo is a chef at the pizzeria.
3 Christelle is my hairdresser.
4 My friend Marissa is a teacher.
5 I don't know anyone who is a taxi driver.
6 Mr Ranelli is my dentist.
7 My mum is a businesswoman.
8 My uncle is the boss in a small factory.

Unit 70

1 1 long hours
2 a factory
3 an office
4 work for
5 does he earn
6 hours a day
7 an American airline
8 earn much
9 a year
10 ten to six

2 1 hospital; in
2 company; salary; a
3 long; from; to
4 earn
5 in; army
6 for; airline
7 advertising
8 manages; manager

3 *possible answers*:
1 I'm a reporter.
2 I work for a local newspaper.
3 I work in an office, but I go out and talk to people.
4 I work long hours, often 10 or 12 hours a day.
5 No, we don't earn very much.

4 1 e 2 f 3 b 4 a 5 d

5 1 We discussed our problems.
2 I have a meeting this afternoon.
3 She spends a lot of time travelling.
4 Could you organize the meeting?
5 My job involves using a computer.
6 I met her for the first time last week.

6 1 clients
2 discuss
3 project
4 designing
5 involves
6 organize
7 send
8 reports
9 colleagues
10 spend

Unit 71

1 She offered me the job. 7
I went for an interview. 5
I posted it. 4
I decided to apply. 2
I saw an advertisement for a job. 1
I accepted the job. 8
I filled in the form. 3
The interviewer asked me questions. 6

2 1 offered
2 post
3 interview
4 fill
5 training
6 applying
7 experience
8 accept
9 advertisement/advert/ad
10 interviewer

3 *possible answers*:
1 I've applied for two jobs: a teaching job and a job in advertising.
2 I had interviews for both jobs.
3 My training for the teaching job was a one-year teacher training course.
4 I filled in a form for my interview.
5 I'd like to work with young people, especially helping them with sports activities.

Unit 72

1 1 Yes
2 No
3 Yes
4 Yes (usually)
5 No
6 Yes
7 Yes
8 No

2 1 He's at work today.
2 This is such a good book.
3 Stand up when she enters the room.
4 The film was so long.
5 She's part of a small group.
6 This is such a difficult job.

3 1 worries
2 whole
3 so
4 enter
5 such
6 charities; parts
7 support
8 amazing/incredible

4 *possible answers*:
1 It was quite good and I enjoyed the work.
2 Yes, I was worried about arriving on time and wearing the right clothes.
3 Yes, they were very friendly and the boss was amazing.
4 Yes, there were three of us and we all worked and had lunch together.

Unit 73

1

1 keyboard	4 menu	7 screen
2 window	5 tablet	8 printer
3 laptop	6 mouse	9 program

2

1 laptop/tablet	6 program
2 screen	7 document/window
3 menu	8 mouse
4 printer	9 keep
5 tablet	

3 *possible answers*:
1 No, I haven't. I've got an Apple Mac.
2 Yes, I've got a printer and I use it nearly every day.
3 I haven't got a laptop, but I've got a tablet and I keep it in the kitchen.
4 Yes, I've got thousands. They're mostly of friends and family.
5 I prefer a PC because it has a bigger screen and keyboard.

4 save, move, type, remove, replace, close

5 h, e, d, c, f, a, b, g (*also possible*: h, e, f, d, c, b, a, g)

6

1 lines	6 save
2 careful	7 replace; with
3 copies	8 cut
4 file	9 types
5 print/make	10 closed

Unit 74

1
1 ~~reply~~
2 ~~the internet~~
3 ~~document~~
4 ~~a reply~~
6 ~~the internet~~

2
1 Did you **get/receive** ...
2 The letter **got** lost ...
3 Have you **replied to** ...
4 ... not **on** the internet
5 ... jamie **at** gmail dot com
6 Could you **email/send/post** ...
7 I need to **check** ...
8 ... send it by **post/email**
9 ... sue 1 at gmail **dot** com

3

A	B	C
1 sent	4 receive/get	6 reply
2 letter	5 reply	7 on
3 lost		8 internet

4 website, virus, recognize, online

5

1 S	3 D	5 D	7 D
2 S	4 D	6 D	8 S

6

1 videos	5 virus
2 passwords	6 search
3 blog	7 click; recognize
4 websites	8 contains

7 *possible answers*:
1 Yes, I do, usually music videos.
2 No, never.
3 No, I haven't.
4 I use the BBC website, Wikipedia, and the Arsenal football website.
5 No, it hasn't.
6 Yes, a lot.
7 No, I don't because it's dangerous.
8 I don't open it. I delete it.

Unit 75

1

1 S	3 S	5 D	7 S
2 D	4 S	6 S	

2

1 message; rang; answer	5 phone; messaged
2 number	6 make
3 call; busy; phone	7 message
4 wrong	8 mobile; double

3 *possible answers*:
1 Double three eight, nine seven four. Mobile: oh double seven double oh, nine double oh, six, eight four
2 My mother and my sister.
3 Yes, I do. I message my friends all the time.
4 Hello?
5 No, not very often.

4 *correct answers*:
1 Oh, hello, is that Jackie?
2 Just a moment ...
3 Speaking.
4 Oh hello, how are you?
5 I'm sorry, he's out.
6 OK, I'll call back later.
7 Yes, bye.

5

Conversation 1	Conversation 2
1 speaking	8 speak to
2 This is	9 just a
3 in/there	10 get
4 please	
5 at the moment	**Conversation 3**
6 call/phone/ring; back	11 Is that
7 bye/goodbye	12 speaking
	13 it

6 *a possible answer, from Poland:*
The phrases we use in Polish for answering the phone are quite different. We have a special word for *hello* on the phone: *halo*. Instead of *Speaking*, we say *Słucham*, which means literally 'I'm listening', and we use *Mówi Marisa* ('Marisa is speaking') for *It's Marisa*. When we ask for someone, we can say either *Czy to Marisa?* (which is basically the same as in English) or *Czy zastałam/zastałem Marisę?* (literally, 'Have I got hold of Marisa?').

Unit 76

1
1 owner
2 visitor
3 traveller
4 winner
5 instructor
6 driver
7 television/TV actor
8 factory worker

2 radio listener, film actor, bus driver, driving instructor, office worker, English teacher

3
1 visitors
2 owner
3 race/competition
4 driver
5 workers
6 listeners
7 readers
8 speaker
9 winner
10 teacher

Unit 77

1
1 flying
2 shopping
3 camping
4 spelling
5 sightseeing
6 understanding
7 teaching
8 driving

2 *your own answers*

3 writing English, painting pictures, sleeping in a tent, listening to music, playing football, learning languages, buying clothes, cooking meals

4 *possible answers*:
1 Writing English is quite difficult.
2 Painting pictures is not something I do.
3 Sleeping in a tent is not something I enjoy.
4 Listening to music is something I do a lot.
5 Playing football is something I used to do.
6 Learning languages is fun.
7 Buying clothes is boring for me.
8 Cooking meals is something I do every day.

Unit 78

1
1 celebrate; celebration
2 describe; description
3 predict; prediction
4 decide; decision
5 organize; organization
Note that the stress in nouns falls on the syllable before the last syllable.

2
1 invention
2 celebration
3 description
4 solution
5 prediction
6 organization

3
1 decision, decided
2 solve, solution
3 description
4 celebrate
5 invented
6 organizing; organization
7 predicted
8 inventions

4

VERB	NOUN	VERB	NOUN
move	movement	discover	*discovery*
succeed	success	*think*	thought
arrange	*arrangement*	argue	*argument*
choose	*choice*	complain	*complaint*

5
1 an argument
2 complaint
3 thought
4 success
5 arrangements
6 discovery

6
1 complaint
2 choose
3 choice
4 argue
5 argument
6 succeed
7 success
8 thoughts

7 *possible answers*:
1 No, I haven't. My neighbours are very quiet.
2 No, I like to think about it carefully.
3 Yes, we could choose between Spanish and German, for example.
4 No, never.
5 No, I haven't.
6 No, I'm not interested in business.
7 No, family is the most important thing for me.
8 Yes, a lot.

Unit 79

1 bathroom railway station first floor address book bus stop phone number dishwasher capital letter police officer

2
1 a bathroom
2 a dining room
3 a bus stop
4 a DJ (disc jockey)
5 a railway station
6 an art gallery
7 an address book
8 a dishwasher

3
1 number
2 officer
3 jockey
4 mark
5 tense; participle
6 floor
7 stop
8 phrasal
9 full
10 capital

4 department store, sports centre, ticket office, traffic lights, swimming pool, credit card, public transport, high street

5
1 public
2 credit
3 birthday
4 identity
5 high
6 traffic
7 park
8 machine
9 office
10 sales/shop; department

6
1 identity
2 centre
3 credit
4 pool
5 birthday
6 store

7 *possible answers*:
1 Yes, I have an identity card for work. It's got my name and a photo on it.
2 No, I don't.
3 Yes, I do. I use it for shopping.
4 No, I don't.
5 I don't send birthday cards. I email or call people to wish them a happy birthday.
6 Yes, I do. I usually buy clothes.

Unit 80

1 1 A 2 B 3 A 4 B 5 A 6 A

2 1 I hate chocolate.
2 They don't like doing homework very much.
3 He doesn't like speaking English very much.
4 I quite like shopping.
5 She doesn't like driving.
6 I don't mind working at night.

3

1	love/like	5	hate
2	all	6	like
3	mind	7	quite/really
4	really	8	at

4 *possible answers*:
1 Yes, I like going to the cinema too.
2 I quite like classical music, especially Bach and Vivaldi.
3 I love shopping – I go with my friends and we have a good time.
4 I don't mind driving, but it's not exciting.
5 I don't mind writing emails to my friends, but sometimes it's boring writing emails for work.
6 I love watching TV.
7 No, I hate housework.
8 I quite like talking on the phone to my friends.

5 1 I enjoy watching TV.
2 I'm not interested in politics.
3 My favourite film is *Star Wars*.
4 She prefers reading to writing.
5 He's an amazing boss.
6 Was the party good fun?
7 It's a boring programme.
8 Singing is enjoyable.

6

1	fun	5	interesting
2	prefer	6	enjoy
3	favourite	7	incredible
4	interested	8	modern

7 *possible answers*:
1 Yes, it's good fun.
2 No, I prefer fish.
3 I love Rio de Janeiro: it's a very exciting city.
4 No, I'm not interested in jazz.
5 Yes, I do. I read books and watch history programmes a lot.
6 I enjoy walking in the countryside with my dog.
7 No, the restaurants where I live aren't very good.
8 I prefer old houses.

Unit 81

1 **Inside your home**: play computer games; do a lot of drawing; collect stamps

2 1 g 2 b 3 a 4 f 5 c 6 d

3

1	does	6	goes
2	collects	7	play
3	play	8	watches
4	go	9	go
5	do	10	does

4 *possible answers*:
I do a lot of travelling, I go out with friends a lot, I watch TV, I do a lot of cooking.
I would like to go to the gym and play the guitar.
I'm not interested in fishing, camping, computer games, golf, drawing or painting.

5 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 D

6 1 ✓
2 False. Kolya is a good singer.
3 False. Kolya plays the guitar.
4 False. There are various clubs in schools.
5 ✓
6 False. Natasha is quite good at dancing.
7 False. Computers and collecting things are popular hobbies.
8 False. Older people like repairing cars.

7

1	hobby	5	song
2	popular	6	at
3	various	7	repairing
4	singer		

8 *possible answers*:
0 Yes, I'm a member of a swimming club.
1 I love making things like clothes, and I also enjoy painting.
2 Young people particularly like sports of all kinds, but gaming is also very popular.
3 I have various hobbies.
4 I am in a singing group, but if I sing alone, my voice isn't very good.
5 I can sing 'Human' by Rag and Bone Man.
6 I'm good at making things for the house: cushions, for example.
7 Yes, I often break things, so it's a good thing I like repairing things.

Unit 82

1 ice hockey, motor racing, table tennis, American football, basketball

2

1	game	5	do
2	skiing	6	bit/lot
3	racing	7	players; team
4	go	8	goal

3 **INSIDE A BUILDING**: basketball, ice hockey, running, swimming, table tennis, tennis
OUTSIDE A BUILDING: American football, baseball, football/soccer, motor racing, running, skiing, swimming, tennis

4 *possible answers*:
1 I play a bit of football and basketball with friends.
2 I play tennis every week and go skiing in the winter.
3 I watch football, rugby and tennis on TV.
4 Football is the most popular sport in Britain, but swimming, cycling, motor racing, rugby and cricket are also popular.

5 1 match/game
2 against
3 to
4 scored
5 nil
6 beat
7 won
8 draw
9 against

6 1 match/game
2 against
3 lost
4 drew; with/against
5 time
6 points
7 beat
8 scored
9 won (or lost)
10 leading
11 score

7 *possible answers*:
Manchester City beat Arsenal 2-0. Sterling scored just before half-time, and Aguero scored the second goal in the 78th minute.

Unit 83

1 1 concert
2 orchestra
3 pianist
4 audience
5 perform
6 opera singer
7 performance

2 1 classical
2 pianist
3 violinist
4 orchestra
5 musical instruments
6 performance
7 audience
8 performed/played
9 pieces
10 by

3 *possible answers*:
1 I don't go to classical music concerts very often because they're quite expensive.
2 *La Bohème* by Puccini, *The Magic Flute* by Mozart, the *Eroica Symphony* by Beethoven and *Swan Lake* by Tchaikovsky
3 I learnt to play the piano as a child, but I don't play now.
4 No.
5 The guitar.

4 1 made
2 not good
3 cheaper
4 go
5 are able to
6 like

5 1 tour
2 live
3 album
4 hit
5 records/albums/CDs
6 musician
7 performer
8 festival
9 recorded
10 ability

6 *possible answers*:
1 I really like Radiohead.
2 I do both.
3 Yes, I saw them at Glastonbury.
4 *In Rainbows*.
5 Yes, they do.
6 No, but they have popular albums.

Unit 84

1 science violent exciting crime

2 1 thriller
2 comedy
3 action film
4 science fiction
5 cartoon
6 love story
7 horror film

3 1 sort
2 adventure/action
3 kind
4 romantic
5 horror
6 funny
7 type

4 1 romantic
2 violent
3 scary
4 funny

5 1 F – He's an actor.
2 T
3 T
4 T
5 F – It's a woman.
6 T
7 F – He's a director.

6 1 about
2 brilliant
3 in
4 stars
5 hero
6 actor
7 director
8 on
9 Let's

7 *possible answers*:
1 I like thrillers and action films.
2 It was a Polish film called *Cold War*.
3 It was on at our local cinema.
4 Joanna Kulig and Tomasz Kot.
5 Pawel Pawlikowski.
6 It's about two Polish people after the Second World War. It's a love story with an unhappy ending.

Unit 85

1
1 in
2 the
3 on
4 out
5 on
6 programme
7 –
8 of
9 a newspaper
10 of
11 crime

2
1 watch; saw/watched
2 believe/think; none
3 news; happened
4 listen; heard/listened to
5 paper/newspaper
6 on; drama
7 to
8 programme

4
1 D
2 S
3 D
4 D
5 S
6 S
7 S
8 D
9 S

5
1 magazines
2 reports
3 events
4 disasters
5 wars
6 opinion(s)
7 journalists/reporters
8 celebrities

6 *possible answers*:
1 This week, Greta Thunberg spoke to the US Congress about climate change.
2 In the last five years, the UK had a referendum on leaving the EU or not.
3 I buy a newspaper on Saturdays, but during the rest of the week I usually get news from the TV, the radio and the internet.
4 The meerkat adverts (for Compare the Market) on TV are not new now, but I think they are still popular.
5 Jon Snow is a famous TV news reporter in the UK.

Unit 86

1
1 F – Non-fiction is about real things, fiction is not about real events.
2 T
3 T
4 F – If you are in trouble, it's bad.
5 T
6 T
7 F – A novel is a story.
8 T
9 F – If you create something, you make it or make it happen.
10 T

2
1 series/number
2 novels
3 character
4 detective
5 created
6 rules
7 trouble
8 solves

3 *possible answers, from Poland*:
1 Olga Tokarczuk is a famous author who writes novels.
2 Bieguni (Flights) is a novel by Olga Tokarczuk.
3 Korona królów (Crown of Kings) is a popular series on TV.
4 King Kazimierz is one of the main characters in Korona królów.
5 Eberhard Mock is a famous detective in fiction.
6 I sometimes ride a bike on a zebra crossing.

4
1 same, mainly
2 mostly, home
3 realize, fine
4 achieve, receive
5 butter, publish
6 variety, another
7 blue, including
8 recent, see

5
1 with you
2 know it
3 good
4 lots of different things
5 is
6 short
7 mainly
8 more information

6
1 past; mostly/mainly
2 including
3 realized
4 published
5 variety
6 tried; achieved

Unit 87

1 1 g 2 d 3 f 4 b 5 a 6 c

2
1 flight
2 accommodation
3 booked/arranged
4 might
5 foreign
6 checked
7 packed
8 suitcase

3 *possible answers*:
1 Yes, I always book a long time before I travel because it's often cheaper.
2 Usually I do if I'm travelling with all the family. If I'm alone, I often don't.
3 No, I don't.
4 Yes, always. I need to know what I have.
5 No, never, but I know I should do.

4
1 No
2 Yes
3 No
4 Yes
5 No
6 Yes
7 No

5 1 d 2 f 3 a 4 b 5 e

6
1 available
2 single/double
3 double/single
4 en suite
5 dear
6 matter
7 a
8 include
9 afraid
10 extra
11 parking
12 details

Unit 88

1
1 went on
2 recommend
3 excellent
4 tourists
5 definitely
6 stay
7 tourism
8 chat

2 1 excellent
2 helpful
3 tourists
4 guests
5 staying
6 recommend
7 definitely/certainly

3 1 stay
2 service
3 chat
4 recommend
5 tourists

4 *possible answers*:
1 One night.
2 Yes, quite good.
3 Yes, I did.
4 Yes, definitely/certainly.
5 No, it's a business hotel.

5 1 g
2 a
3 f
4 d
5 b
6 e

6 1 sign
2 leave
3 call/take
4 pay
5 serve
6 change
7 collect
8 check

7 1 key
2 until/till
3 serve
4 have; have
5 out
6 call

Unit 89

1 1 board
2 check-in
3 boarding card
4 aeroplane
5 airport
6 hand luggage
7 airline
8 security

2 boarding pass; hand luggage; board the plane; check-in desk; ticket machine

3 1 passengers; check-in
2 reach
3 boarding; luggage; check
4 gate; board/get on
5 airports
6 print; machine
7 luggage

4 *possible answers*:
1 No, I use different airlines.
2 Yes, I do.
3 No, the first thing I do is check in, then I have a coffee.
4 Yes, of course.
5 No, it doesn't matter to me.
6 Yes, I do.

5 1 You get on the plane.
2 You fasten your seat belt.
3 The plane takes off.
4 Flight attendants provide drinks.
5 The plane lands.
6 You get off the plane.
7 Someone checks your passport.
8 You collect your luggage.
9 You leave the airport.

6 1 departure
2 board/get on
3 fasten
4 takes off
5 flight
6 provide
7 landed
8 arrival
9 checked
10 collect
11 leave

7 *possible answers*:
1 I'm fine, but my wife is very nervous.
2 I eat some of it, but it's usually terrible.
3 I'm excited.
4 I always try to travel with just hand luggage.

Unit 90

1 *possible answers*:
They used to go to Hyères on holiday.
They used to get a bus to Hyères.
They used to stay in an apartment.
He used to go swimming.
She used to sit on the beach.
She used to read on the beach.
They used to have lunch in the apartment.
They used to have dinner in one of the restaurants.
They used to relax after lunch.
She used to write postcards.
He used to go out on a boat.

2 1 couple
2 beach
3 boat
4 rocks
5 relax
6 flew
7 used

3 1 We **used** to stay
2 a couple **of** weeks
3 **used** to swim
4 my dad, **while** my mum
5 lots of **postcards**
6 a **typical** day

4 *possible answers*:
1 We went to several places: sometimes the south coast of England and sometimes to a couple of places in Spain.
2 A couple of weeks.
3 Yes, I went on a boat in England a couple of times – I enjoyed it.
4 I like being active – swimming and doing other sports.

5 1 go
2 guidebook
3 go on
4 visit
5 guided
6 take
7 round
8 an ideal

6 1 photos
2 went; guide
3 got; map/guidebook
4 sightseeing
5 guided; prefer
6 guidebook
7 tour
8 visit
9 gets
10 round; take
11 ideal/perfect
12 look

7 *possible answers*:
1 Yes, I usually get a map from the tourist information office.
2 I sometimes buy a guidebook but not often.
3 No, but I sometimes go on bus tours.
4 Yes, generally I prefer to go sightseeing on my own.
5 Yes, almost always.
6 Yes, I spend most of my time looking round.
7 No, I don't take lots of photos but my wife does.
8 Not often, but it sometimes happens.
9 My ideal place for a sightseeing holiday is Venice.

Unit 91

1 1 Hello, nice to meet you.
2 Max, this is Emma. (or Emma, this is Max.)
3 Bye. Hope to see you again. (OR Hope to see you again. Bye.)
4 Goodbye. Nice to meet you. (OR Nice to meet you. Goodbye.)

2 1 introduce
2 shake
3 greet (*also possible*: meet)
4 Introductions
5 welcome
6 greetings

3 1 Hello/Hi; Nice/Good to meet you
2 again; Bye/Goodbye
3 this; meet you; welcome
4 Hope/Good; Bye/Goodbye

4 1 See you tomorrow.
2 He's very well.
3 What's the matter?
4 See you later.
5 See you soon.
6 How are things?
7 Give my love to Suki.
8 I've got to go now.
9 That's fine.

5 things; Fine/Very well; matter;'ve got to; dear; give my love; will

6 well; fine/good; how's; good/fine
Anyway; 've got to; later; that's; then

Unit 92

1 1 How often do you go there?
2 What sort of music do you like?
3 What does he do?
4 How long have you lived there?
5 What type of films do you watch?
6 Who does this belong to?
7 What's his flat like?
8 Why do you like her?

2 a 4 c 7 e 6 g 2
b 5 d 1 f 3

3 1 often; once/twice
2 Whose; mine
3 What
4 Yeah/Yes
5 belong
6 kind/sort/type
7 idea
8 long

4 1 What
2 long
3 time
4 many
5 nearest
6 seeing
7 Which
8 far

5 1 far
2 close/shut
3 many
4 worth
5 Which
6 nearest
7 What
8 recommend

6 *possible answers*:
1 I live in Sevilla, in Spain.
2 I have lived here twenty-five years.
3 The Alcazar Palace and the Cathedral.
4 About a kilometre.
5 There are many, but my favourite is Egana Oriza.
6 It's only a few hundred metres.

Unit 93

1 1 you; me; course
2 bring; please; problem
3 Could (*also possible*: Can); afraid
4 polite
5 responses
6 take; bring
7 make
8 requests; polite
9 put

2 *possible answers*:
1 A Could/Can you finish this exercise for homework, please?
B Yes, sure.
2 A Luca, can/could you change places with Maria, please?
B Yes, no problem.
3 A Could/Can you bring your notebook tomorrow, please?
B I'm afraid I can't.
4 A Can/Could you lend me a pencil, please?
B Yes, sure.
5 A Could you take these books to the library, please?
B I'm afraid I can't. I have to leave now.
6 A Could/Can you finish the/your essay by Monday?
B Yes, sure.

3 *possible answers*:
1 Is it **all right** if I use this dictionary?
2 **Do you mind** if I make a coffee?
3 **Could** I stay for another ten minutes?/**Is it OK/ all right if/Do you mind if** I stay another ten minutes?
4 Is it OK **if** I close the window?
5 Can **I borrow** your book?
6 Yes, **sure/no problem/go ahead/that's fine.**
7 **I'm afraid** I need it.
8 Yes, **of course/no problem/go ahead/that's fine.**

4 1 Do you mind if I go at one o'clock today, please?
2 Could I borrow a piece of paper, please?/ Could you lend me a piece of paper, please?
3 Is it OK if I go to the toilet?
4 Is it all right if I sit in a different seat?
5 Can you lend me a pen, please?/ Can I borrow a pen, please?

5 go ahead; no problem; of course; I'm afraid I need it.; that's fine

Unit 94

1 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 D

2 1 Would you **like** to come round later?
2 Yes, I'd love **to**.
3 Do you want to **go** out for dinner?
4 That **sounds** lovely.
5 I've just got an **invitation** to a party.
6 I'm afraid I can't.
7 That **would** be nice.
8 Do you want **to** come to a party?
9 I'm **sorry**, but I'm busy tonight.
10 Ben **invited** me to lunch on Saturday.

3 1 Would you like to go out for a meal?
~ Yes, great!
2 Do you want to come round for a coffee?
~ I'm afraid I can't.
3 Would you like to come to a party tomorrow?
~ Yes, that sounds lovely.
4 Do you want to go out for a coffee?
~ I'd love to, but I'm going to the gym.

4 **dialogue 1**
What shall we do this weekend?
The weather's nice, so
what about going to the beach?
Yes, that's a good idea.
And maybe we could take the train.
Fine. Shall we get the tickets online?
I'd prefer to get them at the station.

dialogue 2
Where shall we go tomorrow?
What about a nice meal at home?
I think I'd prefer to go out.
But it's going to rain.
OK, then let's order a pizza.
OK, fine.

5 1 What **shall** we do this evening?
2 Do you have a **suggestion**?
3 What about **going** to see a film?
4 I'd prefer **to** go by train.
5 Yes, **that's** a good idea.
6 Where **shall** we go tomorrow?

6 1 B What about going to the theatre?
A I'm not sure about that.
2 A What shall we do on Saturday?
B Perhaps we could go out for a meal.
A OK, let's do that.
3 A Where shall we go this afternoon?
B Let's go to a museum.
A Yeah, that's a good idea.

Unit 95

1 1 Do you want something to eat?
2 No thanks.
3 I'm fine, thanks.
4 Would you like something to eat?
5 Let me help you.
6 Thank you very much.
7 Thanks. Could I have a coffee?

2 1 help; please
2 offer
3 need; Thanks
4 let; worry
5 refused
6 accept

3 1 Would you like a drink?/Would you like something to drink?
Yes, please. Could I have some water?
2 Do you need some/any help?
No, I'm fine, thanks./No, don't worry, thanks.
3 Would you like something to eat?
Thanks./Yes, please. Could I have an apple?
4 Let me help you.
No, don't worry.

4 1 f 3 i 5 d 7 g
2 a 4 h 6 e 8 b

5 1 That's
2 I'm
3 forgotten; right
4 very/really/so; matter
5 mind
6 sorry; polite
7 broken; worry
8 rude

6 1 so, really
2 it doesn't matter; that's all right; never mind; don't worry
3 when you:
feel bad about something
feel sad about something
want somebody to repeat something

Unit 96

1 1 certainly
2 impossible
3 possibility
4 definitely
5 likely
6 probably
7 perhaps

2

1	D	3	D	5	D	7	D
2	S	4	S	6	S	8	S

3 1 I'll probably …
2 … likely **to** come …
3 … think **so**.
4 … hope **not**.
5 … there's **a** chance …
6 I **may/might** see …

4 1 probably; may/might
2 definitely; probably; likely
3 wedding; certainly
4 chance
5 attend; likely; may/might
6 possibility; so
7 maybe; certain; probably
8 impossible

5 *possible answers:*
1 I hope so.
2 I'll probably go out with my friends.
3 No, I'm definitely going out on Sunday.
4 I might do a bit of work.
5 I'll probably watch some sport in the evening.
6 I don't think I'm likely to spend a lot.
7 Yes, I'm definitely going to see my family for lunch on Sunday.
8 Maybe. I'm not sure.

Unit 97

1 1 ✗ it's **also** near the park
2 ✗ he understands Greek **too**
3 ✓
4 ✗ and **also** washed the car
5 ✓
6 ✗ and there's a park near the house **as well**

2 1 I often eat ice cream/cake and I also like cake/ice cream.
2 I enjoy watching TV, and I go to the cinema a lot too.
3 I can speak English/German and I can understand German/English as well.
4 I read a lot of books and I also listen to music.
5 I play football and I watch it on TV as well.
6 I drive and I walk a lot too.

3 'True' or 'false' as correct for you.

4 1 He went to bed late, but he couldn't sleep.
2 People don't like her very much. However, she's very kind.
3 Although the food was terrible, the service was good./The food was terrible, although the service was good.
4 It was snowing, but we still decided to go out.
5 We lost our dog. However, we found it after an hour.
6 Although I wore a coat, I was still cold.
7 I watched the whole programme. I didn't enjoy it, though.
8 We had a big lunch. However, Jason was still hungry.

5 1 I was really hungry, but I had to wait until 10.00 for dinner.
2 I was last in the queue. However, I only had to wait five minutes.
3 I was very cold. However, someone lent me a jacket.
4 I was very frightened, but someone held my hand.
5 I was late for the party. However, everybody was still there.
6 I was really tired. However, I stayed at work to finish the job.

6 *possible answers:*
1 I didn't like it.
2 we (still) went out.
3 it was very friendly.
4 she (still) went to work.
5 she didn't pass the exam.
6 when I got there, it was closed.

Unit 98

1

1	because of	5	so
2	to	6	in order to
3	because	7	so
4	as a result		

2

1	(in order) to	5	because
2	so	6	so
3	because of	7	(in order) to
4	As a result	8	as a result/so

3 *possible answers:*
1 because of the weather.
2 in order to work.
3 so I was late for work.
4 and as a result I didn't get to work until 9.30.
5 because I went out with friends in the evening.
6 so I was tired the next day.

4

1	Secondly	4	First of all
2	After that	5	then
3	Finally	6	Before that

5 *possible answers*:
1 Firstly, you make the sauce. Secondly, you boil the pasta. Finally, you add the sauce to the pasta.
2 First of all, I did a degree in History. After that, I trained to be a teacher, and finally, I got a teaching job in Liverpool.
3 First of all, we left our home in Rome. Then we stayed in Munich for a week. After that, we spent the second week in Heidelberg. Finally we flew back to Rome.
4 First I made a shopping list. Then I went to the market. After that I came home and had a cup of tea. Finally, I cooked the dinner
5 Firstly, I had a shower, then I got dressed. After that, I had breakfast and finally, I rang for a taxi and left home.

6 *possible answer*:
First of all, I took a train to Bristol and met my friend, Sue. After that, we went for a walk by the river in the sunshine. Then we went to a café and had lunch which was delicious. And then finally, we went to her flat and had a cup of coffee with her brother.

Unit 99

1
1 out
2 up
3 over
4 out
5 up
6 up
7 off

2
1 out
2 up
3 up
4 down
5 down
6 up
7 off
8 over
9 up

3 *possible answers*:
1 I would like to give up sweets.
2 I grew up in London.
3 I feel afraid.
4 I don't often go out in the evenings. When I do, I go to dinner with my friends.

4
1 Take it off.
2 Put it on.
3 Turn it on.
4 Put them on.
5 Take them off.
6 Give it up.
7 Turn them on.
8 Put it on.

5
1 correct
2 correct
3 turn it on
4 take it off
5 correct
6 correct
7 put it on
8 correct

6
1 go back
2 carry on
3 go away
4 take off
5 go up
6 wake up

Unit 100

1 1 d 2 c 3 b 4 f 5 a 6 e

2
1 go
2 out
3 in
4 back
5 ready/dressed/changed
6 get

3
1 dressed
2 ready
3 changed
4 sleep
5 better
6 get

4 *possible answers*:
1 I get dressed before I have breakfast.
2 No, I get ready very quickly.
3 Yes, I usually get changed. I put my jeans on.
4 Yes, sometimes.
5 Yes, I hope so.
6 Yes, we get lots of tourists where I live.

5 the rest of the time; hurry up; let me know; I guess so; come on; well done; right now

6
1 nothing
2 like
3 away/now; hurry
4 Guess; Wow; done
5 after
6 guess/suppose; let
7 else

7
1 The bar was busy so we went somewhere else.
2 Could you let me know later?
3 Who is going to take care of the children?
4 Hurry up, Sacha!
5 Do you feel like going out?
6 Penny is here. Everyone else went out.

A1 items from the Oxford 3000 word list that are not keywords in Word Skills Elementary

This list includes some items which are used in Unit headings, and it is assumed learners will understand them.

classroom
family
hotel
learn
money
number
restaurant
school
sport
university
weather

This list includes some grammar words and some items which are very common, and it is assumed learners will know them. For any unknown words, please use the APP to check the meaning.

adult
anyone
artist
ball
be
boy
cannot
cent
chart
child
class
cup
dancer
diet
difficult
everybody
future
girl
he
hello
her
hey
him
his
I
imagine
important
interest
it
its
join
life
list
local
man
me
metre
must
my
no
no one
nobody
object
or
our
page
paint
people
period
person
quick
quickly
real
room
scientist
second (= unit of time)
section
she
show
skill
slow
somebody
someone
something
student
talk
tell
that
the
theatre
their
them
they
title
today
tonight
topic
understand
us
we
woman
yes
you
young
your
yourself

Word list

The CEFR (Common European Framework) levels are given for all the words/phrases in the Oxford 3000. The numbers are unit numbers, not page numbers.

a bit (used as *adv*) A2 37
a bit (+ *adj*) A2 37, 64
a bit (of sth) B1 37
a couple (of sth) A2 31, 50, 90
a day/week, etc. 70
a few A1 60
a little A1 64
a lot (of sth) A1 37
a night *as in* **£90 a night** 87
ability A2 83
about A1 6
about A1 *as in* **it's about ...** 84
above A1 20
abroad A2 13
accept A2 71, 95
accessory 25
accident A1 32
accommodation B1 87
achieve A2 86
across A1 19
act *v* A2 76
action film 84
active A2 15
activity A1 5
actor A1 76, 84
actress A1 84
actually A2 21
add A1 71, 85
address *n* A1 13
address book 79
adjective 2
adventure film 84
adverb 2
advert 71, 85
advertisement A2 71, 85
advertising A2 70
advice A1 16, 31
afraid (of sth/sb) A1 17
afraid *as in* **I'm afraid (not)** A2 87, 93
afraid *as in* **I'm afraid I can't** A2 94
Africa 35
after that 98
afternoon A1 *as in* **in the afternoon** 7
again A1 68
against A2 82
age A1 *as in* **at the age of** A1 67
ago A1 9
agree with (sb) A1 22
air A1 *as in* **fresh air** A1 57
airline A2 70, 89
airport A1 89
alarm clock 29
album B1 83
alcoholic drinks 50
alive A2 30, 63
all (of sth) A1 85
all day A1 **/morning/afternoon/evening** 7
all right A2 49, 93
all the time A2 37
allow A2 55
almost A2 7
alone A2 15
along A2 19
already A2 9
also A1 97
although A2 97
always A1 23
a.m. 7
amazing A1 72, 80
American football 82
American 35
ancient A2 36
and A1 97
and so on B1 3
angrily A2 65
angry A1 17, 65
animal A1 38, 47
ankle A2 10
another A1 49
answer (the phone) A1 75
any more A2 29
anything else? A1 50
anyway A2 91
anywhere A2 33
apartment A1 58
appearance A2 26
apple A1 46
apply for sth A2 22, 71
appointment B1 9
April A1 8
Arabic 35
architect A2 68
architecture A2 68
area A1 30, 57
Argentina 35
Argentinian 35
argue A2 17, 78
argument A2 17, 78
arm A1 10
armchair 61
army A2 70
around A1 6
arrange A2 78, 87
arrangement A2 78
arrival B1 89
arrive (at a place) A1 23, 53, 89
art A1 66
art gallery 56, 79
article A1 85
arts subjects 66
as a result A2 98
as well A2 97
Asia 35
ask sb for sth A1 22
asleep A2 63

at

(a place) A1 20
(a time) A1 18
(= @) A1 74
all 80
breakfast, etc. A1 18
Christmas 18
first A2 21
least A2 21
midnight 7, 18
New Year 18
night 7, 18
school A1 21
(the age of sth) A2 67
the back of sth 21
the beginning/start of sth A1 21
the bottom of sth 21
the end of sth A1 21
the front of sth 21
the moment A1 18, 21, 75
the same time A1 21
the time A2 21
the top of sth A2 21
the weekend A1 18, 23
university A1 21
work A1 72

attack A2 30
attend A2 96
attractive A2 11
audience A2 83
August A1 8
aunt A1 14
Australia 35
Australian 35
author A2 86
autumn A1 8
available A2 87
average A2 11
awake 63
away A1 *as in* **go away** A2 99
away *as in* **right away** 100
awful A2 26
baby A1 *as in* **have a baby** 16
back A1 10
backache 31
bacon 47
bad 17; A1 67
bad at sth A1 66
badly A2 65
bag A1 1, 45
baker's 28
banana A1 46
band A1 83
bank account 27
bar (of chocolate) B1 45
bar A2 50
base sth on sth B1 22
baseball A2 82
basketball 82
bath A1 60
bathroom A1 58, 79

be

able to do sth A2 83
born A1 14
divorced A2 16
from A1 13
sick A1 31
the same as sth A1 3
together A1 16

beach A1 36, 90
beans A2 46
bear A2 38
beard 11
beat *v* A2 82
beautiful A1 11
because A1 98
because of sth/sb A1 98
become A1 16
bed A1 60
bedroom A1 58
bee B1 38
beef A2 47
beer A1 48
before that A1 98
begin A1 39
beginning A1 *as in* **at the beginning of sth** A1 21
behind A1 20
believe A1 30, 85
belong to sb A2 29, 92
below A1 20
belt A2 25
best A1 *as in* **(the) best** 67
best friend A1 16
better (than) A1 37
better A2 *as in* **get better** A2 31
between A1 20
bicycle A1 51
big A1 26
bike A1 51
bill A1 27, 49, 88
billion A2 6
bin A2 59
biology A2 66
bird A1 38
birthday A1 8
birthday card 79
biscuit A2 45
bit A2 *as in* **a bit (of sth)** B1 37, 64
black A1 26
black coffee 50
black pepper 48
blog A1 74
blonde A1 11
blood A2 10
blow A2 37
blue A1 26
board *v* (= get on) B1 89
board A2 1
board pen 1
boarding pass/card 89
boat A1 90
body A1 10
body A1 *as in* **a dead body** 30
boil A2 49
boiled A2 49
bone A2 10

book *v* A2 53, 87
bookshop 28, 68
boots A1 25
border B1 36
bored A1 17, 80
bored with sth A1 22
boring A1 80
born A1 *as in* **be born** A1 14
borrow A2 93
boss A2 69
both (of sb/sth) A1 38
bottle A1 48
bottom B1 10
bowl A2 48
box A1 45
boyfriend A1 14, 16
brain A2 10
Brazil 35
Brazilian 35
bread A1 45
bread (white/brown) 50
break A1 12, 32, 39, 95
break a rule 86
breakfast A1 23
bridge A2 56
bright A2 37
brilliant A2 84
bring A1 39, 93
Britain 35
broken A2 32
brother A1 14
brother-in-law 14
brown A1 26
brown bread 50
brush *n, v* A2 60
build A1 34, 39
builder 69
building A1 56, 70
burn A2 32, 39
bus A1 51
bus driver 69
(bus) stop 52, 79
business studies 68
businessman A2 68, 69
businesswoman 68, 69
busy A1 51, 56, 94
busy (= telephone) B1 75
but A1 97
butter A1 45
button A2 24
buy A1 27, 39
by A1 *as in* **a book by Tolstoy** 83
by the end of sth A2 21
bye A1 75, 91
cabbage 46
café A1 50
cake A1 45, 50
call *n, v* A1 44, 75, 88
call sb back 75
called A1 4
camera A1 29
camping A2 77, 81
Can I get ... ? 50
Can I have ... ? 50
Can I/you ... ? 93
Canada 35
Canadian 35
capital A1 36
capital letter 8, 79
car A1 51
car park A1 79
care about sb/sth A2 22
career A1 69
careful A2 73
carefully A2 65, 73
carpet A2 61
carriage C1 53
carrot A1 46
carry A1 12, 25
carry on (with sth) A2 67, 99
cartoon A2 84
cash A2 27
castle A2 56
cat A1 38
catch (an illness) B1 31, 39
catch (a ball) A2 12, 39
cause *n, v* A2 34, 44
CD A1 1, 83
CD player 1
celebrate 78
celebration 78
celebrity 85
Central America 35
century A1 18
certain A2 62, 96
certainly A2 49, 88, 96
chair A1 1
chance A2 *as in* **a good chance** 96
change (= become different) A1 37
change (money) A1 88
change (trains) A2 53
change places 93
character A2 *as in* **main character** 86
charity A2 72
chat *v, n* A2 44, 88
cheap A1 26
check A1 74, 87, 89
check in A2 88, 89
check-in 89
check-in desk 89
check out A2 88
cheese A1 45
chef A2 69
chemist's 28, 31
chemistry A2 66
chest B1 10
chicken A1 47
chin 10
China 35
Chinese 35
chips A2 49
chocolate A1 45
choice A2 28, 78
choose A1 28, 78
Christmas Day 8
church A2 56

cinema A1 84
circle *n* A2 29
circle *v* A2 3
city A1 36
classical music 83
clean *adj* A2 56
clean *v* A1 59
clean (your teeth) A1 60
cleaner 69
clear (sky) A2 37
clearly A2 65
clever A2 15
click on sth B1 74
client B1 70
climate A2 36
climb A1 12
clock A1 29, 61
close *v* A1 12, 73, 92
close friend 16
closed A2 55
clothes A1 24
clothes shop 28
clothing A2 24
cloud A2 37
cloudy 37
club A1 81
coach (= bus) A2 51
coach (= in train) 53
coal B1 34
coast A2 36
coat A1 24
coffee A1 50
coin B1 27
cold *adj* A1 37
cold *n* A1 31
colleague A2 70
collect (stamps, etc.) A2 81
collect (= go and get sth) B1 88, 89
college A1 67
colour A1 26
column A2 3
come A1 39
come from somewhere A1 13
Come on! A2 100
come round 23, 94
comedy A2 84
comfortable A2 26
comma 6
comment *n* A2 44
comment *v* B1 44
common A1 31, 63
communicate A2 13
community A2 71
company A1 69
compare (sth with sth) A1 5, 28
competition A2 76
complain A2 78
complaint B1 78
complete *v* A1 3
completely different 15
computer games 81
computer science 66, 68
concert A1 83
congratulations C1 100
contain A2 74
context A2 5
continent A2 35
continue A2 67
control *n, v* A2 44
conversation A1 5
cook *v* A1 59
cooked A1 46
cooker A2 59
cooking A1 81
cool A1 37
copy *n, v* A2 44, 73
corner A2 61
corner A2 *as in* **on the corner** 54
correct *adj, v* A1 3, 4
correctly A2 65
cost *n, v* A1 27, 39, 44
cough *n* 31
could (= suggestion) A1 94
Could I have ... , please? 45, 95
Could I/you ... ? 4, 93
count A2 6
country A1 35
couple (= two people) A2 16
couple A2 *as in* **a couple of sth/sb** A2 31, 50, 90
course A1 13, 68
coursebook 1
cousin A1 14
cover *v* A2 3
cow A1 38, 47
crab A1 47
cream (= colour) B1 26
cream (= food) A1 49
create A1 57, 86
creative A2 57
credit card A2 27, 79
crime A2 30
crime drama 85
criminal A2 30
crisps 50
cross sth out 3
cross *v* A2 54
crowd A2 56
crowded A2 56
cry A2 17
cucumber 46
culture A1 36
cupboard A2 59
curly A2 11
curtain B1 61
customer A1 45, 49
cut (= in a computer document) 73, 39
cut *n, v* A1 32, 39
Czech 35
Czech Republic 35
dad A1 14
daily A1 *adj,* B1 *adv* 23
dance *v* A1 12
dancing A1 81
danger A2 30, 55

dangerous A1 30, 56
dark (= with not much light) A1 63
dark (= hair colour) A1 11
dark blue 26
date A1 8
daughter A1 14
day A1 8
dead A2 30, 63
debit card 27
December A1 8
decide A1 78
decision A2 41, 78
deep A2 33
definite article 2
definitely A2 88, 96
degree A2 68
delicious A1 49
dentist A2 69
department store 28, 79
departure B1 89
depend on sb/sth A2 22
describe A1 5, 78
description A1 5, 78
desert A2 33
design *n* A1 66
design *v* A1 70
desk A1 1
dessert 49
destroy A2 34
details A1 87
detective A2 86
develop A2 34
device A2 29
dialogue A1 5
diary A2 9, 29
dictionary A1 1
die A1 85
difference A1 4
different A1 3, 63
digital A2 29
dining room 58, 79
dinner A1 23
direct A2 53
directions A2 54
director A2 84
dirty A1 56
disagree with sb A2 22
disappear A2 34
disaster A2 34, 85
disc jockey 79
discover A2 30, 78
discovery A2 30, 78
discuss A1 5, 70
discussion A2 5
dish A1 48
dishwasher 59, 79
dislike B1 80
divorced A2 16
DJ 79

do

(= have a job or study sth) A1 13, 41
(an activity) A1 41, 82
a course 68
a degree (in sth) 68
an exam 67
an exercise 5, 41
badly 67
exercise 41
homework 5, 41, 67
research 68
the housework 41, 59
the ironing 59
the shopping 41
a sport 82
the washing 59
the washing up 59
well A2 67
you know the way to ... ? 54
you mind if I ... ? 93
you want to? 94
you want ... ? 95
your best 41
your hair 60
doctor A1 68
document A2 73
dog A1 38
dollar A1 27
don't mind 80
don't worry 95
door A1 *as in* **front door** 58
dot B2* 74
double A2 4, 75
double room 87
down A1 19
download (music) *v* A2 83
downstairs A1 58
draw with/against sb 82
drawing A2 81
dream *n, v* A2 44
dress A1 24
drink *v* A1 39
drink *n* A1 50
drive A1 39, 51, 76
driver A1 69, 76
driving A2 77
drop A2 12
drug A2 32
dry A2 37
duck 47
during (the week) A1 23
DVD player 61
each A1 27
each other A1 15, 16
ear A1 10
early A1 23
earn A2 27, 70
earth B1 57
Earth A2 *as in* **planet Earth** 84
easily A2 65
east *n, adj* A1 36
easy A1 65
eat A1 47
education A2 67
e.g. 3
egg A1 45

Egypt 35
Egyptian 35
eight A1 6
eighteen A1 6
eighteenth 8
eighth 8
eighty A1 6
either ... or A2 67
electric fan 29
electric razor 60
electrical store 28
electricity A2 34
electronic mail 74
elephant A1 38
eleven A1 6
eleventh 8
else A1 *as in* **everyone else** A2, **somewhere/nothing else** 100
email *n, v* A1 44, 74
embarrassed B1 17
emotions B1 17
employ A2 69
employee A2 69
employer A2 69
empty *adj* A2; *v* B1 59
en suite 87
end A1 *as in* **at/by the end of sth** A1 21
end A1 *as in* **in the end** A2 21
energy A2 34
engineer A2 68
engineering B1 68
England 35
English 35
enjoy *v* A1 80
enjoyable B2* 80
enormous A2 36
enough A1 27
enter A2 55, 72
entrance B1 55
environment A2 34
environmental B1 34
equal *v* B1 3, 6
equipment A2 *as in* **kitchen equipment** 59
error A2 3
especially A2 64
essay A2 *as in* **write an essay** 5, 68
etc./etcetera 3
euro A1 27
Europe 35
even A1 64
evening A1 *as in* **in the evening** 7
event A1 85
ever A1 9, 39
every A1 52
everyday A2 59
everyone A1 *as in* **everyone else** A2 100
everything A1 28
everywhere A2 33
ex (-wife/husband, etc.) 16
ex-boyfriend (-girlfriend) 16
exactly A2 13
exam A1 67
examination B2 67
example A1 *as in* **for example** A1 3
excellent A2 88
except A2 28
excited A1 17
exciting A1 84
excuse me A1 52, 54
exercise book 1
exercise A1 [C] *as in* **do exercises** 41
exercise A1 [U] *as in* **do exercise** 41
exit B2* 51, 55
expensive A1 26
experience A2 71
explain A1 4, 5
explanation A2 5
extra A1 87
extreme A2 34
extremely A2 37, 64
eye A1 10
face A1 10
fact A1 36
factory A2 70
fail an (an exam) A2 67
fair (hair) B1 11
fall A1 39, 44
fall over 12, 99
false A1 3
family name 13
famous A1 36
fan (= to cool yourself) 29, 61
fantastic A1 13
far A1 *as in* **how far** 51, 92
Far East 35
fare B2* 53
farm A1 38, 57
farmer A1 38, 57
farming A2 57
fashion designer 69
fast *adj, adv* A1 65
fast train 53
fasten (your seat belt) B1 89
fat A1 11
father A1 14
favourite A1 80
feature B1 11
February A1 8
feed A2 55, 59
feel A1 17
feel A1 *as in* **I don't feel well** 31
feel like (doing) sth A2 100
feelings A1 17
feet A1 10
festival A1 83
fetch 100
few A1 60
fiction A2 86
field A2 57
fifteen A1 6
fifteenth 8
fifth 8
fifty A1 6
fight *n, v* A2 39, 44
file B1 73

fill A1 59
fill in (a form) A2 71
film A1 84
final score 82
finally A2 98
find A1 30
find (sth) out A1 85, 99
fine (= OK) A2 50
fine (= well) A1 91
finger A2 10
finish A1 23, 93
fire A1 61
first A1 8, 98
first course 49
first floor 58, 79
first name 13
first of all A2 98
firstly A2 98
fish A1 47
fishing A2 81
fit A2 26
five A1 6
fizzy water 48, 49
fizzy drink 50
flat *adj* A2 29
flat *n* A1 58
flatmate 16
flight A1 87
flight attendant 89
floor A1 61
flower A1 57
flu A2 31
fly *n* (= insect) A2 38
fly *v* A1 87, 90
flying A2 77
follow (instructions) A2 5
food A1 45, 50
foot (*pl* **feet**) A1 10
football A1 82
for A1 9
for example A1 3
foreign A2 87
forest A1 33
forget A1 5, 39, 95
fork A2 48
form A1 71
formal A2 3, 62
fortunately A2 68
forty A1 6
four A1 6
fourteen A1 6
fourteenth 8
fourth 8
France 35
free A2 27
French 35
fresh A2 46
fresh air 57
Friday A1 8
fridge A2 59
fried B1 49
friend A1 *as in* **best friend** A1 16
friendly A1 15
from *as in* **be from** 13
from ... to A1 70
front A1 *as in* **at the front of** 21
front A1 *as in* **in front of sth** A1 20
front door 58
frozen B1 46
fruit A1 46
fruit and vegetable shop 28
fry B1 49
full A1 59
full stop 79
fun A1 15, 80
funny A1 15, 84
furniture shop 28
furniture A2 60
game A1 *as in* **play a game** 23, 81, 82
gap A2 55
garden A1 57
gardening 81
garlic 46
gas A2 34
gate A2 57
gate (= at an airport) A2 89
general A2 63
geography A1 66
German 35
Germany 35
get A1 39
(= arrive at/in somewhere) A1 23, 42, 51, 53
(= be given) A1 42, 67, 74
(= become) A2 42
(= buy) A1 42
(= fetch) A1 100
(= travel by sth) A1 42, 52, 53
as in **we/you get** (= there are) 100
back (= return) A2 100
better A2 31, 100
changed 100
divorced 14
dressed 23, 100
in (= arrive) B2 100
lost A2 74, 90
married A1 14, 16
on/off (a train, plane, bus, etc.) A1 12, 52, 53, 89
on (well) with sb B1 16
out (of sth) A2 100
ready A1 45, 100
sb (= go and find) A1 75
there A1 51
to know sb B1 16, 100
to sleep 100
to work 23
up A1 23
gift A2 22, 28
gift shop 28
girlfriend A1 14, 16
give A1 12
my love to sb 91
sb advice 16
sb a call 44
sb a smile 44

sb a surprise 44
sth up A2 99
glass (of sth) A1 48
glasses A1 25
gloves B1 25
go A1 52
+ *-ing* A1 82
across (the road, a bridge) 19
ahead (= yes, of course) B1 93
along (the road) 19
along here 54
and get A2 100
away A2 99
back A1 99
camping 81
by car 51
down (the stairs) 19
down (= decrease) A2 99
fishing 81
for (a walk/swim) A2 23
home A1 23
into (a house, etc.) A1 19
on a guided tour 90
on a trip 88
on foot 51
over (a bridge) 19
out A1 23, 99
out for sth 94
out of (a house, etc.) 19
out (with sb) 81
out with sb (= have a relationship) 16
past (a church, etc.) 19
shopping 23
sightseeing 90
straight on 54
through (a gate) 19
to bed A1 23
towards (a hill, etc.) 19
under (a bridge) 19
up (the stairs) 19
up (= increase) A2 99
on holiday 87
goal A2 82
gold A2 25
golf A2 81
good A1 67
good at sth A1 22, 66, 81
good chance 96
good fun 15
good to meet you 91
good-looking 11
goodbye A1 75
government A2 34
grade B1 67
gram 45
granddaughter 14
grandfather A1 14
grandmother A1 14
grandparents A1 14
grandson 14
grapes 46
grass A2 57
great A1 13, 26, 94
great fun 15
Great Britain 35
Greece 35
Greek 35
green A1 26
green pepper 46
greet A2 91
greeting *n* 91
grey A1 11, 26
ground floor 58
group (= musical) 83
grow A1 57
grow up A1 99
guess *n, v* A1 5
Guess what? A1 100
guess A1 *as in* **I guess so** A2 100
guest A2 88
guide *n* A2 90
guidebook 90
guided tour 90
guitar A1 81
gun A2 29
gym A1 81
hair A1 10
hairdresser 69
half A1 45
half past (one, etc.) 7
half-time 82
hall A2 58
ham 47
hand A1 10
hand luggage 89
handbag 25
handsome 11
happen A1 30, 85
happily A2 65
happy A1 17
hard *adj* (= difficult) A1 65
hard *adj* (= not soft) A2 63
hard *adv* (= a lot) A1 65, 67
hardworking 15, 63
hat A1 25
hate A1 80
have A1 40
(= eat/drink) A1 50
a good/great day 40
a good/great time 40
a good/great weekend/holiday/journey 40
a baby 16
a bath 40
a break 40
a chat 44
a dream 44
a drink/sth to eat 40
a fight 44
a guess 5
a look (at sth) 40, 44
an argument 78
a rest 40
a run 40
a seat 50
a shave 60
a sleep 44
a (nice) smell 44

a swim 40
a thought 78
a wash 40, 60
a shower 23, 40
a walk 40
breakfast 23, 40
got (an illness) 31
got (family) 14
got A1 40, 45
got to do sth A2 91
dinner 23, 40
lunch 23, 40
to do 59, 88
head A1 10
headache A2 31
health A1 31
healthy A1 31, 62
hear A1 85
hear about sth A2 22
heart A2 10
heavy (= not light) A2 63
heavy rain 37
height A2 11
help *v* A1 4, 13, 95
help *n* A1 95
helpful A2 88
here A1 *as in* **go along here** 54
here A1 *as in* **over here** 53
hero A2 84
heroine 84
hi A1 91
high A1 63
high A1 *as in* **3,000m high** 36
high street B1 79
hill A2 57
Hindi 35
history A1 66
hit *v* A2 32, 39
hit *n* A2 83
hobby A1 81
hold A2 12, 39
holiday A1 87
home A1 58
homework A1 5, 41, 59
hope A1 *as in* **I hope so / I hope not** 96
hope to see you again 91
horror film 84
horse A1 38
hospital A1 70
hot A1 37
hot chocolate 50
hour A1 70
house A1 58
housework 41, 59

how

are things? 91
are you? A1 91
do I get to ... ? 54
do you do? 91
do you say ... ? 4
far 51, 92
long A1 13, 52, 68, 92
many A1 45, 92
much A1 44, 45, 92
often A1 92
old 13
tall 11
however A1 97
huge A2 36
human A2 33
hundred A1 6
Hungarian 35
Hungary 35
hungry A1 17
hurry up 100
hurt A2 32, 39
husband A1 14, 16

I

don't think so 96
guess so A2 100
hope so 96
hope not 96
suppose so 100
think so A2 96
'd like 50
'd love to 94
'll have (when ordering) 49
'm afraid (not) A2 87, 93
'm afraid I can't 94
'm fine, thanks 95
'm not sure 94
'm sorry but ... 94
'm sorry I'm late 95
ice (= weather) A1 37
ice (= in a drink) A1 50
ice cream A1 49
ice hockey 82
icy 37
idea A1 92
idea A1 *as in* **that's a great idea** 94
ideal A2 90
identity card 79
if A1 *as in* **Do you mind if / Is it OK if ... ?** 93
ill A2 31
illness A2 31
immediately A2 23
impolite 62
impossible A2 62, 96
improve A1 13, 31
improvement B1 13

in

(a place) A1 20
(something with walls or sides) A1 20
(= at home) A2 75
(a big area) A1 20
2020, etc. A1 18
(ten) days A1 9
fact A1 21, 86
front of sth A1 20
hospital A2 21
January, etc. A1 18
love A2 17
order to do sth B1 98
pain 17, 32

prison A2 21
the back of sth 21
the end A2 21
the middle of sth 21
the morning, etc. A1 18
the (news)paper 85
the past A1 86
(the) spring, etc. A1 18
trouble 86
include A1 87
included A2 87
including A2 86
increase *n, v* A2 34
incredible A2 72, 80
indefinite article 2
India 35
Indian 35
industry A2 36
informal A2 3, 62
information A1 13, 74
injury A2 32
insect A2 38
inside A2 10, 58
instead A2 49
instruct C1 76
instructions A2 5
instructor A2 76
instrument (= musical) A2 83
intelligent A2 15
interested (in sth) A1 22, 80
interesting A1 80
international A2 60
internet A1 74
interview *n, v* A1 71
interviewer 71
into A1 19
introduce sb (to sb) A1 91
introduction A2 91
invent A2 5, 78
invention A2 78
invitation A2 94
invite A2 94
involve A2 70
Ireland 35
ironing 59
irregular 2, 62
Is it OK/all right if ... ? 93
Is that everything? 50
Is that ... ? (= on the phone) 75
Is there ... near here? 54
island A1 33
it doesn't matter 87, 95
IT manager 68
Italian 35
Italy 35
item of clothing 24
jacket A1 24
jam A2 45
January A1 8
Japan 35
Japanese 35
jazz A2 80
jeans A1 24
jewellery A2 25
job A1 13, 67, 69
journalism B2* 68
journalist A2 68, 85
journey A1 51, 53
juice A1 *as in* **orange juice** 50
July A1 8
jump A2 12
jumper 24
June A1 8
just A1 9
just a moment 75
just before/after 7
just over/under 36, 45
keep A1 73
keep a record of sth 4
keep A1 *as in* **keep warm** 31
keep going 54
keep left/right 55
keep off 55
key A1 58, 88
keyboard B1 73
kill A2 30
kilo(gram) 45
kilometre A1 36
kilometres (per hour) 51
kind B1 15
kind A1 *as in* **What kind of ... ?** 84, 92
kitchen A1 58
knee A2 10
knife A2 48
knock B1 32
know A1 4, 16
Korean 35
kph 51
lake A2 57
lamb 47
lamp A2 60
land *v* A2 89
land *n* A1 34
landline 75
language A1 35, 66
laptop A2 73
large A1 26
last (stop) A1 52, 53
last *v* A2 68
last year A1 **/week/night, etc.** 9
late *adv, adj* A1 23, 65
late A1 *as in* **in your late thirties** 30
later A1 *as in* **see you later** 91
Latin America 35
laugh A1 15
law A2 68
lawyer A2 68
lazy A2 15, 63
lead *v* B1 82
leather B1 25
leave A1 53, 89
leave a message 75
leave home 23
leave school 67
leave sth somewhere 88
lecture A2 68

lecturer 68
left (= not right) A1 54
leg A1 10
lemon A2 46, 50
lend A2 39, 93
lesson A1 67
let A1 39, 55
let me ... A2 95
let sb know A2 100
let's 84
letter A1 74
lettuce 46
level B1 13
library A1 56, 68
lie down 12, 99
lift A2 58
light (= not heavy) A2 63
light *n* A1 61
light blue 26
like (= similar to) A1 4
like *v* A1 80, 81
like A1 *as in* **What's he/she like?** 15
likely (to) A2 96
line (= of a phone) A2 75
line (= of writing) A1 73
link A2 74
lion A1 38
listen A1 22, 76, 85
listener A2 76
literature B1 66
little A1 26
live (= happening now) B1 83
live with sb A1 22
living room A1 58
lock A2 58
long (= not short) A1 11, 26
long A1 *as in* **20km long** 36
long hours 70
look *n* A2 44
look *v* A1 44
look nice/great, etc. 26
look after sth/sb 59, 100
look at sb/sth A1 22, 74
look round 90
look sth up A2 5, 99
lorry A2 51
lorry driver 69
lose (to sb) A1 39, 82, 95
lose weight 11
lost A2 *as in* **get lost** A2; **be lost** 74, 90
loudly A2 65
love *v* A1 80
love *n* A1 17
love story 84
lovely A2 11, 26, 94
low A2 63
lucky A2 62
luggage 89
lunch A1 *as in* **have lunch** 23, 40
machine 89
made of sth 22
magazine 85
main character 86
main course 49
main road 51
mainly B1 86
major A2 30, 36

make

(= produce/create) A1 41
(= produce a change) A1 41
a call 75, 88
a choice 78
a comment 44
a complaint 78
a copy 44, 73
a decision 41
a discovery 78
a mistake A2 41
an arrangement 78
a noise 41
a promise 44
money A2 41
sense A2 41
sure A2 93
the bed 41
sth up B1 5
make-up B2* 60
manage A2 70
manager A2 70
manner A2 65
many A1 *as in* **how many** A1 45, 92
map A1 90
March A1 8
mark *n* B1 67
market A1 56
married A1 13
match *n* A1 82
match *v* A1 3
material A2 29
mathematics A2 66
maths A2 66
matter A2 *as in* **it doesn't matter** 15, 87, 95
matter A2 *as in* **What's the matter?** 31
May A1 8
may A2 96
maybe A1 94, 96
meal A1 49
mean A1 4
meaning A1 4
meat A1 47
media A2 85
medical A2 31
medicine A2 28, 68
meet (= for the first time) A1 16, 70
meet (= go somewhere and wait for sb) A1 16
meeting A1 70
member A1 30
memory A2 29
menu (= in a restaurant) A1 49
menu (= on a computer) A1 73
message *n* A2 74, 75
message *v* 75
metal A2 29

metre high 36
Mexican 35
Mexico 35
mice (= animal) A1 38
mice (of a computer) 73
midday 7
middle-aged 11
Middle East 35
midnight A1 7
might A2 87, 96
miles per hour, mph 51
milk A1 45, 50
million A1 6
mind A2 *as in* **Do you mind if ... ?** 93
mind A2 *as in* **I don't mind** 80
mind (= be careful) B1 55
mine A2 92
minus 6
minutes past/to 7
mirror A2 60
miss (a train) A1 53
missing A2 3
mistake A1 *as in* **make a mistake** A2 3, 41
mobile phone A1 29, 75
mobile number 75
model A2 69
modern A1 36, 58, 63, 80
moment A1 *as in* **at the moment** A1 18, 21, 75
moment A1 *as in* **just a moment** 75
Monday A1 8
monkey A2 38
month A1 8
moon A2 7
more A1 *as in* **any more** 29
more A1 *as in* **some more** 49
morning A1 *as in* **in the morning** A1 7
most (of sth) A1 85
mostly A2 86
mother A1 14
motor racing 82
motorbike 51
motorcycle A2 51
motorway 51
mountain A1 36
mouse (*pl* **mice**) (= animal) A1 38
mouse (*pl* **mice**) (= of a computer) A1 73
mouth A1 10
move A1 73, 78
movement A2 78
movie A1 84
much A1 *as in* **how much** A1 44, 45
much A1 *as in* **thanks very much** 54, 95
mum A1 14
museum A1 56
mushroom 46
music shop 28
musical instrument 83
musician A2 83
name *v* A1 30
narrow A2 63
national A2 60
nationality 35
natural A1 57
nature A2 57
near A1 20, 52, 54
nearest 54, 92
nearly A2 7
necessary A2 62
neck A2 10
necklace 25
need *v* A1 45, 95
negative A1 63
neighbour A1 58
nephew 14
nervous A2 17
never A1 23
never mind 95
new A1 80
news A1 *as in* **the news** A1 85
New Year's Day 8
newspaper A1 85
next (stop) A1 52, 53
next to A1 20
next week/Thursday/year A1**, etc.** 9
nice A1 15, 26
nice to meet you 91
niece 14
night A1 *as in* **at night** 7, 18
night A1 *as in* **last night** 9
nil 82
nine A1 6
nineteen A1 6
ninety A1 6
nineteenth 8
ninth 8
no problem A1 54, 93
no smoking 55
no, thanks / thank you 50, 95
no vacancies 55
noise A2 56
noisy A2 56
non-fiction 86
none (of sth) A2 85
noon 7
normally A2 23
north A1 *n, adj* 36
North America 35
north-east 36
north-west 36
Northern Ireland 35
nose A1 10
not bad 91
not sure 4
note (= money) B1 27
notebook B2* 1, 4
nothing else 100
notice *n* A2 1, 55
notice *v* A2 22
noticeboard 1
noun 2
novel A2 86
November A1 8
now A1 *as in* **right now** A1 100

nowhere A2 33
number (= phone) A1 75
nurse A1 69
nuts A2 46
o'clock A1 7
ocean A2 36
October A1 8
of course A1 49, 93
off B1 *as in* **50% off** 27
offer *n, v* A2 71, 95
office A1 70
often A1 23
oh (= zero) 75
oh! A1 91
Oh dear! A2 87, 91
oil A2 48
OK A1 *as in* **Is it OK if ... ?** 93
OK A1 *as in* **that's OK** 54
old A1 58, 80
old friend A2 16
older than 14
oldest *as in* **the oldest** 14
olive oil 45
olive 45

on

1st January, etc. A1 18
foot 51
his/her, etc. mobile 21
holiday A1 21, 87
Monday, etc. evening A1 18
my/your, etc. own B1 15
(something long/flat) A1 20
the coast A2 20
the corner 54
the ground/first/second/top floor 58
the phone A1 21, 75
the river 20
the road 20
the side of sth / the other side A2 21
the table 20
the wall A2 20
time A2 21
tour 83
TV A1 **/ the radio** 85
your right/left 54
once A1 *as in* **once a** A1 **(week)** 23
one A1 6
onion A1 46
online A1 27, 28, 74
only A1 64
open A1 12, 92
open (a document) A1 73
opera singer 83
opinion A1 56, 85
opposite A1 3, 4, 20, 54
option A2 67
orange (= colour) A1 26
orange (= fruit) A1 46
orange juice 50
orchestra B2* 83
order *v* A1 49
order A1 *as in* **Are you ready to order?** 49
organization A2 78
organize A2 70, 78
other A1 *as in* **each other** A1 15, 16
out (= not at home) A1 75
out loud 4
out of (a place) A1 19
out of order 55
outside (= in front of sth) A2 52
outside (= not inside) A2 58
oven A2 59
over (= direction) A1 19
over (= more than) A1 36
over here 53
over there A1 53
overweight 11
own *as in* **on my own** B1 15
own *v* A2 57, 76
owner A2 57, 76
pack A2 87
pain A2 32
painting A1 77, 81
pair A1 *as in* **a pair of shoes** 25
palace A2 56
paper A1 85
paragraph A1 5
parent A1 14
park A1 56
park *v* A1 58
parking A2 55, 58, 87
part of speech 2
part of sth A1 72
particular A2 28
partner A1 16
party A1 94
pass (an exam) A2 67
passenger A2 53, 89
passport A1 87
password B2* 74
past (= direction) A2 19
past A1 *as in* **half past** 7
past participle 2, 79
past simple 2
past tense 79
pasta 45, 48
patient B2 15
pay A1 27, 88
pay attention A2 5
pay for sth A1 22
PC (= personal computer) 73
PE (= Physical Education) 66
peace A2 85
peach 46
pear 46
peas 46
pen A1 1
pencil A1 1
pepper (= black pepper) A1 48
pepper *as in* **red/green pepper** 46
per cent A2 27
perfect A1 13, 90
perform A2 83
performance B1 83
performer 83

perhaps A2 94, 96
permission A2 93
personal (= for one person) A1 28
personal (information) 13
personal computer 73
personality A2 16
pet A2 38
petrol A2 34
pharmacy 28, 31
phone *n, v* A1 29, 61, 75
phone A1 *as in* **on the phone** A1 21, 75
phone number A1 75, 79
phone sb back 75
photo A1 73, 90
photograph A1 73
phrasal verb 79
phrase A1 2
physical education 66
physics A2 66
pianist 83
piano A1 83
pick B1 57
pick sth up A2 12
picture A1 60
pie 49
piece A1 45
piece A1 *as in* **a piece of furniture** 60
piece A1 *as in* **a piece of music** 83
piece A1 *as in* **a piece of paper** 1
pig A1 38, 47
pill B2* 31
pilot A2 69
pineapple 46
pink A1 26
pizza 49
place A1 56
plan (to do) sth A1 13
plan *n, v* A1 30
plane A1 89
planet A2 84
plant *n* A1
plant *v* A2 57
plastic A2 25, 29
plate A2 48
platform A2 53
play (a game) A1 23, 81, 82
play (an instrument) A1 81
player A1 82
please A1 45, 50, 55
pleased A2 17
plus B1 6
p.m. 7
pocket A2 24
point A2 82
Poland 35
police officer A2 69, 79
policeman A1 69
policewoman 69
Polish 35
polite A2 62, 93, 95
pollution A2 34, 56
poor A1 63
popular A1 36, 81
population A2 36
pork 47
Portugal 35
Portuguese 35
positive A1 63
possessions A2 29
possibility A2 96
possible A1 62, 96
post office A1 56
post *n, v* A1 71, 74
postcard 90
postcode 13
potato A1 46
pound A1 27
practice *n* A1 5
practise *v* A1 5
prawn 47
predict A2 78
prediction B1 78
prefer to do sth A1 28, 90, 94
prefer (X to Y) A1 28, 80
prepare A1 59
preposition 2
present A1 22, 28
pretty (= attractive) A1 11
pretty (= quite) A1 64
price A1 27
print A2 73, 89
printer A2 73
prison A2 *as in* **in prison** A2 21
prize A2 27
probably A1 96
problem A1 *as in* **no problem** A1 54, 93
produce A2 57
product A1 27
professor A2 68
program A1 73
programme A1 85
progress A2 13
project B1 70
promise *n, v* A2 44
pronoun 2
pronounce A2 4
pronunciation 4
provide A2 89
pub A2 50
public A2 *as in* **the public** 30
public transport A2 51
publish A2 86
pull A2 12
purple A1 26
purpose A2 29
purse 27
push A2 12
put A1 39
on make-up 60
on weight 11
sth back 93
sth down 12
sth in order 3
on clothes A2 24, 99

quality A2 28
quarter (to/past) 7
question mark 79
queue B1 55
quiet (= not talking a lot) A1 15
quiet (= not noisy) A1 56
quiet (= not busy) A1 51
quietly A2 65
quite A1 11, 64, 80
race A2 76
radio A1 *as in* **on the radio** 85
railway station 53, 79
rain *n, v* A1 37
rather A2 64
razor 60
reach A2 89
reader A1 76
reading A1 76, 77
ready A1 45
realize A2 86
really A1 15, 64; *as in* **really like** 80
reason A1 98
receive A2 74
recent A2 30, 86
recently A2 9
reception A2 13
receptionist 13
recipe A2 29
recognize A2 74
recommend A2 88, 92
record *n* A2 4
record (= with music) 83
record *v* A2 83
recording A2 29
recycle A2 34
red A1 26
red pepper 46
red wine 48
reduce A2 28
refuse A2 95
region A2 33
regular A2 2, 62
relationship A2 16
relative B1 14
relax A1 90
relaxed B1 15
remember A1 4
repair A2 81
repeat A1 5
replace sth (with sth) A2 73
reply *n, v* A2 44, 74
report *v* A2 85
report *n* A1 70
reporter A2 68, 85
request A2 93
research A2 *as in* **do research** 68
reserve B2* 53
respond A2 93
response A2 93
rest A2 31
rest A2 *as in* **the rest** A2 100
result A1 67, 98
return (ticket) 53
review A2 84
revise B1 5
rice A1 45
rich A1 63
ride (a bike/motorbike, etc.) A1 12, 39, 51
right (= correct) A1 3, 4, 26
right (= not left) A1 54
right (= OK) 45
right now A1 **/away** (= immediately) 100
ring *n* (= jewellery) A2 25
ring *v* (= telephone sb) A2 39, 75
ring sb back 75
river A1 36
road A1 *as in* **main road** 51
rock A2 33, 90
rock music 81
roll *n* B1 50
romantic B1 16, 84
roof A2 58
room [U] (= space) B1 60
route A2 52
routine A1 23
rubbish A2 59
rude A2 62, 95
rule A1 86
run (= on foot) A1 12, 39
run (= travel) B1 52
running A2 82
rush hour 51
Russia 35
Russian 35
sad A1 17, 65
sadly A2 65
safe A2 30, 56
salad A1 46, 49
salary A2 70
sale(s) A2 27, 28, 55
sales assistant 69, 79
salmon 47
salt A1 48
same A1 *as in* **the same** A1 3
same A1 *as in* **be the same as sth** 3
same A1 *as in* **at the same time** A1 21
sandwich A1 50
Saturday A1 8
sauce A2 49
Saudi Arabia 35
Saudi 35
sausage 47
save (money) A2 27
save (= on a computer) A2 73
say A1 4
say sorry 95
scared (of sth/sb) A2 17
scarf 25
scary A2 84
school A1 67
science fiction A2 84
science (subjects) 66
sci-fi 84
score *n, v* A2 82
Scotland 35

screen A2 73
sea A1 90
seafood 47
search *n, v* A2 30
search (for sth) (= on a computer) A2 74
season A2 8
seat A2 50, 53
seat belt 89
second A1 8
second floor 58
secondly A2 98
secretary A2 69
security B1 89
see (= notice) A1 43
see (= watch a film/TV) A1 43, 85
see (= find out about sth) A1 43
see (= visit/spend time with sb) A1 16, 43
see (= understand) B1 43
see you A1 **(later/soon/then)** 91
sell A1 27
send A1 39, 70, 74
send an email 44
send a reply 44
sentence A1 2
separate B1 16
September A1 8
series (on TV, etc.) A2 86
series (of events, etc.) B1 30
serious (= not fun) A2 15
serious (= very bad) A2 32
serve A2 28, 88
service B1 28, 88
seven A1 6
seventeen A1 6
seventeenth 8
seventh 8
seventy A1 6
shake hands 91
Shall we ...? 94
shape A2 29
share a flat 15
shave *n* 60
sheep A1 38, 47
sheet A2 60
shelf B1 61
shine B1 37
shirt A1 24
shoe A1 25
shoe shop 28
shop A1 *n* 28
shop assistant 45, 69, 79
shop online 28, 74
shopping A1 *as in* **go shopping / do the shopping** 23, 28, 41, 77
shopping centre 28, 79
short (= not tall) A1 11
short (= not long) A1 11, 26
short form 3
shorts 24
should A1 31
shoulder A2 10
shower (= in a bathroom) A1 23, 60
shower (= light rain) B1 37
shut *adj* A2 55
shut *v* A2 12, 39, 92
sick A1 *as in* **be/feel sick** 31
sightseeing *as in* **go sightseeing** 77, 90
sign *n* (= notice) A2 55
sign *v* (= write your name) A2 88
silver A2 25
similar A1 63
simple A2 5
since A2 9
sing A1 39, 81
singer A1 81
single (ticket) 53
single (= not married) A2 13
single room 87
sink *n* 59
sister A1 14
sister-in-law 14
sit A1 39
sit down A1 12, 99
site (= website) A2 74
situation A1 4
six A1 6
sixteen A1 6
sixteenth 8
sixth 8
sixty A1 6
size A2 26
skiing A2 82
skin A2 10
skirt A1 24
sky A2 37
sleep *v* A1 23, 44
sleep *n* A1 44
slim 11
slow train 53
slowly A2 65
small A1 26
smartphone 75
smell *n, v* A2 44
smile *n, v* A2 11, 44
smoking A2 77
smoking A2 *as in* **no smoking** 55
snack 50
snake A1 38
snow *n, v* A1 37
so conjunction A1 98
so ... (that) *adverb* (= for emphasis) A1 72
soap A2 60
soccer A2 82
social life 15
social media 63
socks A2 25
sofa 61
soft A2 63
software designer 68
soldier A2 69
solution A2 78, 86
solve A2 78, 86
some (of sth) A1 45, 85
some more 49
sometimes A1 23

somewhere A2 33
somewhere else 100
son A1 14
song A1 81
soon A1 *as in* **see you soon** 91
sorry A1 *as in* **(so/very/really) sorry** 17, 94, 95
sorry A1 *as in* **sorry I'm late** 95
sort A2 *as in* **What sort of ... ?** 84, 92
sound A1 *as in* **that sounds lovely** 94
soup A1 49
source A2 34
south *n, adj* A1 36
South America 35
South Korea 35
south-east 36
south-west 36
soy sauce 49
space [U] A1 60
Spain 35
Spanish 35
speak A1 39, 76
speaker A2 76
speaking 75
special A1 8
specific A2 63
speed limit 51
spell A1 4, 39
spelling A1 77
spend money (on sth) 22, 27, 39
spend time doing sth A1 70
spend time with sb 14, 39
spider A2 38
spoon A2 48
sports centre 79
spring A1 8
square (= shape) A2 29
square (= in a town) A2 56
squid 47
stairs A2 58
stand up A1 12, 99
star *n* A1 84
star *v* A2 84
start school 67
starter 49
statement A1 30
station A1 53
stay *v* A1 88
stay *n* A2 88
stay at school 67
stay in A1 23
stay in bed 31
steps A2 58
still water 49
still (= continuing) A1 64, 97
stomach A2 10
stomach ache 31
stop *n* A1 52
storm A2 37
story A1 *as in* **love story** 84
straight A2 11
strange A2 15
strawberry 46
stress B2 30
strong (= not weak) A1 31, 63
strong (wind) A2 37
study *n* B1 58
stupid A2 15
style A1 26
subject A1 66
subway 51
succeed A2 78
success A1 78
such ... (that) A2 72
suddenly A2 37
sugar A1 45
suggest A2 94
suggestion A2 94
suit A2 24
suitcase 60, 87
summer A1 8
sun A1 37
sunny 37
Sunday A1 8
sunglasses 25
supermarket A1 28
support *v* A2 72
suppose A2 *as in* **I suppose so** 100
sure (= certain) A1 4, 62
sure (= of course) A2 49, 93
surname 13
surprise *n, v* A2 44
surprised A2 17
surprising A2 72
sweet A2 46
swim *v* A1 39
swim *n* B1 23
swimming A1 82
swimming pool A1 79
Swiss 35
Switzerland 35
symbol A2 3
synonym 3
system A2 67
T-shirt A1 24
table (= furniture) A1 1, 60
table (= diagram) A2 3
table tennis 82
tablet (= computer) A2 73
tablet (= medicine) B1 31

take

size 12, etc. 26
(time) A1 68
(= carry) A1 93
a message 75
an exam 67
a photo 90
a seat 50
away 50
care of sb/sth A2 100
off (= leave) A2 89, 99
place A2 30
sth off (= remove) A2 24, 99
the bus/train 51, 53
as in **how long does it take?** 52

as in **take the first/second, etc. turning** 54
tall A1 11
tap B2* 59
task A2 59
taste A2 46
taxi A1 51
taxi driver 69
tea A1 50
teach A1 39, 76
teacher A1 68, 69, 76
teaching A2 77
team A1 82
technology A2 66
teenage A2 11
teenager A1 11
teeth A1 10
telephone A1 29, 61
television A1 61
temperature A2 31
ten A1 6
tennis A1 23, 82
tent B1 81
tenth 8
term A2 68
terrible A1 26
terrible at sth 66
test *v* A1 3
text *n* A1 5, 73, 75
Thai 35
Thailand 35
than A1 14
thank sb (for sth) 22
thanks a lot 95
thanks very much 54
that would be lovely 94
that's a great idea 94
that's all right 95
that's all, thanks 45, 50
that's fine 45, 93
that's OK 54
the army 70
the best 67
the news 85
the oldest 14
the rest 100
the same 3
the worst 67
the youngest 14
then A1 98
there are five of us 14
there's lots / a lot / nothing to do 56
thin A2 11
thing A1 4
think A1 39, 78
think about/of sth A1 22
think A1 *as in* **I think so** A2 **/ I don't think so** 96
third A1 8
thirsty A1 17
thirteen A1 6
thirteenth 8
thirtieth 8
thirty A1 6
this evening/weekend/ morning A1**, etc.** 9
This is ... (= on the phone) A1 75
This is ... (= introducing sb) A1 91
though B1 97
thought(s) A2 78
thousand A1 6
three A1 6
thriller 84
through A1 19
throw A2 12
Thursday A1 8
tick 3
ticket A1 53
ticket machine 89
ticket office 53, 79
tidy A2 15
tie A2 24
tiger 38
tights 25
time A1 *as in* **on time** A2 21
timetable 52, 53
tired A1 17
to (= purpose) A1 98
toasted sandwich 50
toe B1 10
together A1 14
together A1 *as in* **be together** 16
toilet A1 55, 60
tomato A1 46
tomorrow morning 9
too (= excessive) A1 26
too (= also) A1 97
tool A2 29
tooth (*pl* **teeth**) A1 10
toothache 31
toothbrush 60
top (= clothes) A2 24
top (= highest) A2 82
top floor 58
total B1 27
touch A2 28
tour A2 *as in* **go on a guided tour** 90
tourism A2 88
tourist A1 88
towards A2 19
towel A2 60
tower A2 56
town A1 36
town centre A1 79
toy A2 28
toy shop 28
tradition A2 63
traditional A2 63
traffic A1 51
traffic lights 54, 79
train A1 53
train driver 69
train station 53, 79
trainers A2 25
training A2 67, 71
travel A1 76
traveller A2 76

travelling 81
tree A1 57
trip A1 88
trouble A2 86
trousers A1 24
truck A2 51
true A1 3
try A1 86
try sth on 28
Tuesday A1 8
tuna 47
Turkey 35
Turkish 35
turn left/right 54
turn sth on/off A2 59, 99
turning *as in* **take the second turning** 54
TV A1 61
twelfth 8
twelve A1 6
twentieth 8
twenty A1 6
twenty-first 8
twenty-one 6
twenty-second 8
twenty-third 8
twenty-three 6
twenty-two 6
twice A1 23, 92
two A1 6
type A1 *as in* **What type of ... ?** 47, 84, 92
type *v* B1 73
typical A2 90
UK 35
umbrella A1 25
uncertain 62
uncle A1 14
uncomfortable 26
under (= below) A1 19
under (= less than) A1 36
underground 51
underline 3
understanding A2 77
unemployed B1 69
unfortunately A2 51, 68
unfriendly 15
unhappy A2 17
unhealthy 31, 62
uniform A2 24, 67
unit A2 72
United Kingdom 35
United States (of America) 35
unlucky 62
unnecessary B1 62
unsure 62
untidy 15
until A1 88
unusual A2 29, 63
up A1 19
up to (an age) B1 67
upset B1 17
upstairs A1 58
use *v* A1 4
used to A2 90
useful A1 63
useless B2* 63
usually A1 23
vacancy 55
valley A2 57
van A2 51
variety A2 86
various B1 81
vegetable A1 46
vegetarian 47
vehicle A2 51
verb 2
very A1 26, 64
very well 91
video A1 74
view (= opinion) A2 56
view (= what you can see) A2 58
village A1 36
vinegar 48
violent B1 84
violin 83
violinist 83
virus (= illness) A2 31
virus (= on a computer) A2 74
visit *n, v* A1 76, 90
visitor A1 76
vocabulary 5
voice A2 29
vomit 31
waist 10
wait for sth A1 22, 53
waiter A1 49
wake up A1 23, 39, 99
Wales 35
walk A1 12
wall A1 60
wallet 27
want A1 *as in* **Do you want to ... ?** 94
want A1 *as in* **Do you want ... ?** 95
war A2 85
war film 84
wardrobe 60
warm A1 37
wash A1 *as in* **wash the dishes** 59
wash *n* A2 60
washbasin 60
washing A2 59
washing machine 59, 79
washing-up 59
watch *n* A1 25
watch *v* A1 43, 81, 85
water *n* A1 48
water *v* B1 57
way A1 54
way out 55
weak A2 31, 63
wear A1 24, 25
website A1 74
wedding A2 96
Wednesday A1 8

week A1 *as in* **last/next week** 9
weekday 23
weekend A1 9, 23
weigh B1 11
weight A2 11
welcome *adj, v* A1
welcome *n* A2 91
well A1 65
well (= not ill) A1 31
Well done! 100
west *n, adj* A1 36
wet A2 37
whale 38
what A1 92
about? A1 94
can I get you? 50
do you do? (= what's your job?) 13, 69, 92
kind/sort/type of ... ? 84, 92
time is it? 7
time/when ... ? 92
would you like? 50
's on? 84
's sth like? 15, 92
's the matter? 31, 91
's the time? 7
's the weather like? 37
's your job? 13, 69
when A1 92
Where's it on? (= film) 84
Where's the nearest ... ? 92
whereabouts 13
which A1 92
while A2 9, 90
white A1 26
white bread 50
white coffee 50
white wine 48
whiteboard 1
who A1 92
Who's calling? 75
whole A2 72
whose A2 92
why A1 92
wide A2 63
wife A1 14, 16
wild A2 **(animal/plant)** 38, 57
will (= in promises) A1 91
win A1 27, 39, 76, 82
wind A2 37
window (= in a room) A1 61
window (= on a computer) B1 73
windy 37
wine (white/red) 48
wing B1 38
winner A2 76
winter A1 8
without A1 49
wonderful A1 80, 94
wood (= product) A2 29, 60
wood (= place with trees) A2 57
wooden A2 60
word A1 2
work *v* A1 69, 70, 76
work *n* A1 69
work hard A1 67
worker A1 76
working 77
world A1 33
worried A2 17
worry *v* A2
worry *n* B1 72, 95
worse (than) A2 37
worst A2 *as in* **the worst** 67
worth doing 92
Would you like to ... ? 94
Would you like ... ? A1 95
Wow! A2 100
write A1 39
write an essay 68
write a reply 44
write sth down A2 4
writing A1 77
writer A1 86
wrong (= not correct) A1 3, 4, 26
wrong number 75
yeah A1 92
year A1 8
yellow A1 26
yes, please 50, 95
yesterday A1 9
yesterday evening 9
yet A2 9
younger than 14
youngest *as in* **the youngest** 14
zero A2 75
zoo 38

* These 13 words are from the Oxford 5000.

Abbreviations used in the book

adj	adjective
adv	adverb
[C]	(of a noun) countable
inf	informal
n	noun
OPP	opposite
pl	plural
pp	past participle
pt	past tense
sing	singular
sb	somebody
sth	something
SYN	synonym
[U]	(of a noun) uncountable
v	verb

Oxford University Press is the world's authority on the English language.

As part of the University of Oxford, we are committed to furthering English language learning worldwide.

We continuously bring together our experience, expertise and research to create resources such as this one, helping millions of learners of English to achieve their potential.

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

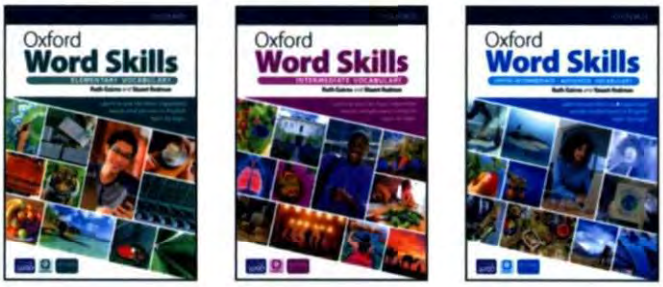
www.oup.com/elt

Oxford Word Skills

ELEMENTARY VOCABULARY

Learn to use the most important words and phrases in English topic by topic

Based on the Oxford 3000™, *Oxford Word Skills* teaches you the words and phrases you need to use in English in real life. The Oxford 3000™ is a list of the 3,000 essential core words that every learner of English needs to know, graded by CEFR level.



- learn over 2,600 words and phrases
- improve your vocabulary-learning skills
- practise the words in context
- study 100 units (20 extra!) with more practice
- use in the classroom and for self-study

Now with one year's access to the best-selling *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary* app.

Use the app with *Oxford Word Skills* to:

- listen to the pronunciation of each new word and do exercises on pronunciation
- look up the meaning of any word you don't know

Ruth Gairns and **Stuart Redman** are language teaching experts who specialize in writing material for learning and teaching vocabulary.

APP

Oxford 3000

CEFR
B1
A2
A1